

PROJECT MANUAL  
FOR



**STUDENT RECREATION CENTER**

April 30, 2019

**100% Permit / Bid Issue Specifications**

Book 1



**BBT** ARCHITECTS

1140 SW Simpson, Suite 200  
Bend, OR 97702  
(541) 382-5535  
Fax (541) 359-8033

## **PROJECT**

Oregon Tech  
Student Recreation Center  
3201 Campus Drive  
Klamath Falls, OR 97603

## **OWNER**

Oregon Tech  
3201 Campus Drive  
Klamath Falls, OR 97603  
Phone: 541.281.5541  
Contact: Thom Darrah

## **ARCHITECTS**

BBT Architects, Inc.  
1140 S.W. Simpson Ave., Suite 200  
Bend, OR 97702  
Phone: (541) 382-5535  
Fax: (541) 389-8033  
Principal Architect: Matt Appleby  
Email: [mappleby@bbtarchitects.com](mailto:mappleby@bbtarchitects.com)

## **STRUCTURAL ENGINEER**

Adkins Consulting Engineers  
2950 Shasta Way.  
Klamath Falls, OR 97603  
Phone: 541.884.4666  
Civil Engineer: Mike Moser  
Email: [mmoser@adkinsengineering.com](mailto:mmoser@adkinsengineering.com)

## **MECHANICAL ENGINEER**

Interface Engineering  
100 Main Street, Ste. 1600  
Portland, OR 97204  
Phone: (503) 382-2266  
Mechanical Engineer: Troy Lowell  
Email: [troyl@interfaceeng.com](mailto:troyl@interfaceeng.com)

## **PLUMBING ENGINEER**

Interface Engineering  
100 Main Street, Ste. 1600  
Portland, OR 97204  
Phone: (503) 382-2266  
Mechanical Engineer: Chris Scott  
Email: [chriss@interfaceeng.com](mailto:chriss@interfaceeng.com)

## **ELECTRICAL ENGINEER**

Interface Engineering  
100 Main Street, Ste. 1600  
Portland, OR 97204  
Phone: (503) 382-2266  
Mechanical Engineer: Kim Wall  
Email: [kimw@interfaceeng.com](mailto:kimw@interfaceeng.com)

## **FIRE PROTECTION**

Interface Engineering  
100 Main Street, Ste. 1600  
Portland, OR 97204  
Phone: (503) 382-2266  
Mechanical Engineer: Calvin Karsch  
Email: [calvink@interfaceeng.com](mailto:calvink@interfaceeng.com)

**TABLE OF CONTENTS:**

This Project Manual has been organized under the format of the Construction Specifications Institute (CSI). Section numbers are listed merely for identification, and they may not be consecutive. The Contractor shall check the contents of this Manual against the Table of Contents to assure that this volume is complete.

**BOOK 1****DIVISION 1: GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

01 0500	CONSTRUCTION STAKING
01 1000	SUMMARY OF THE WORK
01 1150	DESIGN-BUILD REQUIREMENTS
01 2000	PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES
01 2300	ALTERNATES
01 2500	SUBSTITUTIONS
01 2663	CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES
01 3000	ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS
01 3001	ELECTRONIC MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES
01 3100	PROJECT COORDINATION
01 3130	STATEMENT OF COMPLIANCE
01 3140	CERTIFICATION OF NO ASBESTOS
01 3216	CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULE
01 3553	SECURITY PROCEDURES
01 4000	QUALITY REQUIREMENTS
01 4200	ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS
01 4510	SAFETY
01 5000	TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS
01 5100	TEMPORARY UTILITIES
01 5213	FIELD OFFICES AND SHEDS
01 5500	VEHICULAR ACCESS AND PARKING
01 5813	TEMPORARY PROJECT SIGNAGE
01 6600	DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING
01 7000	EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS
01 7413	CLEANING
01 7419	CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL
01 7610	TEMPORARY PROTECTIVE COVERINGS
01 7800	CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
01 7900	DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING
01 8119	AIR QUALITY DURING CONSTRUCTION
01 9113	GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS

**DIVISION 2: EXISTING CONDITIONS**

02 4100	DEMOLITION
---------	------------

**DIVISION 3: CONCRETE**

03 3000 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE  
 03 5400 CAST UNDERLayment

**DIVISION 4: MASONRY**

04 2000 UNIT MASONRY

**DIVISION 5: METALS**

05 5000 METAL FABRICATIONS

**DIVISION 6: WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES**

06 1000 ROUGH CARPENTRY  
 06 4100 ARCHITECTURAL WOOD CASEWORK

**DIVISION 7: THERMAL & MOISTURE PROTECTION**

07 2100 THERMAL INSULATION  
 07 2500 WEATHER BARRIERS  
 07 4213 METAL WALL PANELS  
 07 6200 SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM  
 07 8400 FIRESTOPPING  
 07 9200 JOINT SEALANTS

**DIVISION 8: OPENINGS**

08 1113 HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES  
 08 1416 FLUSH WOORD DOORS  
 08 3100 ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS  
 08 4313 ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS  
 08 7100 DOOR HARDWARE  
 08 8000 GLAZING  
 08800 MIRRORS

**DIVISION 9: FINISHES**

09 2116 GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES  
 09 2216 NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING  
 09 5100 SUSPENDED ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS  
 09 6429 WOOD STRIP AND PLANK FLOORING  
 09 6500 RESILIENT FLOORING  
 09 6566 RESILIENT ATHLETIC FLOORING  
 09 6723 RESINOUS FLOORING  
 09 6813 TILE CARPETING  
 09 7733 GLASS FIBER REINFORCED PLASTIC PANELS  
 09 8400 ACOUSTICAL PANELS  
 09 9000 PAINTING

**DIVISION 10: SPECIALTIES**

10 2113.19 PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS  
10 2601 WALL AND CORNER GUARDS  
10 2800 TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES  
10 5100 LOCKERS

**DIVISION 11: EQUIPMENT**

11 6623 GYMNASIUM EQUIPMENT

**DIVISION 12: FURNISHINGS**

NONE IN CONTRACT

**DIVISION 13: SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION**

NONE IN CONTRACT

**DIVISION 14: CONVEYING SYSTEMS**

NONE IN CONTRACT

**BOOK 2****DIVISION 21: FIRE SUPPRESSION**

21 00 00	FIRE SUPPRESSION BASIC REQUIREMENTS
21 05 00	COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION
21 13 00	FIRE SUPPRESSION SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

**DIVISION 22: PLUMBING**

22 00 00	PLUMBING BASIC REQUIREMENTS
22 05 19	PLUMBING DEVICES
22 05 23	GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
22 05 29	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
22 05 53	IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
22 07 00	PLUMBING INSULATION
22 10 00	PLUMBING PIPING
22 40 00	PLUMBING FIXTURES

**DIVISION 23: HEATING, VENTILATION, AND AIR CONDITIONING**

23 00 00	HEATING, VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING (HVAC) BASIC REQUIREMENTS
23 05 13	COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT
23 05 19	METERS AND GAUGES FOR HVAC PIPING
23 05 23	GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING
23 05 29	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING, DUCTWORK AND EQUIPMENT
23 05 48	VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT
23 05 53	IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING, DUCTWORK AND EQUIPMENT
23 05 93	TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC
23 07 00	HVAC INSULATION
23 09 00	INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATIONS
23 09 13	VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVES
23 21 13	HVAC PIPING
23 21 16	HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES
23 25 00	HVAC WATER TREATMENT
23 31 00	HVAC DUCTS AND CASINGS
23 33 00	AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES
23 37 00	AIR OUTLETS AND INLETS
23 57 00	HEAT EXCHANGERS FOR HVAC
23 62 01	VARIABLE REFRIGERANT FLOW/VOLUME (VRV/VRV) SYSTEMS
23 72 23	PACKAGED AIR-TO-AIR ENERGY RECOVERY UNITS
23 73 23	DEDICATED OUTDOOR AIR SYSTEM AIR-TO-AIR HEAT RECOVERY UNITS
23 74 00	ROOFTOP PACKAGED AIR CONDITIONING UNITS
23 81 26	SMALL SPLIT SYSTEM AND UNITARY HVAC EQUIPMENT
23 82 00	TERMINAL HEAT TRANSFER EQUIPMENT

**DIVISION 26: ELECTRICAL**

26 00 00	ELECTRICAL BASIC REQUIREMENTS
26 05 09	EQUIPMENT WIRING
26 05 19	LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES
26 05 26	GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

26 05 29	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT
26 05 33	RACEWAYS
26 05 34	BOXES
26 05 53	IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
26 05 73	ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM STUDIES
26 08 05	ELECTRICAL ACCEPTANCE TESTING
26 08 10	BUILDING LIGHTING ACCEPTANCE TESTING AND DOCUMENTATION
26 09 00	CONTACTORS AND CONTROL DEVICES
26 09 20	LIGHTING RELAY CONTROL PANEL
26 09 23	OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS
26 09 24	DAYLIGHTING CONTROLS
26 22 00	LOW-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS
26 24 13	SWITCHBOARDS
26 24 16	PANELBOARDS
26 27 13	ELECTRICAL METERING
26 27 26	WIRING DEVICES
26 28 00	OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES
26 28 16	ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS
26 33 23	CENTRAL BATTERY EQUIPMENT
26 43 00	SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES
26 51 00	LIGHTING

## **DIVISION 27: COMMUNICATIONS**

None in Contract

## **DIVISION 28: ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY**

28 00 01	ELECTRONIC SAFETY BASIC REQUIREMENTS
28 31 00	FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM

## **DIVISION 31: EARTHWORK**

NONE IN CONTRACT

## **DIVISION 32: EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS**

NONE IN CONTRACT

## **DIVISION 33: UTILITIES**

NONE IN CONTRACT

**END OF TABLE**

**SECTION 01 0500**  
**CONSTRUCTION STAKING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 WORK INCLUDED**

- A. Provide survey work by an Oregon State registered land surveyor for the execution of Project.

**1.03 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE**

- A. Section 01 7800, Closeout Submittals for Project Record Documents.

**1.04 QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Before starting work, the Contractor shall locate all general reference points. The Contractor shall employ a registered surveyor (licensed by the State of Oregon) to perform such work. The Contractor shall take such steps as are necessary to prevent the dislocation or destruction of the reference points, and shall be responsible for the accuracy of the site and building layout and elevations for the work.

**1.05 SURVEY REFERENCE POINTS**

- A. Existing Points: See Drawings.
  - 1. Locate existing points prior to starting site work, and preserve during construction.
  - 2. Make no Changes to existing points without Owner and Architect approval.
  - 3. Notify Owner and Architect when any point is lost, destroyed or requires relocation.

**1.06 PROJECT LAYOUT**

- A. Establish existing control points.
- B. Record benchmark locations with horizontal and vertical dimensions on Project Record Drawings.
- C. Using survey instruments, establish lines and levels for the following:
- D. Stakes for grading, fill, and all earthwork.
- E. Building foundation, floor elevations and similar elements.
- F. Re-establish control points as required due to construction activity.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 1000**  
**SUMMARY OF THE WORK**

**PART 1 – GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 REQUIREMENTS INCLUDED**

- A. General Requirements.
- B. Work Covered by Contract Documents.
- C. Contractor Use of Premises.
- D. Related Work by Owner.
- E. Owner Furnished Products.
- F. Contractor Designed Elements.

**1.03 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

- A. General:
  - 1. The Work shall be providing all supplies, tools, equipment, scaffolding, transportation, utilities, service, superintendence, labor, and the furnishing of all materials, items, and accessories required for the construction of the Cornett Hall Renovation
- B. Description:
  - 1. In general, the student recreation center project (SRC) will take place on two floors in the existing gymnasium building, built in 1964, on the Oregon Tech campus.
  - 2. In the basement level, the SRC renovation involves demolition, removal, and/or capping of equipment and plumbing associated with the now unused swimming pool. The pool will be capped with a new structurally framed floor and finished with a wood sports floor surface. Selected non-structural CMU and framed walls will be removed to create an open plan for new student exercise areas. The locker and toilet rooms on the west side will be demolished to open up the space as an exercise studio. The existing north locker rooms will be partially demolished and renovated to accommodate anticipated use. Mechanical systems will be added and/or modified to provide upgraded heating with added cooling for exercise activities. Power will be reconfigured to support exercise machinery, and new lighting will be installed to support the necessary illumination for various sporting activities.
  - 3. On the first floor (main level), the work will consist of the interior remodel of the "south addition" area, where existing cardio equipment is used, to accommodate new athletic staff offices. This will require rezoning the mechanical systems, new electrical, and new low voltage. Other first floor renovations may include alternates for public restroom renovation, new finishes (floor, walls, ceilings, lighting, and casework) in the main lobby.
  - 4. The existing basement fire sprinklers will also be upgraded or added to, including an alarm system, per the direction of the AHJ. All renovations will involve barrier removal to achieve ADA compliance.
- C. Prior to bidding, all subcontractor shall visit the site and fully inform himself of the areas in which work is to take place, including the limits of area allowed for working conditions, the areas limited for access to the work, and the areas available for the delivery and storage of new material. Access to the site is to be coordinated by the CM/GC Contractor and /or Owner.
- D. The subcontractors represents that they have carefully examined prior to bidding, all Contract Documents and site conditions, understanding the character, quality and quantity of work called for and all conditions of the contract.

**1.04 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF PREMISES**

- A. Work limits are to shown on the documents.
- B. Contractor shall limit his use of premise for Work and for storage to allow for:

**01 1000**  
**SUMMARY OF THE WORK**

1. Coordinated use of premises under direction of the Owner.
2. Full responsibility for protection and safekeeping of products under this Contract stored at Site.
3. Moving stored products, under Contractor's control, which interfere with operations of Owner or separate Contractor.
4. Obtaining and paying for use of additional storage or work areas needed for operations.
5. Conformance to fire/life/safety requirements and fire equipment access.
6. Worker vehicle parking on-site.
7. Storage of all materials required for the project on-site.

C. Construction Operations:

1. Part of the facility will remain operational during the phases of construction. These areas are to have life safety requirement maintained at all times.
2. Do not unreasonably encumber Site and Structure with materials or equipment.
3. Do not load structure with weight that will endanger structure.
4. Contractor shall direct all construction vehicle and delivery traffic along an access route as approved by the Owner.
5. Contractor shall coordinate the sequencing of abatement with the demolition of the buildings.

**1.05 EXCESSIVE NOISE**

- A. Minimize noise during working hours. Notify Owner at least 24 hours prior to any necessary excessive noise. Comply with Owner's instructions.

**1.06 OWNERS SALVAGED MATERIALS**

- A. Contractor is to dispose off-site all materials and equipment not selected by the Owner for salvage, in a manner approved and authorized by all State, County, City and all other Governing Agencies.

**1.07 RELATED WORK BY OWNER OR OTHERS**

- A. NIC & OFOI Items: If applicable, items designated on the Drawings and/or described in the Project Manual as "NIC" (Not in Contract) or "OFOI" (Owner Furnished and Owner Installed) are not included in the Contract.
- B. Contractor's Responsibilities:
  1. Designate delivery date for each portion of the Work in the Progress Schedule.
  2. Storage of products if requested.
  3. Coordinate installation with the Progress Schedule.
  4. Provide all preparatory work necessary for proper installation including blocking and backing and finish work including caulking, grouting, furring, preparation of subfloors for finish flooring materials, and painting adjacent surfaces as required for NIC or OFOI equipment.

**1.08 OWNER-FURNISHED PRODUCTS**

- A. OFCI Items: If applicable, items designated on project Drawings and/or described as "OFCI" (Furnished by Owner and installed by Contractor).
  1. Owner's Responsibilities for OFCI Equipment:
    - a. Arrange for delivery of shop drawings, product data, samples, manufacturer's instructions, and certificates to Contractor.
    - b. Deliver supplier's bill of materials to Design Consultant for review.
    - c. Arrange and pay for delivery to site in accordance with Progress Schedule.
    - d. Inspect deliveries jointly with Contractor.
    - e. Submit claims for transportation damage.
    - f. Arrange for replacement of damaged, defective, or missing items.
    - g. Arrange for manufacturers' field services; arrange for and deliver manufacturers' warranties and bonds to Contractor.
- B. Contractor's Responsibilities:

**01 1000**  
**SUMMARY OF THE WORK**

1. Designate submittals and delivery date for each product in Progress Schedule.
2. Review shop drawings, product data, samples, and other submittals. Submit to Design Consultant with notification of any observed discrepancies or problems anticipated due to non-conformance with Contract Documents.
3. Receive and unload products at site.
4. Inspect deliveries jointly with Owner, record shortages and damaged or defective items.
5. Handle products at site, including uncrating and storage.
6. Protect products from damage and from exposure to elements.
7. Coordinate, provide and install appropriate backing for connections.
8. Assemble, install, connect, adjust, and finish products as stipulated in respective specification sections.
9. Provide installation inspections required by public authorities.
10. Clean, repair, or replace items damaged by Contractor.
11. Remove and dispose of crating and packing materials for Owner-furnished materials and equipment delivered to the site.

**1.09 CONTRACTOR DESIGNED ELEMENTS**

- A. Where work of this Contract requires bidder design, comply with following requirements:
  1. Submit Shop Drawings and Calculations to Design Consultant for review.
  2. Submit Shop Drawings and Calculations to City or County for approval and permits.
  3. All Shop Drawings and Calculations shall be stamped by Registered Architect or Engineer licensed in State of Oregon.

**1.10 PERMITS AND FEES**

- A. Building permit fees will be paid for by the Owner.

**1.11 ABATEMENT PATENTS**

- A. Certain products or procedures may have a patent or require a licensing agreement. The Contractor should utilize all products and procedures under proper authority of the licensing agreements and patent rights. Neither the Owner nor the Environmental Consultant is responsible for any licensing or patent infringements.

**1.12 EXISTING UTILITIES**

- A. Utilities of record are shown on the Drawings insofar as possible to do so. These, however, are shown for convenience only and the Owner and Design Consultant assume no responsibility for improper locations or failure to show utility location on the Drawings. The Contractor is responsible for determining the location of all existing utilities (whether shown or not) prior to commencing work. At Contractor's expense, immediately repair and restore operation of any utilities (that have been located) damaged during construction; conform to utility company's repair requirements.

**1.13 OBJECTIONS TO APPLICATION OF PRODUCTS**

- A. All contractors submitting a bid for this Project shall thoroughly familiarize themselves with specified products and installation procedures and submit to Design Consultant any objections (in writing) no later than seven (7) days prior to Bid Date. Submittal of Bid constitutes acceptance of products and procedures specified.

**1.14 MISCELLANEOUS**

- A. Work includes, but is not limited to:
  1. Maintaining pedestrian and vehicular access to and around existing site.
  2. Not encumbering site access with materials or equipment.
  3. Obtaining and paying for use of additional storage or work areas needed for operations.
  4. Contractor is responsible for controlling dust, sedimentation, and erosion on site. Wind born dust is to be controlled by continuous watering of disturbed ground. Erosion and sedimentation control are to be provided in compliance with City of Pendleton ordinances and Department of Environmental Quality regulations. Sedimentation is not allowed to

**01 1000  
SUMMARY OF THE WORK**

leave the site. Standing water is not to be allowed in such a capacity to hinder construction operations or emergency vehicle access and operations.

**PART 2 – PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 – EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 1150**  
**DESIGN-BUILD REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Certain Work Components of this Project have not been designed or detailed by the Architect or the Architect's Consultants, and the Components must be designed, engineered, and built by the Contractor.
- B. Design-Build Components are defined as either or both of the following:
  1. Complete and operational Systems that perform their intended use.
  2. Structural Elements which will be subject to Lateral or Vertical Loads.
- C. The Contractor shall coordinate and assume (or assign to Subcontractor) complete responsibility for design, engineering, submittals, fabrication, transportation, and installation of this Work.
- D. Prior to starting Work, the Contractor shall submit all Design-Build documents to the governing Building Department for review and approval. Each Design-Build item may require a separate Permit and Fee, which shall be paid by the Contractor when so required.
- E. Design Build Required Systems:
  1. Fire Suppression Systems
  2. Fire Alarm Systems

**1.03 DESIGN-BUILD COMPONENTS OF THE WORK**

- A. Refer to document Sections and plans for items requiring design-build.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Comply with Building Department requirements.
- B. Include design criteria, design assumptions, structural calculations, fabrication and construction details, required clearances, and interface requirements.
- C. Affix design professional's seal of Oregon State license on all submittals.

**1.05 OWNER'S RESPONSIBILITIES**

- A. The Owner will not pay for progress delays, additional Work, additional products, restocking, or reworking required by Contractor's failure to coordinate Design-Build Work with other Project Work.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 2000**  
**PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Procedures for preparation and submittal of applications for progress payments.
- B. Documentation of changes in Contract Sum and Contract Time.
- C. Procedures for preparation and submittal of application for final payment.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 2663 - Change Order Procedures for process of changes to the documents.
- B. Document 00 7000 - General Conditions and Document 00 7300 - Supplementary Conditions: Additional requirements for progress payments, final payment, changes in the Work.
- C. Document 00 7300 - Supplementary Conditions: Percentage allowances for Contractor's overhead and profit.

**1.04 SCHEDULE OF VALUES**

- A. Electronic media printout including equivalent information will be considered in lieu of standard form specified; submit draft to Architect for approval.
- B. Forms filled out by hand will not be accepted.
- C. Submit Schedule of Values on AIA Document G-703 in duplicate within 15 days after date of Owner-Contractor Agreement.
- D. Format: Utilize the Table of Contents of this Project Manual. Identify each line item with number and title of the specification Section. Identify site mobilization.
- E. Revise schedule to list approved Change Orders, with each Application For Payment.

**1.05 APPLICATIONS FOR PROGRESS PAYMENTS**

- A. **Payment Period:** Verify with CM/GC Contract.
- B. Electronic media printout including equivalent information will be considered in lieu of standard form specified; submit sample to Architect for approval.
- C. Forms filled out by hand will not be accepted.
- D. For each item, provide a column for listing each of the following:
  1. Item Number.
  2. Description of work.
  3. Scheduled Values.
  4. Previous Applications.
  5. Work in Place and Stored Materials under this Application.
  6. Authorized Change Orders.
  7. Total Completed and Stored to Date of Application.
  8. Percentage of Completion.
  9. Balance to Finish.
  10. Retainage.
- E. Execute certification by signature of authorized officer. Certificate shall be notarized prior to submitting to Architect.
- F. Use data from approved Schedule of Values. Provide dollar value in each column for each line item for portion of work performed and for stored products.

**01 2000**  
**PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

- G. List each authorized Change Order as a separate line item, listing Change Order number and dollar amount as for an original item of Work.
- H. Submit three copies of each Application for Payment.
- I. Include the following with the application:
  - 1. Transmittal letter as specified for submittals in Section 01 3000.
  - 2. Construction progress schedule, revised and current as specified in Section 01 3216.

**1.06 APPLICATION FOR FINAL PAYMENT**

- A. Prepare Application for Final Payment as specified for progress payments, identifying total adjusted Contract Sum, previous payments, and sum remaining due.
- B. Application for Final Payment will not be considered until the following have been accomplished:
  - 1. All closeout procedures specified in Section 01 7000.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 2300**  
**ALTERNATES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Description of Alternates.
- B. Procedures for pricing Alternates.

**1.03 ALTERNATE BID ITEMS**

- A. Alternates are described throughout the Drawings. Procedures for recording and noting alternate bid items are indicated on the Bid Form. Subcontractor shall note description of alternate bid items and provide an individual separate price, which includes all costs necessary to add or deduct the cost of said bid item from the Base Bid price.
- B. The Owner reserves the right to accept any alternate bid items.
- C. In preparing his price for each alternate bid item, the Subcontractor shall include all costs necessary to provide and install complete and in operating order in accordance with Contract Documents, and as indicated in the General Requirements and General Conditions, all component parts necessary to add or deduct each alternate bid item individually.
- D. Bidding Requirements:
  1. Refer to the Subcontractor Bid Form to list all appropriate costs attributed to the alternates and Unit Prices described in this section.
  2. The alternate bid items are described in the Contract Documents. It is the responsibility of the bidding Contractor to realize that described or inferred adjustments may be necessary due to the acceptance or rejection of alternate bid items. All alternate bids are to be complete bids.
  3. Additive alternates are all inclusive of the additional work described.
  4. Deductive alternates include all work necessary to provide and install materials necessary to finish the affected system or area.
- E. Following are descriptions of the alternate bid items. The Subcontractor shall note on the Bid Form clearly whether each individual item is additive or deductive in the space provided.

**1.04 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES [ADD 03]**

- A. Alternate No. 1 - ADD: Remodel the first floor Lobby and Public Restrooms as indicated on the drawings.:
  1. Provide costs for the following scope items:
    - a. Demolish walls, plumbing fixtures, ceilings, light fixtures, casework and other finish materials
    - b. Construct new walls for the public restrooms along with select remodel of the ticket booth and coach's office.
    - c. Provide all new fixtures, accessories and finishes in the new restrooms.
    - d. Provide new casework, paint, ceilings, lighting, floor finishes in the main lobby area.
- B. Alternate No. 2 - ADD: Provide ceiling fans in the student recreation center as indicated on the drawings.:
  1. Provide cost to supply and install (2) 10' ceiling fans in the court area and (4) four foot fans in the cardio area as shown in drawings and referenced in these specifications.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION**

**01 2300  
ALTERNATES**

**SECTION 01 2500**  
**SUBSTITUTIONS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE**

- A. Substitutions during Bidding: Instructions to Bidders.
- B. Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples: General Conditions and Section 01 3000.

**1.03 CONTRACTOR'S OPTIONS**

- A. For products specified only by reference standards, select any product meeting standards, by any manufacturer.
- B. For products specified by naming several products or manufacturers, select any product and manufacturer named.
- C. For products specified "Basis of Design", use the product specified or follow the procedure outlined below for approval of different products.
- D. If products or manufacturer's are not named in the specified sections, contractors shall follow the procedure outlined below for approval.

**1.04 SUBSTITUTIONS**

- A. During bidding, the Architect will consider requests for substitutions only when received on the form provided as pages 01 2500, pages 3 - 5. No request will be considered unless received seven (7) days prior to the time and date set for the receipt of bids. Requests for substitutions after the bid date will be only considered if in conformance to specified section 01 2500-1.06.
- B. In connection with the use of any substitute item approved by the Architect it shall be in the Contractor's responsibility to see that such items meet all space requirements, and that any alterations to connecting items necessitated by use of the alternate items are properly made, at no increase in cost to the Owner.
- C. Specific reference in the specifications to any article, device, product, materials, form or type of construction, etc., by name, make or catalog number, shall be interpreted as establishing a standard of quality and shall not be construed as limiting competition.
- D. In making request for substitution, Bidder/Contractor represents:
  1. He has personally investigated proposed product or method, and determined that it is equal or superior in all respects to that specified.
  2. He will provide the same guarantee for substitution as for product or method specified.
  3. He will coordinate installation of accepted substitution into Work, making such changes as may be required for Work to be complete in all respects at no additional cost to Owner.
  4. He waives all claims for additional costs or time extensions related to substitution which consequently becomes apparent.
  5. He will reimburse Owner for review or redesign services associated with re-approval by authorities.
- E. In order to allow the fullest competition, consistent with the Owner's interests, the Architect will give consideration, prior to submission of proposals, to requests for approval of products and materials competitive with and similar to those specified by proprietary name.
- F. To be considered and in order to facilitate review of requests for approval of substitutions for specified products or materials, all such requests shall be made in writing on the form included as a part of this Section.
- G. Should any proposed product substitution require any redesign work to accommodate the substitute product, costs for such re-design work shall be included in the Bid amount and shall be paid to the Owner in the required re-design work.

**01 2500**  
**SUBSTITUTIONS**

**1.05 ARCHITECT'S OPTIONS**

- A. Architect will be sole judge of acceptability of any proposed substitution – unless products have been specifically designated as non-substitutable by the Owner.
- B. Only approved substitutions may be used on Contract Work.
- C. Each request for substitution approval shall include:
  - 1. Identity of product for which substitution is requested; include specification page and paragraph number.
  - 2. Identity of substitution; include complete product description, drawings, photographs performance and test data, and any other information necessary for evaluation.
  - 3. Quality comparison of proposed substitution with specified product.
  - 4. Changes required in other work because of substitution.
  - 5. Effect on construction progress schedule.
  - 6. Cost comparison of proposed substitution with specified product.
  - 7. Any required license fees or royalties.
  - 8. Availability of local maintenance service.
  - 9. Source of replacement materials.

**1.06 DURING BIDDING PERIOD**

- A. No request for substitution approval will be considered unless a request has been submitted on Standard Form bound hereinafter, and has been received by Architect seven (7) days prior to the time and date set for receipt of bids.

**1.07 AFTER CONTRACT AWARD**

- A. Approval will be granted only when:
  - 1. Specified product cannot be delivered without project delay, or
  - 2. Specified product has been discontinued, or
  - 3. Specified product has been replaced by superior product, or
  - 4. Specified product cannot be guaranteed as specified, or
  - 5. Product will not perform properly, or
  - 6. Specified product will not fit within designated space, or
  - 7. Specified product does not comply with governing codes or regulations, or
  - 8. Substitution determined by the Owner to be in his best interest.

01 2500  
SUBSTITUTIONS

1.08

TO: BBT ARCHITECTS  
1140 SW SIMPSON AVE., SUITE 200  
BEND, OREGON 97702

PROJECT NAME:

WE HEREBY SUBMIT FOR CONSIDERATION, THE FOLLOWING PRODUCT INSTEAD OF  
SPECIFIED ITEM FOR ABOVE PROJECT:

SECTION: \_\_\_\_\_ PARAGRAPH: \_\_\_\_\_

SPECIFIED ITEM: \_\_\_\_\_

PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION: \_\_\_\_\_

---

ATTACH COMPLETE DIMENSIONAL INFORMATION AND TECHNICAL DATA INCLUDING  
LABORATORY TESTS, IF APPLICABLE.

INCLUDE COMPLETE DIMENSIONAL INFORMATION ON CHANGES TO DRAWINGS AND/OR  
SPECIFICATIONS, WHICH PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION WILL REQUIRE FOR ITS PROPER  
INSTALLATION.

SUBMIT WITH REQUEST ALL NECESSARY SAMPLES AND SUBSTANTIATING DATA TO  
PROVIDE EQUAL QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, AND APPEARANCE TO THAT WHICH IS  
SPECIFIED. CLEARLY MARK MANUFACTURER'S LITERATURE TO INDICATE EQUALITY IN  
PERFORMANCE. DIFFERENCES IN QUALITY OF MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION SHALL BE  
INDICATED.

1.09 THE UNDERSIGNED STATES THAT THE FOLLOWING PARAGRAPHS, UNLESS MODIFIED  
ON ATTACHMENTS, ARE CORRECT:

- A. The proposed substitutions do not affect dimensions shown on drawings.
- B. The undersigned will pay for changes to the building design, including engineering design, detailing and construction costs caused by the requested substitution.
- C. The proposed substitution will have no adverse affect on other trades, the construction schedule, or specified warranty requirements.
- D. Maintenance and service parts will be locally available for the proposed substitution.
- E. The proposed substitution will have no affect on applicable codes.
- F. The manufacturer's guarantee or warranties of proposed product is equivalent to; or exceeds that of the specified product.
- G. Proposed substituted item will match all sizes, profiles, specifications and colors of item originally specified.

**01 2500  
SUBSTITUTIONS**

List of names and location of three similar projects on which product was used, date of installation, and Architect's name and phone number.

Project No. 1: \_\_\_\_\_

Project No. 2: \_\_\_\_\_

Project No. 3: \_\_\_\_\_

**1.10 CERTIFICATION OF EQUAL PERFORMANCE AND ASSUMPTION OF LIABILITY FOR EQUAL PERFORMANCE**

**SUBMITTED BY:** \_\_\_\_\_

**SIGNATURE:** \_\_\_\_\_

**TITLE:** \_\_\_\_\_

**FIRM:** \_\_\_\_\_

**ADDRESS:** \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**TELEPHONE:** \_\_\_\_\_

**DATE:** \_\_\_\_\_

**\* ABOVE SIGNATURE MUST BE BY PERSON  
HAVING AUTHORITY TO LEGALLY BIND HIS  
FIRM TO THE ABOVE ITEMS.** \_\_\_\_\_

**FOR USE BY ARCHITECT ONLY:**

\_\_\_\_\_

**ACCEPTED**

\_\_\_\_\_

**ACCEPTED AS NOTED**

\_\_\_\_\_

**NOT ACCEPTED**

\_\_\_\_\_

**RECEIVED TOO LATE**

**BY:** \_\_\_\_\_

**DATE:** \_\_\_\_\_

**REMARKS:** \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 2663**  
**CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 RESPONSIBLE PARTIES**

- A. Immediately following Contract execution, Owner will and Contractor shall identify who, within their respective organizations, will be responsible for executing Change Orders.

**1.03 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. General and Supplementary Conditions
- B. Product Substitutions: Section 01 2500
- C. Construction Progress Schedules: Section 01 3216
- D. Execution and Closeout Requirements: Section 01 7006
- E. Closeout Submittals: Section 01 7800

**1.04 DEFINITIONS**

- A. **Proposal Request:**
  - 1. Means request from Architect to Contractor for changes to Contract sum and/or Contract Time for proposed changes to the Work.
- B. **Change Order:**
  - 1. See General Conditions.
- C. **Construction Change Directive:**
  - 1. Means written order to Contractor executed on AIA Form G713 or other similar form designated by the Owner, and signed by Owner and Architect, which amends Contract Documents as described, and authorizes Contractor to proceed with change affecting Contract Sum and/or Contract Time, for inclusion in subsequent Change Order.
- D. **Architect's Supplementary Instructions**
  - 1. Means written order, instruction, or interpretation to Contractor, executed on AIA Form G710 or other similar form designated by Architect, and signed by Architect, which authorizes minor changes in Work not altering Contract Sum and/or Contract Time.
- E. **Request for Information (RFI):**
  - 1. Written request submitted by Contractor to Architect on standard form requesting interpretation of Contract documents.
  - 2. An RFI shall only be used as a vehicle for confirming or verifying an issue through an interpretation of the Contract Documents; responses that result in change to Contract Documents and adjustment to Contract Sum and/or Contract Time must be documented in a Change Order.

**1.05 OWNER OR ARCHITECT INITIATED CHANGES**

- A. Requests will include:
  - 1. Detailed description of change, including change location and products.
  - 2. Supplementary or revised Drawings and Specifications.
  - 3. When appropriate, projected time span for making change, and specific statement as to whether or not overtime work is authorized.
  - 4. When appropriate, specific time period during which request price will be considered valid.
- B. Such request is for information only, and is not an instruction or authorization to execute the change or an order to stop Work in progress.

**01 2663**  
**CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES**

**1.06 CONTRACTOR INITIATED CHANGES**

- A. Requests shall include:
  - 1. Description of proposed change
  - 2. Statement of reason for making change
  - 3. Statement of effect upon Contract Sum and Contract Time
  - 4. Statement of effect upon work of other Contractors
  - 5. Statement of effect upon work by Owner
  - 6. Documentation supporting any change to Contract Sum and/or Contract Time

**1.07 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE**

- A. In lieu of Proposal Request, Architect may issue Construction Change Directive for Contractor to proceed with change for subsequent inclusion in future Change Order.
- B. Directive will describe Work changes with attachments of revised Contract Documents defining details of change, and designating any changes in Contract Sum and/or Contract Time.
- C. Owner and Architect will sign and date Construction Change Directive as authorization for Contractor to proceed with changes.
- D. Upon receipt of the Construction Change Directive the Contractor shall proceed with the work as directed.

**1.08 DOCUMENTATION OF PROPOSALS & CLAIMS**

- A. Support quotation for each Proposal with sufficient substantiating data to allow Architect to evaluate quotation.
- B. When requested by Architect, submit the following Cost and Time data:
  - 1. Labor required
  - 2. Equipment required
  - 3. Products required
    - a. Quantity required
    - b. Purchase source
    - c. Unit cost
  - 4. Credit for deleted Work, similarly documented
  - 5. Overhead and profit
  - 6. Justification for any change in Contract Time
- C. Support each claim for additional cost, and for work done on time-and-material/force account basis with documentation as required for lump-sum proposal, plus the following information:
  - 1. Name of Owner's authorized agent who ordered work, and date of order.
  - 2. Dates and times of work performed, and by whom.
  - 3. Time records, including summary of hours worked, and hourly rates paid.
- D. Document requests for Product substitutions as specified in Section 01 2500.
- E. Cost shall be limited to the following: cost of materials and equipment, including cost of delivery; cost of in field labor not including project staff or supervision, including Social Security, payroll taxes, fringe benefits, unemployment insurance; workers' compensation insurance; rental rate of and fuel for power tools and equipment not normally on the project.
- F. Overhead and profit shall include the following: project insurance, bond premiums, general administration, supervision which includes project managers and staff not completing direct material work in the field, superintendence, general foremen, wages of time-keepers, watchmen and clerks, small tools, incidentals, general office expense, home office overhead, project office overhead and expenses, and all other expenses not included in "cost".

**1.09 PREPARATION OF CHANGE ORDERS**

- A. Architect will prepare each Change Order.
- B. Change Order Form: AIA Document G-701.

**01 2663**  
**CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES**

- C. Change Order will describe Work changes with attachments of any revised Contract Documents, which define Change details.
- D. Change Order will adjust Contract Sum and/or Contract Time.

**1.10 LUMP-SUM/FIXED PRICE CHANGE ORDERS**

- A. Change Order contents will be based on, either:
  1. Architect's Proposal Request and Contractor's responsive Proposal as mutually agreed between Owner and Contractor.
  2. Contractor's Change Proposal as recommended by Architect, and as mutually agreed between Owner and Contractor.
- B. Owner and Architect will sign and date Change Order as authorization for Contractor to proceed with Changes.
- C. Contractor shall sign and date Change Order to indicate agreement with specified terms.

**1.11 UNIT PRICE CHANGE ORDERS**

- A. Change Order contents will be based on, either:
  1. Architect's definition of required changes
  2. Contractor's Change Proposal as recommended by Architect
  3. Survey of completed work
- B. Unit Price amounts shall be, either:
  1. Those stated in Agreement, if any.
  2. Those mutually agreed upon between Owner and Contractor
- C. When quantities of Items affected by Change Order can be determined prior to start of work:
  1. Owner and Architect will sign and date Change Order as authorization for Contractor to proceed with changes.
  2. Contractor shall sign and date Change Order to indicate agreement with specified terms.
- D. When quantities of Items affected by Change Order cannot be determined prior to start of work:
  1. Architect or Owner will issue Construction Change Authorization directing Contractor to proceed with change on basis of unit prices, and will cite applicable unit prices.
  2. At change completion, Architect will determine work cost based upon agreed unit prices and quantities used.
  3. Contractor shall submit documentation to establish quantities of units or each Item and any claim for change in Contract Time.
  4. Owner and Contractor will sign and date Change Order to indicate their agreement with specified terms.

**1.12 TIME & MATERIAL & FORCE ACCOUNT CHANGE ORDERS**

- A. Architect and Owner will issue Construction Change Authorization directing Contractor to proceed with changes according to the process defined in the General Conditions.
- B. At Change completion, Contractor shall submit itemized accounting of change with supporting data as specified above in "Documentation of Proposals and Claims".
- C. Architect will determine allowable cost of such work, as provided in Contract Conditions.
- D. Architect will sign and date Change Order to establish change in Contract Sum and/or Contract Time.
- E. Owner and Contractor will sign and date Change Order to indicate their agreement with specified terms.

**1.13 CORRELATION OF CHANGE ORDERS WITH CONTRACTOR'S OTHER SUBMITTALS**

- A. Revise Schedule of Values and subsequent Request for Payment Forms to record each Change as separate item of work, and to record adjusted Contract Sum.
- B. Revise Construction Schedule to reflect each change in Contract Time.
- C. Revise Subschedules to show changes for other items of Work affected by Changes.

**01 2663  
CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES**

D. Upon completion of Change Order Work, record pertinent changes in Record Documents.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 3000**  
**ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Preconstruction meeting.
- B. Progress meetings.
- C. Coordination drawings.
- D. Submittals for review, information, and project closeout.
- E. Number of copies of submittals.
- F. Submittal procedures.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 3001 - Electronic Management System: For how all documentation is to be submitted.
- B. Section 01 3216 - Construction Progress Schedule: Form, content, and administration of schedules.
- C. Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements: For preconstruction subcontractor after meetings
- D. Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals: Project record documents.
- E. Section 01 9113 - General Commissioning Requirements: Additional procedures for submittals relating to commissioning.
  - 1. Where submittals are indicated for review by both Architect and the Commissioning Authority, submit one extra and route to Architect first, for forwarding to the Commissioning Authority.
  - 2. Where submittals are not indicated to be reviewed by Architect, submit directly to the Commissioning Authority; otherwise, the procedures specified in this section apply to commissioning submittals.

**1.04 PROJECT COORDINATION**

- A. Project Coordinator: OT Facilities Director.
- B. Cooperate with the Project Coordinator in allocation of mobilization areas of site; for field offices and sheds, for Contractor access, traffic, and parking facilities.
- C. During construction, coordinate use of site and facilities through the Project Coordinator.
- D. Comply with Project Coordinator's procedures for intra-project communications; submittals, reports and records, schedules, coordination drawings, and recommendations; and resolution of ambiguities and conflicts.
- E. Comply with instructions of the Project Coordinator for use of temporary utilities and construction facilities.
- F. Coordinate field engineering and layout work under instructions of the Project Coordinator.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 PRECONSTRUCTION MEETING**

- A. Owner, Project Manager, or Architect will schedule a meeting within ten days after Notice of Award.
- B. Attendance Required:
  - 1. Owner.

**01 3000**  
**ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

2. Architect.
3. Contractor.

C. Agenda:

1. Execution of Owner-Contractor Agreement.
2. Submission of executed bonds and insurance certificates.
3. Distribution of Contract Documents.
4. Submission of list of Subcontractors, list of Products, schedule of values, and progress schedule.
5. Designation of personnel representing the parties to Contract, Owner and Architect.
6. Procedures and processing of field decisions, submittals, substitutions, applications for payments, proposal request, Change Orders, and Contract closeout procedures.
7. Scheduling.

D. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

**3.02 PROGRESS MEETINGS**

- A. Schedule and administer meetings throughout progress of the Work at maximum monthly intervals.
- B. Make arrangements for meetings, prepare agenda with copies for participants, preside at meetings.
- C. Attendance Required:
  1. Contractor.
  2. Owner.
  3. Architect.
  4. Contractor's Superintendent.
  5. Major Subcontractors.
- D. Agenda:
  1. Review minutes of previous meetings.
  2. Review of Work progress.
  3. Review of action items.
  4. Field observations, problems, and decisions.
  5. Identification of problems that impede, or will impede, planned progress.
  6. Review of submittals schedule and status of submittals.
  7. Review of RFIs, APRs, etc.
  8. Review of off-site fabrication and delivery schedules.
  9. Maintenance of progress schedule.
  10. Corrective measures to regain projected schedules.
  11. Planned progress during succeeding work period.
  12. Maintenance of quality and work standards.
  13. Effect of proposed changes on progress schedule and coordination.
  14. Other business relating to Work.
- E. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

**3.03 PRE-INSTALLATION CONFERENCE**

- A. When required in individual Specification Sections and/or as requested, convene pre-installation conference at work Site prior to commencing work of Section.
- B. Require attendance of parties directly affecting, or affected by, work of specific Section.
- C. Notify Architect four days in advance of meeting date.
- D. Prepare agenda, preside at conference, record minutes, and distribute copies within two days after conference to participants, with two copies to Architect.

**01 3000**  
**ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- E. Review conditions of installation, preparation and installation procedures, and coordination with related work.

**3.04 COORDINATION DRAWINGS**

- A. Review drawings prior to submission to Architect.

**3.05 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW**

- A. When the following are specified in individual sections, submit them for review:
  1. Product data.
  2. Shop drawings.
  3. Samples for selection.
  4. Samples for verification.
- B. Submit to Architect for review for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the contract documents.
- C. Samples will be reviewed only for aesthetic, color, or finish selection.
- D. After review, provide copies and distribute in accordance with SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES article below and for record documents purposes described in Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals.

**3.06 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION**

- A. When the following are specified in individual sections, submit them for information:
  1. Design data.
  2. Certificates.
  3. Test reports.
  4. Inspection reports.
  5. Manufacturer's instructions.
  6. Other types indicated.
- B. Submit for Architect's knowledge as contract administrator or for Owner. No action will be taken.

**3.07 SUBMITTALS FOR PROJECT CLOSEOUT**

- A. Submit Final Correction Punch List for Substantial Completion.
- B. When the following are specified in individual sections, submit them at project closeout:
  1. Project record documents.
  2. Operation and maintenance data.
  3. Warranties.
  4. Bonds.
  5. Other types as indicated.
- C. Submit for Owner's benefit during and after project completion.

**3.08 NUMBER OF COPIES OF SUBMITTALS**

- A. Electronic Documents: Submit one electronic copy in PDF format; an electronically-marked up file will be returned. Create PDFs at native size and right-side up; illegible files will be rejected.
- B. Physical Samples: Submit the number specified in individual specification sections; one of which will be retained by Architect.
  1. After review, produce duplicates.
  2. Retained samples will not be returned to Contractor unless specifically so stated.
- C. Submit samples of size and quantity specified, or, if not specified, of sufficient size and quantity to illustrate functional and aesthetic characteristics of Product, with integral parts and attachment devices. Coordinate sample submittals for interfacing work.
- D. Submit samples of finishes from full range of manufacturers' standard colors, or in specified custom colors, textures, and patterns, for Architect's selection.
- E. Maintain copies of all samples on site for verification.

**01 3000**  
**ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

**3.09 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**

- A. Shop Drawing Procedures:
  - 1. Prepare accurate, drawn-to-scale, original shop drawing documentation by interpreting the Contract Documents and coordinating related Work.
  - 2. Do not reproduce the Contract Documents to create shop drawings.
  - 3. Generic, non-project specific information submitted as shop drawings do not meet the requirements for shop drawings.
- B. Transmit each submittal with a copy of approved submittal form.
- C. Sequentially number the transmittal form. Revise submittals with original number and a sequential alphabetic suffix.
- D. Identify Project, Contractor, Subcontractor or supplier; pertinent drawing and detail number, and specification section number, as appropriate on each copy.
- E. Apply Contractor's stamp, signed or initialed certifying that review, approval, verification of Products required, field dimensions, adjacent construction Work, and coordination of information is in accordance with the requirements of the Work and Contract Documents. Incomplete submittals, or submittals not reviewed and approved by Contractor, shall be returned by the Architect un-reviewed.
- F. Schedule submittals to expedite the Project, and coordinate submission of related items.
- G. For each submittal for review, allow 15 days excluding delivery time to and from the Contractor.
- H. Identify variations from Contract Documents and Product or system limitations that may be detrimental to successful performance of the completed Work.
- I. Contractor's responsibility for errors and omissions in submittals is not relieved by Architect's review.
- J. Provide space for Contractor and Architect review stamps.
- K. When revised for resubmission, identify all changes made since previous submission.
- L. Distribute reviewed submittals as appropriate. Instruct parties to promptly report any inability to comply with requirements.
- M. Submittals not requested will not be recognized or processed.

**3.10 ARCHITECT'S DUTIES**

- A. Review submittals with reasonable promptness as mutually agreeable among the various parties.
- B. Review for:
  - 1. Design concept of project.
  - 2. Information given in Contract Documents.
- C. Review of separate item does not constitute review of an assembly in which item functions.
- D. Affix stamp and initials or signatures certifying the review of submittal.
- E. Return submittals to Contractor for distribution.
- F. Deliver or send one copy of reviewed item, to the Owner - unless Owner requests additional copies.
- G. The Architect or Owner may immediately reject any item without further review if it is not:
  - 1. Accompanied by a transmittal letter containing the required information.
  - 2. Submitted as a reproducible.
  - 3. Stamped "approved" by the Contractor.
- H. The review will be for conformance to the design concept and compliance with information given in the Contract Documents.
- I. The review is intended to foresee unacceptable products and to avoid the possibility of their rejection at the site. The review shall not be construed as:

**01 3000**  
**ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

1. Permitting a departure from the Contract Documents, unless specifically so noted.
2. Relieving the Contractor of the responsibility for errors or omissions.
3. Acceptance of an assembly in which an approved item is a part.
4. Approval of variations from previously approved items.
5. Approval of dimensions.

J. The Architect will review all samples. Such review will be for appearance only. Compliance with all other requirements is the responsibility of the Contractor.

K. Where the Contract Documents require the design of structural, mechanical or electrical systems or components of systems by a supplier, or where a Contractor initiates a change in the design of a system or component thereof, such systems or components shall be designed by a registered professional engineer and all calculations submitted to the Architect for his records, prior to starting fabrication or installation of the Work. The Architect will not be responsible for the designs of such other professional engineers.

**3.11 VARIATIONS FROM CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

- A. If the Architect determines a variation from the Contract Documents is in the best interest of the Owner, and it does not involve change in the Contract price or item, the Architect with the Owner's concurrence, may permit such variation.
- B. Unless the Architect receives immediate written notification, he will assume the Contractor approves any variation shown.
- C. If the Contractor fails to mention variations from the Contract Documents, he will not be relieved of the responsibility for executing the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- D. When a variation from the Contract Documents is permitted and such variation involves corresponding adjustment in an adjacent or related item, the responsibility for making and paying all costs for such adjustment rests with the Contractor requesting the original variation.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 3001**  
**ELECTRONIC MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES**

**ELECTRONIC PROJECT MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY:**

- A. 1. Construction administration communication shall be transmitted to each project entity in electronic (PDF) format using Procore Construction Project Management software, a website service designed specifically for transmitting construction communications between project team members.
- B. 2. The intent of electronic communication is to increase collaboration, expedite the construction process by reducing paperwork, improving information flow, and decreasing turnaround time.
- C. 3. The Documentation created and tracked in Procore and transmitted by Microsoft Outlook shall include the following:
  1. RFI's
  2. Submittals
  3. Punchlist/QC Issues
- D. Plans and specifications and any updates thereto will be reviewable within Procore.
- E. 4. Definitions:
  1. RFI – Request for information
  2. GC – General Contractor
  3. QC – Quality Control

**1.03 PROCEDURES:**

- A. RFI (Requests for Information) Procedure – Subcontractor's RFI's will be reviewed via the Procore website. The RFI's will be reviewed by the GC before the Architect or Architect's Consultants. Once the GC review is complete, the GC will either respond with an answer or forward the RFI to the Architect for a formal response. All responses to RFI's will be emailed from Microsoft Outlook to the Subcontractor via (PDF) with a link to the Procore website embedded in the (PDF) for reference.
  1. Subcontractors requesting RFI's may use any or all of the following options:
    - a. Subcontractors may send an RFI to the GC via the Procore website.
    - b. Subcontractors may send a (PDF) of their RFI via the email to the GC.
- B. Submittal Procedure – Subcontractor's submittals will be reviewed via the Procore website with the exception of physical samples. The submittals will be posted on the website for the review. Once the submittal review is completed by the GC, the GC will email the reviewed submittal to the Architect and their consultants for review. Once the Architect has confirmed their review status, the GC will email the submittal via Microsoft Outlook to the sub-contractor in (PDF) format with a link to the Procore website embedded in the (PDF) for reference.
  1. Subcontractors providing a submittal may use any or all of the following options:
    - a. Subcontractors and suppliers providing submittals may upload them directly to the Procore website for review
    - b. Subcontractors and Suppliers may provide PDF documents to the GC who will then electronically upload them to the Procore website for review.
  2. Submittal Documents to be Submitted Via Procore or Microsoft Outlook for the GC to upload to Procore - included but not limited to:
    - a. Design Document Submittals
    - b. Shop Drawings
    - c. Product Data
    - d. Warranty and Closeout Documentation

**01 3001**  
**ELECTRONIC MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES**

3. Submittals to be physically submitted include but are not limited to. Note that although these submittals are handled physically, their status will be tracked within Procore:
  - a. Product finishes and color selection samples
  - b. Product finishes and color verification samples
  - c. Finish/color boards
  - d. Physical samples of materials
4. Administrative Submittals to be created and submitted using Procore and/or Microsoft Outlook include but are not limited to:
  - a. Digging permits and notices for excavation
  - b. List of product substitutions
  - c. List of contact personal
  - d. Notices for roadway interruption, work outside regular hours, and utility cut over's.
  - e. Plans for safety, demolition, environmental protecting, and similar activities
  - f. Quality Control Plan(s)
5. Compliance Submittals to be created and submitted using Procore and/or Microsoft Outlook include but are not limited to:
  - a. Field Test Reports
  - b. Quality Control certifications
  - c. Manufacturer's documentation and certifications for quality of products and materials provided.
  - d. Record and Closeout Submittals
  - e. Operation and Maintenance Data and closeout submittals shall be submitted on Procore as PDF documents during the approval and review state as record submittals include, but are not limited to:
    - 1) Operation and Maintenance Manuals- final documents shall be submitted as specified
    - 2) As-Built Drawings- final documents shall be submitted as specified
    - 3) Extra Materials, Spare Stock, Attic Stock, etc: Submittal forms shall indicate when actual materials are submitted.

C. Punchlist/QC Procedures - Through the course of the project the GC, Owner, and Architect may use the Punchlist & QC features on the Procore website to identify issues in the field that need to be tracked until they are resolved. Once an issue is created, the GC will assign the issue to the responsible party. That subcontractor will receive an email with the details of the issue from the Procore website. Additionally the email will include a link to the Procore website to view the issue. Once the subcontractor has resolved the issue and it is ready to be reviewed for completion, the subcontractor will notify the GC via the Procore website. If the issue is not confirmed as resolved, the item will stay open. If the issue is confirmed resolved the GC will close the issue via the Procore website.

D. Plans and Specifications along with APR's, ASI, and CCDs will be distributed via email from the Procore website. These documents will be openly available in a shared folder under the documents tab on the Procore website to all Subcontractors and Suppliers. Subcontractors and Suppliers will be able to view and download all Plans and Specifications from the Procore website.

**1.04 COSTS:**

- A. 1. The cost of Procore Technologies services will be paid in full by the General Contractor.
- B. 2. At the Subcontractor or Supplier's option, training will be made available from Procore Technologies and from the General Contractor regarding use of website or any of the above listed process. The Subcontractor or Supplier may Contact Procore Technologies at support@procure.com <mailto:support@procure.com>, or 1-866-477-6267.
- C. 3. Internet Service and Equipment Requirements:
- D. a. Email address and Internet access at Subcontractor's main office.

**01 3001**  
**ELECTRONIC MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES**

**1.05 USER ACCESS LIMITATIONS:**

- A. Procore Construction Project Management software provides permission functionality to allow all users customizable access to the Documentation created. User profiles will define levels of access into the system. Owners, Architects & Subcontractors will be given access to Procore through the GC. Entry of information exchanged and transferred between all parties in a collaborative mode entered with the intent to share as determined by permissions and workflows within Procore will be the joint responsibility of all users.
  - 1. During Bidding and before subcontractor award:
    - a. Owners, Architects, and Bidding subcontractors will have view access to the Documents tab only for accessing Project Drawings, Specifications, APR's, ASI, and CCDs associated with the project.

**1.06 AUTOMATED SYSTEM NOTIFICATION**

- A. Review comments made (or lack thereof) by any party via Procore shall not relieve the Contractor from compliance with requirements of the Contract Documents. The Contractor is responsible for managing, tracking and documenting the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents. Owner and Architect acceptance/review acknowledgement via automated system notifications extends only to the face value of the submitted documentation in question and constitutes validation of the Contractor's specific submitted information only. Procore allows users with Approver/Ball-In-Court permissions status to clarify all reviews or approvals of documentation created and shared within Procore.

**1.07 COMPUTER RECOMMENDATIONS**

- A. Recommendations
  - 1. All users choosing to work within Procore shall use computer hardware and software that meets the requirements of Procore. Procore and KNCC will notify all users if any recommendations are modified by Procore.
  - 2. Connectivity to Procore is accomplished through DSL, Cable, T-1 or wireless communications systems using typical bandwidth strength.
  - 3. Procore currently supports Google Chrome as a preferred web browser, but is functional with Mozilla Firefox, Microsoft Internet Explorer, and Apple Safari web browser.
- B. Responsibility
  - 1. All users choosing to work within Procore are responsible for the validity of their information placed in Procore and for the abilities of their personnel. Accepted users shall be knowledgeable in the use of computers, including Internet Browsers, email programs, and Adobe Portable Document Format (PDF) document distribution program. The contractor shall utilize the existing forms in Procore to the maximum extent possible.
  - 2. The Architect, Owner, or Owners Representatives reserve the right to perform a security check on all potential users at their own expense. The Contractor will provide a list of users upon request for this purpose only.
  - 3. The Contractor is allowed to add and remove personnel and subcontractors to Procore without approval from the Architect, Owner, or Owners Representatives.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 3100**  
**PROJECT COORDINATION**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. General and Supplementary General Conditions.
- B. Section 01 1000: Summary of Work.
- C. Section 01 3006: Administrative Requirements for Progress Meetings and Submittals.
- D. Section 01 3001: Electronic Management Procedures.
- E. Section 01 3216: Schedules and Reports.
- F. Section 01 5000: Temporary Facilities.
- G. Section 01 7000: Execution and Closeout Requirements.
- H. Section 01 7413: Cleaning.
- I. Section 01 7800: Closeout Submittals.

**1.03 CONSTRUCTION ORGANIZATION AND START-UP**

- A. Establish on-site lines of authority and communications including the following:
  - 1. Attend Pre-construction Meeting and Progress Meetings as required by the Architect or Owner.
- B. Comply with procedures for intra-project communications including:
  - 1. Submittals
  - 2. Reports and records
  - 3. Recommendations
  - 4. Coordination drawings
  - 5. Schedules
  - 6. Resolution of conflicts
- C. Contract Documents Interpretation:
  - 1. Consult with Architect to obtain interpretation.
  - 2. Assist in resolution of questions and conflicts that may arise.
  - 3. Transmit written interpretations to Subcontractors, and to other concerned parties.
- D. Control Use of Site:
  - 1. Supervise field engineering and Project layout.
  - 2. Allocate field office and storage space and work and storage area for use of each Subcontract or Contractor.
- E. Access to the Site and Contractor Responsibilities:
  - 1. Contractor is to maintain drives and pedestrian paths used by the continued operation. Contractor is to maintain safety barricades as appropriate for the work being conducted and control of traffic on public streets.

**1.04 COORDINATING SUBCONTRACTORS' WORK**

- A. Coordinate the Work of all Subcontractors and make certain that, where the Work of one trade is dependent upon the Work of another trade, the Work first installed is properly placed, installed, aligned, and finished as specified or required to properly receive subsequent materials applied or attached thereto.
- B. Direct Subcontractors to correct defects in substrates they install when Subcontracts of subsequent materials have a reasonable and justifiable objection to such surfaces.
- C. Do not force Subcontractors to apply or install products to improperly finished product.

**01 3100**  
**PROJECT COORDINATION**

- D. Coordinate changes to assure that:
  - 1. Requirements of Contract Documents are fulfilled.
  - 2. Changes in Contract requirements of all affected trades are reflected in executed Change Orders.
- E. Scheduling and Installation Sequence:
  - 1. Coordinate scheduling, submittals, and Work of various sections of specifications to assure efficient and orderly sequence of installation of interdependent construction elements, with provisions for accommodating items installed later.
  - 2. Schedule work in accordance with current Project construction schedule.
    - a. Coordinate schedules of all trades.
    - b. Verify timely deliveries of products for installation by other trades.
    - c. Verify that labor and equipment are adequate for work and schedule.
    - d. Verify that material deliveries are adequate to maintain schedule.
- F. Space Requirements:
  - 1. Coordinate space requirements and installation of mechanical and electrical work which are indicated diagrammatically on Drawings.
  - 2. Follow routing shown for pipes, ducts, and conduit, as closely as practicable; place runs parallel with line of building.
  - 3. Utilize spaces efficiently to maximize accessibility for other installations, for maintenance, and for repairs.
- G. Concealed Services:
  - 1. In finished areas except as otherwise indicated, conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring within construction.
  - 2. Coordinate locations of fixtures and outlets with finish elements.
- H. Ascertain need for cutting and patching, and coordinate with work of other trades, and the Architect.
- I. Completion and Clean Up:
  - 1. Coordinate completion and clean up of Work of separate sections in preparation for Substantial Completion and for portions of Work designated for Owner occupancy.
- J. Start-Up, Inspection, and Acceptance of Equipment:
  - 1. Verify that manufacturer's representative is present.
  - 2. Verify that utilities, specified connections, and safety devices are complete and equipment is ready to operate.
  - 3. Verify that equipment has been tested, adjusted, and balanced, is cleaned, repainted as required, and operational prior to inspection.
  - 4. Coordinate and comply with requirements for Start-up Functions, Training, and Equipment Inspections with Owner's Commissioning Agent.
- K. Access for Corrective Work:
  - 1. After Owner occupancy of premises, coordinate access to site for correction of defective Work and Work not in accordance with Contract Documents, to minimize disruption of Owner's activities.

#### **1.05 COORDINATING UTILITIES**

- A. The Contractor shall be responsible for coordination of all utilities to be installed for service to the project and shall cooperate with all utility agencies. Utilities may include, but are not limited to, natural gas, telephone, electrical, and cable television. The Contractor shall maintain communication with the utilities in order to coordinate time and requirements of the utilities' installation.
- B. The Contractor shall provide all work necessary to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents for work by the utility company that does not meet the Contract Document requirements, or for work that is disturbed by the utility installation.
- C. The Contractor shall be responsible to locate and protect existing utilities.

**01 3100  
PROJECT COORDINATION**

D. The Contractor shall comply with ORS 757.541 through 757.571 relating to notice prior to excavation.

**1.06 CLOSE-OUT DUTIES**

- A. At completion of Work of each subcontract, conduct inspection to assure that:
  - 1. Work is acceptable and in compliance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.
  - 2. Assist the Architect in inspection.
  - 3. Temporary facilities and debris have been removed from Site.
- B. Substantial Completion:
  - 1. Conduct inspection and prepare list of work to be completed or corrected.
  - 2. Assist Architect in inspection.
  - 3. Supervise correction and completion of Work as established in Architect's inspection reports and "punchlists".
  - 4. Obtain all approvals from governing authorities, including the Certificate of Occupancy.
- C. Final Completion:
  - 1. Submit and obtain approval of all contract close-out documents.
  - 2. Assist Architect and Owner in inspection.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED.**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION - NOT USED.**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 3130**  
**STATEMENT OF COMPLIANCE**

**1.01 NO PAYMENT SHALL BE MADE UNTIL THE GC SHALL FILE WITH THE OWNER, PRIOR TO ACCEPTANCE OF THE WORK, A NOTARIZED CERTIFICATION OF COMPLIANCE IN THE FOLLOWING FORM:**

\*\*\*\*\*

**1.02 THE GC DOES HEREBY CERTIFY THAT ALL WORK HAS BEEN PERFORMED AND MATERIALS SUPPLIED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE DRAWINGS, SPECIFICATIONS AND CONTRACT DOCUMENTS FOR THE ABOVE WORK, AND THAT:**

- A. No less than the prevailing rates of wages as ascertained by the governing body of the Contracting agency has been paid to laborers, workmen and mechanics employed on this Work;
- B. There have been no unauthorized substitutes of Subcontractors; nor have any subcontractors been entered into without the names of the Subcontractors having been submitted to the Owner prior to the start of such subcontracted work;
- C. No subcontract was assigned or transferred or performed by any Subcontractor other than the original Subcontractor, without prior notice having been submitted to the Owner together with the names of all Subcontractors;
- D. All claims for material and labor and other service performed in connection with these specifications have been paid.
- E. All monies due the State Industrial Accident Fund, the State Unemployment Compensation Trust Fund, the State Tax Commission, Hospital Associates and/or others have been paid.

**1.03 IN WITNESS WHEREOF, THE UNDERSIGNED HAS SIGNED AND SEALED THIS INSTRUMENT THIS \_\_\_\_\_ DAY OF \_\_\_\_\_, 2019.**

**FIRM NAME** \_\_\_\_\_  
**SIGNATURE** \_\_\_\_\_  
**TITLE** \_\_\_\_\_

**(ATTEST)** \_\_\_\_\_  
**(SEAL IF BIDDER IS A CORPORATION)**

**AS DETERMINED NECESSARY, EVIDENCE OF COMPLIANCE MAY BE REQUIRED TO BE SUBMITTED WITH AND MADE A PART OF THIS CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE.**

**END OF SECTION**

SECTION 01 3140  
CERTIFICATION OF NO ASBESTOS

FINAL PAYMENT SHALL NOT BE MADE UNTIL THE CM/GC SHALL FILE WITH THE OWNER, PRIOR TO ACCEPTANCE OF THE WORK, A NOTARIZED CERTIFICATION OF COMPLIANCE IN THE FOLLOWING FORM:

1.01 FINAL PAYMENT SHALL NOT BE MADE UNTIL THE GC SHALL FILE WITH THE OWNER, PRIOR TO ACCEPTANCE OF THE WORK, A NOTARIZED CERTIFICATION OF COMPLIANCE IN THE FOLLOWING FORM:

\*\*\*\*\*

1.02 "TO THE BEST OF MY KNOWLEDGE NO ASBESTOS CONTAINING MATERIAL WAS USED IN THE CONSTRUCTION OF THIS PROJECT. MATERIAL SAFETY DATA SHEETS WILL BE PROVIDED AS REQUESTED BY THE OWNER FOR ALL MATERIALS WHICH MAY BE QUESTIONED IN THE FUTURE."

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, THE UNDERSIGNED HAS SIGNED AND SEALED THIS INSTRUMENT THIS \_\_\_\_\_ DAY OF \_\_\_\_\_, 2019.

FIRM NAME \_\_\_\_\_

SIGNATURE \_\_\_\_\_

TITLE \_\_\_\_\_

(ATTEST) \_\_\_\_\_  
(SEAL IF BIDDER IS A CORPORATION)

AS DETERMINED NECESSARY, EVIDENCE OF COMPLIANCE MAY BE REQUIRED TO BE SUBMITTED WITH AND MADE A PART OF THIS CERTIFICATE.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 01 3216**  
**CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULE**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Preliminary schedule.
- B. Construction progress schedule, with network analysis diagrams and reports.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Within 10 days after date established in Notice to Proceed, submit preliminary schedule .
- B. If preliminary schedule requires revision after review, submit revised schedule within 10 days.
- C. Submit updated schedule with each Application for Payment.

**1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Scheduler: Contractor's personnel or specialist Consultant specializing in CPM scheduling with one years minimum experience in scheduling construction work of a complexity comparable to this Project, and having use of computer facilities capable of delivering a detailed graphic printout within 48 hours of request.

**1.05 SCEDULE FORMAT**

- A. Listings: In chronological order according to the start date for each activity. Identify each activity with the applicable specification section number.
- B. Scale and Spacing: To allow for notations and revisions.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 PRELIMINARY SCHEDULE**

- A. Prepare preliminary schedule in the form of a preliminary network diagram.

**3.02 CONTENT**

- A. Show complete sequence of construction by activity, with dates for beginning and completion of each element of construction.
- B. Identify each item by specification section number.
- C. Identify work of separate stages and other logically grouped activities.
- D. Provide sub-schedules to define critical portions of the entire schedule.
- E. Show accumulated percentage of completion of each item, and total percentage of Work completed, as of the first day of each month.
- F. Indicate delivery dates for owner-furnished products.
- G. Coordinate content with schedule of values specified in Section 01 2000 - Price and Payment Procedures.
- H. Provide legend for symbols and abbreviations used.

**3.03 NETWORK ANALYSIS**

- A. Prepare network analysis diagrams and supporting mathematical analyses using the Critical Path Method.
- B. Illustrate order and interdependence of activities and sequence of work; how start of a given activity depends on completion of preceding activities, and how completion of the activity may restrain start of subsequent activities.

**01 3216**  
**CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULE**

- C. Mathematical Analysis: Tabulate each activity of detailed network diagrams, using calendar dates, and identify for each activity:
  - 1. Preceding and following event numbers.
  - 2. Activity description.
  - 3. Estimated duration of activity, in maximum 15 day intervals.
  - 4. Earliest start date.
  - 5. Earliest finish date.
  - 6. Actual start date.
  - 7. Actual finish date.
  - 8. Latest start date.
  - 9. Latest finish date.
  - 10. Total and free float; float time shall accrue to Owner and to Owner's benefit.
  - 11. Monetary value of activity, keyed to Schedule of Values.
  - 12. Percentage of activity completed.
  - 13. Responsibility.
- D. Analysis Program: Capable of compiling monetary value of completed and partially completed activities, accepting revised completion dates, and recomputation of all dates and float.
- E. Required Reports: List activities in sorts or groups:
  - 1. By preceding work item or event number from lowest to highest.
  - 2. By amount of float, then in order of early start.

**3.04 REVIEW AND EVALUATION OF SCHEDULE**

- A. Participate in joint review and evaluation of schedule with Architect at each submittal.
- B. Evaluate project status to determine work behind schedule and work ahead of schedule.
- C. After review, revise as necessary as result of review, and resubmit within 10 days.

**3.05 UPDATING SCHEDULE**

- A. Maintain schedules to record actual start and finish dates of completed activities.
- B. Indicate progress of each activity to date of revision, with projected completion date of each activity.
- C. Annotate diagrams to graphically depict current status of Work.
- D. Identify activities modified since previous submittal, major changes in Work, and other identifiable changes.
- E. Indicate changes required to maintain Date of Substantial Completion.
- F. Submit reports required to support recommended changes.

**3.06 RECOVERY SCHEDULE**

- A. Should any conditions exist, such that certain activities shown on the Contractor's Detailed Construction Schedule fall behind schedule to the extent that any of the mandatory Milestone Dates or Completion Dates are in jeopardy, the Contractor shall be required to prepare and submit to the Owner and Architect, a supplementary Recovery Schedule, in a form and detail appropriate to the need, to explain and display how he intends to reschedule those activities to regain compliance with the Detailed Construction Schedule during the immediate subsequent pay period.
- B. The Contractor, Owner and Architect shall do the following after determination of the requirement for a Recovery Schedule:
  - 1. Within three (3) calendar days, the Contractor shall present to Owner and Architect the Recovery Schedule. The Recovery Schedule shall represent the Contractor's best judgment as to how he shall reorganize his work so that he may return to the approved Construction Schedule within the immediate subsequent pay period. The Recovery Schedule shall be prepared to a similar level of detail as the Construction Schedule.

**01 3216**  
**CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULE**

C. Five (5) calendar days prior to the expiration of the Recovery Schedule, the Owner, Architect and the Contractor will meet at the job site to determine whether the Contractor has regained compliance with the Construction Schedule. At the direction of the Owner, one of the following will happen:

1. If, in the opinion of the Owner, the Contractor is still behind schedule, the Contractor in conjunction with the Owner and Architect will prepare another Recovery Schedule, at the Contractor's expense, pursuant with 2.02 (B) of this Section, to take effect during the immediate subsequent pay period.
2. If, in the opinion of the Owner, the Contractor has sufficiently regained compliance with the Construction Schedule, the use of the Construction Schedule will be resumed.

**3.07 FLOAT TIME**

- A. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either the Contractor or the Owner. Contractor's work shall proceed according to start dates, and the Owner shall have the right to reserve and apportion float time according to the needs of the project. The Contractor acknowledges and agrees that actual delays, effecting paths of activities containing float time, will not have any affect upon Contract Completion times, providing that the actual delay does not exceed the float time associated with those activities.
- B. Extensions of time will be granted only to the extent that the activity or activities affected exceed the total float or slack along the path of activities affected at the time of Notice to Proceed of a Change Order or the commencement of any delay or condition for which an adjustment is warranted under the Contract Documents.

**3.08 DISTRIBUTION OF SCHEDULE**

- A. Distribute copies of updated schedules to Contractor's project site file, to subcontractors, suppliers, Architect, Owner, and other concerned parties.
- B. Instruct recipients to promptly report, in writing, problems anticipated by projections shown in schedules.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 3553**  
**SECURITY PROCEDURES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Security measures including formal security program, entry control, personnel identification, and miscellaneous restrictions.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 1000 - Summary: use of premises and occupancy.
- B. Section 01 5000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls: Temporary lighting.

**1.04 SECURITY PROGRAM**

- A. Protect Work, existing premises and Owner's operations from theft, vandalism, and unauthorized entry.
- B. Initiate program in coordination with Owner's existing security system at project mobilization.

**1.05 ENTRY CONTROL**

- A. Restrict entrance of persons and vehicles into Project site and existing facilities.
- B. Allow entrance only to authorized persons with proper identification.

**1.06 PERSONNEL IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Verify security protocol with Owner's security standards and personnel. Provide badging and background checks if required.

**1.07 RESTRICTIONS**

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 4000**  
**QUALITY REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Submittals.
- B. Quality assurance.
- C. References and standards.
- D. Testing and inspection agencies and services.
- E. Control of installation.
- F. Tolerances.
- G. Manufacturers' field services.
- H. Defect Assessment.
- I. Subcontractors pre-construction meetings.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements: Submittal procedures.
- B. Section 01 3001 - Electronic Management Procedures: Submittal procedures.
- C. Section 01 6600 - Delivery, Storage and Handling.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Design Data: Submit for Architect's knowledge as contract administrator for the limited purpose of assessing conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the contract documents, or for Owner's information.
- C. Test Reports: After each test/inspection, promptly submit two copies of report to Architect and to Contractor.
  1. Include:
    - a. Date issued.
    - b. Project title and number.
    - c. Name of inspector.
    - d. Date and time of sampling or inspection.
    - e. Identification of product and specifications section.
    - f. Location in the Project.
    - g. Type of test/inspection.
    - h. Date of test/inspection.
    - i. Results of test/inspection.
    - j. Conformance with Contract Documents.
    - k. When requested by Architect, provide interpretation of results.
  2. Test report submittals are for Architect's knowledge as contract administrator for the limited purpose of assessing conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the contract documents, or for Owner's information.
- D. Certificates: When specified in individual specification sections, submit certification by the manufacturer and Contractor or installation/application subcontractor to Architect, in quantities specified for Product Data.
  1. Indicate material or product conforms to or exceeds specified requirements. Submit supporting reference data, affidavits, and certifications as appropriate.

**01 4000**  
**QUALITY REQUIREMENTS**

2. Certificates may be recent or previous test results on material or product, but must be acceptable to Architect.
- E. Manufacturer's Instructions: When specified in individual specification sections, submit printed instructions for delivery, storage, assembly, installation, start-up, adjusting, and finishing, for the Owner's information. Indicate special procedures, perimeter conditions requiring special attention, and special environmental criteria required for application or installation.
- F. Identify conflicts between manufacturers' instructions and Contract Documents.
- G. Manufacturer's Field Reports: Submit reports for Architect's benefit as contract administrator or for Owner.
  1. Submit for information for the limited purpose of assessing conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the contract documents.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications:
  1. Prior to start of Work, submit agency name, address, and telephone number, and names of full time registered Engineer and responsible officer.

**1.06 REFERENCES AND STANDARDS**

- A. For products and workmanship specified by reference to a document or documents not included in the Project Manual, also referred to as reference standards, comply with requirements of the standard, except when more rigid requirements are specified or are required by applicable codes.
- B. Conform to reference standard of date of issue current on date of Contract Documents, except where a specific date is established by applicable code.
- C. Obtain copies of standards where required by product specification sections.
- D. Maintain copy at project site during submittals, planning, and progress of the specific work, until Substantial Completion.
- E. Should specified reference standards conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect before proceeding.
- F. Neither the contractual relationships, duties, or responsibilities of the parties in Contract nor those of Architect shall be altered from the Contract Documents by mention or inference otherwise in any reference document.

**1.07 TESTING AND INSPECTION AGENCIES AND SERVICES**

- A. Owner will appoint, employ, and pay for services of independent firm to perform inspection and testing required by the Building Code and Authority Having Jurisdiction (i.e. Soil compactions, concrete testing, special inspection required by structural, etc). All other testing required for products, product installation or product performance outlined in individual Specification Sections will be secured and paid for by the Contractor.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NONE**

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 CONTROL OF INSTALLATION**

- A. Monitor quality control over suppliers, manufacturers, products, services, site conditions, and workmanship, to produce Work of specified quality.
- B. Comply with manufacturers' instructions, including each step in sequence.
- C. Should manufacturers' instructions conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect before proceeding.
- D. Comply with specified standards as minimum quality for the Work except where more stringent tolerances, codes, or specified requirements indicate higher standards or more precise workmanship.
- E. Have Work performed by persons qualified to produce required and specified quality.

**01 4000**  
**QUALITY REQUIREMENTS**

- F. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings or as instructed by the manufacturer.
- G. Secure products in place with positive anchorage devices designed and sized to withstand stresses, vibration, physical distortion, and disfigurement.

**3.02 TOLERANCES**

- A. Monitor fabrication and installation tolerance control of products to produce acceptable Work. Do not permit tolerances to accumulate.
- B. Comply with manufacturers' tolerances. Should manufacturers' tolerances conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect before proceeding.
- C. Adjust products to appropriate dimensions; position before securing products in place.

**3.03 TESTING AND INSPECTION**

- A. See individual specification sections for testing and inspection required.
- B. Testing Agency Duties:
  - 1. Provide qualified personnel at site. Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of services.
  - 2. Perform specified sampling and testing of products in accordance with specified standards.
  - 3. Ascertain compliance of materials and mixes with requirements of Contract Documents.
  - 4. Promptly notify Architect and Contractor of observed irregularities or non-conformance of Work or products.
  - 5. Perform additional tests and inspections required by Architect.
  - 6. Attend preconstruction meetings and progress meetings when required by Contractor.
  - 7. Submit reports of all tests/inspections specified.
- C. Limits on Testing/Inspection Agency Authority:
  - 1. Agency may not release, revoke, alter, or enlarge on requirements of Contract Documents.
  - 2. Agency may not approve or accept any portion of the Work.
  - 3. Agency may not assume any duties of Contractor.
- D. Contractor Responsibilities:
  - 1. Deliver to agency at designated location, adequate samples of materials proposed to be used that require testing, along with proposed mix designs.
  - 2. Cooperate with laboratory personnel, and provide access to the Work and to manufacturers' facilities.
  - 3. Provide incidental labor and facilities:
    - a. To provide access to Work to be tested/inspected.
    - b. To obtain and handle samples at the site or at source of Products to be tested/inspected.
    - c. To facilitate tests/inspections.
    - d. To provide storage and curing of test samples.
  - 4. Notify Architect and laboratory 24 hours prior to expected time for operations requiring testing/inspection services.
  - 5. Employ services of an independent qualified testing laboratory and pay for additional samples, tests, and inspections required by Contractor beyond specified requirements.
  - 6. Arrange with Owner's agency and pay for additional samples, tests, and inspections required by Contractor beyond specified requirements.
- E. Re-testing required because of non-conformance to specified requirements shall be performed by the same agency on instructions by Architect.
- F. Re-testing required because of non-conformance to specified requirements shall be paid for by Contractor.

**01 4000**  
**QUALITY REQUIREMENTS**

**3.04 MANUFACTURERS' FIELD SERVICES**

- A. When specified in individual specification sections, require material or product suppliers or manufacturers to provide qualified staff personnel to observe site conditions, conditions of surfaces and installation, quality of workmanship, start-up of equipment, test, adjust and balance of equipment as applicable, and to initiate instructions when necessary.
- B. Report observations and site decisions or instructions given to applicators or installers that are supplemental or contrary to manufacturers' written instructions.

**3.05 DEFECT ASSESSMENT**

- A. Replace Work or portions of the Work not conforming to specified requirements.
- B. If, in the opinion of Architect, it is not practical to remove and replace the Work, Architect will direct an appropriate remedy or adjust payment.

**3.06 CONTRACTOR PROCESS RESPONSIBILITIES**

- A. The contractor will be required to attend a preconstruction meeting for each specification section. During the preconstruction meetings the following topics will be reviewed:
  1. Contract Documents
  2. RFI's
  3. Submittals
  4. Mock-Ups
  5. Possible Conflicts
  6. Compatibility Problems
  7. Scheduling
  8. Weather Limitations
  9. Manufacturer's written recommendations
  10. Warranty Requirements
  11. Acceptability of Substrates
  12. Logistical Planning
  13. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction
  14. Testing and Inspections
  15. Installation Procedures
  16. Coordination with other trades
  17. Required Performance Results
  18. Protection of Work
  19. Safety
- B. Significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements from the preconstruction meeting will be recorded including items assigned and resolution of measures or actions.
- C. Meeting minutes will be distributed to all parties who were present.
- D. Following the preconstruction meeting all Quality Control measures will be tracked and documented.
- E. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene at the earliest convenience.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 4200**  
**ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS**

**PART 1 – GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 ABBREVIATIONS:**

- A. Not Used.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS:**

- A. Certain terms used generally throughout the specifications (and drawings) are hereby defined as follows:
  1. Indicated: A cross reference to details, notes or schedules on the drawings, other paragraphs or schedules in the specifications, and similar means of recording requirements in the Contract Documents. Where terms such as "shown", "noted", "scheduled", and "specified" are used in lieu of "indicated", it is for the purpose of helping the reader accomplish the cross reference, and no limitation of location is intended except as specifically noted.
  2. Directed, Requested, etc.: Unless otherwise explained, terms such as "directed", "requested", "authorized", "selected", "approved", "required", "accepted", and "permitted" mean "directed by the Architect", "requested by the Architect", etc. However, no such implied meaning will be interpreted to extend the Architect's responsibility into the Contractor's area of construction supervision.
  3. Installer: The person or entity engaged by the Contractor or his Subcontractor or Sub-subcontractor for the performance of a particular unit of work at the project site, including installation, erection, application, and similar required operations. It is a general requirement that Installers be recognized experts in the work they are engaged to perform.
  4. Approve: Where used in conjunction with the Architect's or Engineer's response to submittals, requests, applications, inquiries, reports, and claims by the Contractor, the meaning of the term "approved" will be held to the limitations of the Architect's responsibilities and duties as specified in the General and Supplementary Conditions. In no case will "approval" by the Architect be interpreted as an assurance to the Contractor that the requirements of the Contract Documents have been fulfilled.
  5. Furnish: Except as otherwise defined in greater detail, the term "furnish" is used to mean "...supply and deliver to the project site, ready for unpacking, assembly and installation...".
  6. Provide: Except to the extent further defined, the term "provide" means to furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
  7. Guarantee and Warranty: "Warranty" is generally used in conjunction with products manufactured or fabricated away from the project site, and "guarantee" is generally used in conjunction with units of work which require both products and substantial amounts of labor at the project site. The resulting difference is that warranties are frequently issued by manufacturers and frequently supported (partially) by product guarantees from manufacturers.

**1.04 DRAWINGS, DIMENSION, AND MEASUREMENTS:**

- A. Where on any of the drawings a portion of the work is drawn out and the remainder is indicated in outline, the parts drawn out shall apply also to all other portions of the work.
- B. Wherever a detail is referenced and developed for a specific condition, same or similar detail shall apply to identical or similar conditions elsewhere on project even though not specifically referenced.
- C. Where the word "similar" occurs on the drawings, it shall be interpreted in its general sense and not as meaning identical, and all details shall be worked out in relation to their location and their connection with other parts of the work.

**01 4200**  
**ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS**

- D. The figured dimensions on the drawings or noted indicating dimensions shall be used instead of measurements of the drawings by scale, and shall be strictly complied with.
- E. No scale measurements shall be used as a dimension to work with except on "full size" drawings not dimensioned.

**1.05 SPECIFICATION EXPLANATION:**

- A. The specifications are divided into Divisions and Sections for the convenience of writing and using. The titles of these are not intended to imply a particular meaning nor to fully describe the work of each division or section, and are not an integral part of the text which specifies the requirements. The Architect is not bound to define the limits of any subcontract, and will not enter into disputes between the Contractor and his employees, including subcontractors.
- B. These specifications are of the abbreviated, or "streamlined" type, and include incomplete sentences.
- C. Omissions of words or phrases such as "the Contractor shall" "in conformity therewith", "shall be", "as noted on the drawings", "according to the plans", "a", "an", "the", and "all" are intentional.
- D. Omitted words or phrases shall be supplied by inference in the same manner as they are when a "note" occurs on the drawings.

**PART 2 – PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 – EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 01 4510

### SAFETY

#### PART 1 – GENERAL

##### 1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.02 PRELIMINARY WORK

- A. Prior to the start of and during the course of the Work (above and below ground) the Contractor shall make a thorough survey of the entire work site to determine all potential hazards. Workmen shall be made aware of those hazards and shall be instructed in procedures and the use of equipment for their protection. The Contractor shall verify the location and condition ("live" or "dead") of all utilities on and near the work site and take precautions to protect his employees, the general public, and the property.

##### 1.03 IMMINENT DANGER

- A. The Contractor shall be wholly responsible for any accidents (including death) occurring at any time during the progress of the work and until the final acceptance of the work by the Owner which may happen to any of his workmen or those of any Subcontractor employed on the building or the Owner, Architect and their representatives, or for any damage or injuries (including death) which his work and operations may cause to the work being constructed, or to existing buildings, or to any tenants and occupants of the property, or of the adjoining properties, or to the public or to any public or private property.

##### 1.04 SAFETY

- A. The Contractor shall ensure that all employees, visitors, subcontractor's employees, and suppliers' employees, while on the work site, comply with the requirements of OSHA, these requirements and the safety precautions contained in the several Specifications Sections. The Contractor shall promptly and fully comply with, execute and, without separate charge therefor to the Owner, shall enforce compliance with the Occupational Safety and Health Act requirements.
- B. The Contractor shall immediately advise the Owner of inspections conducted by OSHA, at the work site, and shall transmit copies of citations and violations to the Owner and Architect.

##### 1.05 SAFETY RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Contractor shall be responsible to:
  1. Ensure compliance with these requirements, OSHA requirements, and other safety requirements.
  2. Authorize immediate action to correct substandard safety conditions.
  3. Review and act to ensure compliance with safety procedures with his supervisors, subcontractors, and suppliers.
  4. Make thorough daily safety inspections of the work site and immediately act to eliminate unsafe acts and unsafe conditions.
  5. Investigate work-site accidents and recommend immediate corrective action.
  6. Assist in the preparation of accident investigation and reporting procedures.
  7. Be responsible for the control, availability, and use of safety equipment, including employee personal protective equipment.

##### 1.06 REQUEST FOR VARIANCES

- A. Requests for variances to deviate from OSHA requirements must follow the current established procedures by that Agency.

##### 1.07 FAILURE TO COMPLY

- A. If the project is shut down due to the Contractor's failure to comply with the requirements of OSHA or other applicable safety requirements, no part of the time loss due to any such suspension of operations or stop orders shall be made the subject of a claim for extension of time or for increased cost or damage by the Contractor.

**01 4510  
SAFETY**

**PART 2 – PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 – EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 5000**  
**TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Temporary utilities.
- B. Temporary telecommunications services.
- C. Temporary sanitary facilities.
- D. Temporary Controls: Barriers, enclosures, and fencing.
- E. Security requirements.
- F. Vehicular access and parking.
- G. Waste removal facilities and services.
- H. Project identification sign.
- I. Field offices.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 5100 - Temporary Utilities.
- B. Section 01 5213 - Field Offices and Sheds.
- C. Section 01 5500 - Vehicular Access and Parking.
- D. Section 01 5813 - Temporary Project Signage.

**1.04 TEMPORARY UTILITIES - SEE SECTION 01 5100**

**1.05 TELECOMMUNICATIONS SERVICES**

- A. Provide, maintain, and pay for telecommunications services to field office at time of project mobilization.
- B. Telecommunications services shall include:
  - 1. Windows-based personal computer dedicated to project telecommunications, with necessary software and laser printer.
  - 2. Internet Connections: Minimum of one; Cable modem or faster.
  - 3. Project web site.

**1.06 TEMPORARY SANITARY FACILITIES**

- A. Provide and maintain required facilities and enclosures. Provide at time of project mobilization.
- B. Use of existing facilities is not permitted.
- C. New permanent facilities may not be used during construction operations.
- D. Maintain daily in clean and sanitary condition.
- E. At end of construction, return facilities to same or better condition as originally found.

**1.07 BARRIERS**

- A. Provide barriers to prevent unauthorized entry to construction areas, to prevent access to areas that could be hazardous to workers or the public, to allow for owner's use of site and to protect existing facilities and adjacent properties from damage from construction operations and demolition.
- B. Provide barricades and covered walkways required by governing authorities for public rights-of-way and for public access to existing building.
- C. Provide protection for plants designated to remain. Replace damaged plants.

**01 5000**  
**TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS**

D. Protect non-owned vehicular traffic, stored materials, site, and structures from damage.

**1.08 FENCING**

A. Provide 6 foot high fence around construction site; equip with vehicular and pedestrian gates with locks.

**1.09 EXTERIOR ENCLOSURES**

A. Provide temporary weather tight closure of exterior openings to accommodate acceptable working conditions and protection for Products, to allow for temporary heating and maintenance of required ambient temperatures identified in individual specification sections, and to prevent entry of unauthorized persons. Provide access doors with self-closing hardware and locks.

**1.10 SECURITY - SEE SECTION 01 3553**

A. Provide security and facilities to protect Work, existing facilities, and Owner's operations from unauthorized entry, vandalism, or theft.

**1.11 VEHICULAR ACCESS AND PARKING - SEE SECTION 01 5500**

A. Comply with regulations relating to use of streets and sidewalks, access to emergency facilities, and access for emergency vehicles.  
B. Coordinate access and haul routes with governing authorities and Owner.  
C. Provide and maintain access to fire hydrants, free of obstructions.  
D. Provide means of removing mud from vehicle wheels before entering streets.  
E. Provide temporary parking areas to accommodate construction personnel. When site space is not adequate, provide additional off-site parking.

**1.12 WASTE REMOVAL**

A. Provide waste removal facilities and services as required to maintain the site in clean and orderly condition.  
B. Provide containers with lids. Remove trash from site periodically.  
C. If materials to be recycled or re-used on the project must be stored on-site, provide suitable non-combustible containers; locate containers holding flammable material outside the structure unless otherwise approved by the authorities having jurisdiction.  
D. Open free-fall chutes are not permitted. Terminate closed chutes into appropriate containers with lids.

**1.13 PROJECT SIGNS - SEE SECTION 01 5813**

**1.14 FIELD OFFICES - SEE SECTION 01 5213**

A. Office: Weathertight, with lighting, electrical outlets, heating, cooling equipment, and equipped with sturdy furniture, drawing rackand drawing display table.  
B. Provide space for Project meetings, with table and chairs to accommodate 6 persons.  
C. Locate offices a minimum distance of 30 feet from existing and new structures.

**1.15 REMOVAL OF UTILITIES, FACILITIES, AND CONTROLS**

A. Remove temporary utilities, equipment, facilities, materials, prior to Date of Substantial Completion inspection.  
B. Remove underground installations to a minimum depth of 2 feet. Grade site as indicated.  
C. Clean and repair damage caused by installation or use of temporary work.  
D. Restore existing facilities used during construction to original condition.  
E. Restore new permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION**

**01 5000  
TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS**

**SECTION 01 5100**  
**TEMPORARY UTILITIES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Temporary Utilities: Electricity, lighting, heat, ventilation, and water.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 5000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls:
  1. Temporary telecommunications services for administrative purposes.
  2. Temporary sanitary facilities required by law.

**1.04 TEMPORARY ELECTRICITY**

- A. Cost: By Contractor.
- B. Provide power service required from utility source.
- C. Power Service Characteristics: provide as required for project.
- D. Provide power outlets for construction operations, with branch wiring and distribution boxes located at each floor. Provide flexible power cords as required.
- E. Provide main service disconnect and over-current protection at convenient location and meter.
- F. Permanent convenience receptacles may be utilized during construction with GFCI connector.
- G. Provide adequate distribution equipment, wiring, and outlets to provide single phase branch circuits for power and lighting.

**1.05 TEMPORARY LIGHTING FOR CONSTRUCTION PURPOSES**

- A. Provide and maintain incandescent lighting for construction operations to achieve a minimum lighting level of 2 watt/sq ft .
- B. Provide branch wiring from power source to distribution boxes with lighting conductors, pigtails, and lamps as required.
- C. Maintain lighting and provide routine repairs.

**1.06 TEMPORARY HEATING**

- A. Cost of Energy: By Contractor.
- B. Provide heating devices and heat as needed to maintain specified conditions for construction operations.
- C. Maintain minimum ambient temperature of 50 degrees F in areas where construction is in progress, unless indicated otherwise in specifications. Verify with stage of construction for particular items if higher temperature is required.
- D. Existing facilities shall not be used.
- E. Prior to operation of permanent equipment for temporary heating purposes, verify that installation is approved for operation, equipment is lubricated and filters are in place. Provide and pay for operation, maintenance, and regular replacement of filters and worn or consumed parts.
- F. Use of temporary individual propane style heaters are not allowed to dry out or heat the building.

**1.07 TEMPORARY COOLING**

- A. Provide cooling devices and cooling as needed to maintain specified conditions for construction operations.

**01 5100**  
**TEMPORARY UTILITIES**

- B. Maintain maximum ambient temperature of 80 degrees F in areas where construction is in progress, unless indicated otherwise in specifications.

**1.08 TEMPORARY VENTILATION**

- A. Existing ventilation equipment may not be used.

**1.09 TEMPORARY WATER SERVICE**

- A. Cost of Water Used: By Contractor.
- B. Provide and maintain suitable quality water service for construction operations at time of project mobilization.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 5213**  
**FIELD OFFICES AND SHEDS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Temporary field offices for use of Contractor.
- B. Maintenance and removal.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 5000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls:
  1. Temporary telecommunications services for administrative purposes.
  2. Temporary sanitary facilities required by law.
- B. Section 01 5500: Parking and access to field offices.

**1.04 USE OF PERMANENT FACILITIES**

- A. Permanent facilities shall not be used for field offices.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MATERIALS, EQUIPMENT, FURNISHINGS**

- A. Materials, Equipment, Furnishings: Serviceable, new or used, adequate for required purpose.

**2.02 CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Construction: Structurally sound, secure, weather tight enclosures for office. Maintain during progress of Work; remove when no longer needed.

**2.03 ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROL**

- A. Heating, Cooling, and Ventilating: Automatic equipment to maintain comfort conditions.

**2.04 CONTRACTOR OFFICE AND FACILITIES**

- A. Size: For Contractor's needs and to provide space for project meetings.
- B. Furnishings in Meeting Area: Conference table and chairs to seat at least eight persons; racks and files for Contract Documents, submittals, and project record documents.
- C. Equipment: Six adjustable band protective helmets for visitors, one 10 inch outdoor weather thermometer.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Fill and grade sites for temporary structures to provide drainage away from buildings.

**3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install office spaces ready for occupancy 15 days after date fixed in Notice to Proceed.
- B. Parking: Two hard surfaced parking spaces for use by Owner and Architect, connected to office by hard surfaced walk.
- C. Employee Residential Occupancy: Not allowed on Owner's property.

**3.03 MAINTENANCE AND CLEANING**

- A. Weekly janitorial services for offices; periodic cleaning and maintenance for offices.

**01 5213**  
**FIELD OFFICES AND SHEDS**

**3.04 REMOVAL**

A. At completion of Work remove buildings, foundations, utility services, and debris. Restore areas.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 5500**  
**VEHICULAR ACCESS AND PARKING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Parking.
- B. Existing pavements and parking areas.
- C. Construction parking controls.
- D. Maintenance.
- E. Removal, repair.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. Temporary Construction: Contractor's option.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Clear areas, provide surface and storm drainage of road, parking, area premises, and adjacent areas.

**3.02 ACCESS ROADS**

- A. Use of designated existing on-site streets and driveways for construction traffic is permitted.
- B. Tracked vehicles not allowed on paved areas.
- C. Location as approved by Architect.
- D. Provide unimpeded access for emergency vehicles. Maintain 20 foot width driveways with turning space between and around combustible materials.
- E. Provide and maintain access to fire hydrants free of obstructions.

**3.03 PARKING**

- A. Use of new parking facilities by construction personnel is not permitted.
- B. Arrange for temporary parking areas to accommodate use of construction personnel.
- C. When site space is not adequate, provide additional off-site parking. Verify with local officials if off site parking is allowed.

**3.04 CONSTRUCTION PARKING CONTROL**

- A. Control vehicular parking to prevent interference with public traffic and parking, access by emergency vehicles, and Owner's operations.

**3.05 MAINTENANCE**

- A. Maintain traffic and parking areas in a sound condition free of excavated material, construction equipment, Products, mud, snow, and ice.
- B. Maintain existing paved areas used for construction; promptly repair breaks, potholes, low areas, standing water, and other deficiencies, to maintain paving and drainage in original, or specified, condition.

**3.06 REMOVAL, REPAIR**

- A. Repair existing facilities damaged by use, to original condition.

**01 5500  
VEHICULAR ACCESS AND PARKING**

B. Repair damage caused by installation.

**3.07 MUD FROM SITE VEHICLES**

A. Provide means of removing mud from vehicle wheels before entering streets.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 5813**  
**TEMPORARY PROJECT SIGNAGE**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Project identification sign.

**1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Design sign and structure to withstand 50 miles/hr wind velocity.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 SIGN MATERIALS**

- A. Structure and Framing: New, wood, structurally adequate.
- B. Sign Surfaces: Exterior grade plywood with medium density overlay, minimum 3/4 inch thick, standard large sizes to minimize joints.
- C. Paint and Primers: Exterior quality, two coats; sign background of color as selected.
- D. Lettering: Pre-cut vinyl self-adhesive products, white.

**2.02 PROJECT IDENTIFICATION SIGN**

- A. One painted sign, 48 sq ft area, bottom 6 feet above ground.
- B. Content:
  - 1. Project number, title, logo and name of Owner as indicated on Contract Documents.
  - 2. Names and titles of authorities.
  - 3. Names and titles of Architect.
  - 4. Name of Contractor
- C. Graphic Design, Colors, Style of Lettering: Designated by Architect.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install project identification sign within 30 days after date fixed by Notice to Proceed.
- B. Erect at designated location.
- C. Erect supports and framing on secure foundation, rigidly braced and framed to resist wind loadings.
- D. Install sign surface plumb and level, with butt joints. Anchor securely.
- E. Paint exposed surfaces of sign, supports, and framing.

**3.02 MAINTENANCE**

- A. Maintain signs and supports clean, repair deterioration and damage.

**3.03 REMOVAL**

- A. Remove signs, framing, supports, and foundations at completion of Project and restore the area.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 6600**  
**DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Provide for expeditious transportation and delivery of products to project site undamaged, on a schedule to avoid delay of the work.
- B. Provide equipment and personnel at the site to unload and handle products in a manner to avoid damage to products.
- C. Provide secure storage and protection for products to be incorporated into the work, and maintenance and protection for products after installation and until completion of the work.

**1.03 DELIVERY**

- A. Arrange deliveries of products in accord with construction schedules and in ample time to facilitate inspection prior to installation.
- B. Coordinate deliveries to avoid conflict with work and conditions at site.
  - 1. Work of other contractors, or Owner.
  - 2. Limitations of storage space.
  - 3. Availability of equipment and personnel for handling products.
- C. Deliver products in undamaged condition in original containers or packaging, with identifying labels intact and legible.
- D. Partial deliveries of component parts of equipment shall be clearly marked to identify the equipment, to permit easy accumulation of parts and to facilitate assembly.
- E. Immediately upon delivery, inspect shipment to assure:
  - 1. Product complies with requirements of Contract Documents and reviewed submittals.
  - 2. Quantities are correct.
  - 3. Containers and packages are intact, labels are legible.
  - 4. Products are properly protected and undamaged. Minor damages may be repaired, provided the finish items are equal in all respects to new work.

**1.04 PRODUCT HANDLING**

- A. Provide equipment and personnel necessary to handle products, including those provided by Owner, by methods to prevent soiling or damage to products or packaging.
- B. Provide additional protection during handling as necessary to prevent scraping, marring, or otherwise damaging products or surrounding surfaces.
- C. Handle products by methods to prevent bending or overstressing.
- D. Lift heavy components only at designated lifting points.

**1.05 STORAGE**

- A. Store products immediately on delivery, and protect until installed in the work. Store in accord with manufacturer's instructions, with seals and labels intact and legible.
- B. Store products subject to damage by elements in substantial weather-tight enclosures.
  - 1. Maintain temperatures within ranges required by manufacturer's instructions.
  - 2. Provide humidity control for sensitive products, as required by manufacturer's instructions.
  - 3. Store unpacked products on shelves, in bins, or in neat piles, accessible for inspection.
- C. Exterior Storage:
  - 1. Provide substantial platforms blocking, or skids to support fabricated products 4" above ground, prevent soiling or staining.

**01 6600  
DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING**

2. Cover products, subject to discoloration or deterioration from exposure to the elements, with impervious sheet coverings. Avoid use of nonvented plastic or canvas shelters that could create humidity chambers. Provide adequate ventilation to avoid condensation.
3. Store loose granular materials on solid surfaces such as paved areas, or provide plywood or sheet materials to prevent mixing with foreign matter.
  - a. Provide surface drainage to prevent flow or ponding of rainwater.
  - b. Prevent mixing of refuse or chemically injurious materials or liquids.

D. Arrange storage in manner to provide easy access for inspection.

**1.06 MAINTENANCE OF STORAGE**

- A. Maintain periodic system of inspection of stored products on schedules basis to assure that:
  1. State of storage facilities is adequate to provide required conditions.
  2. Required environmental conditions are maintained on continuing basis.
  3. Surfaces of products exposed to elements are not adversely affected. Any weathering of products, coatings, and finishes is not acceptable under requirement of Contract Documents.

**1.07 PROTECTION AFTER INSTALLATION**

- A. Provide protection of installed products to prevent damage from subsequent operations. Remove when no longer needed, prior to completion of work.
- B. Control traffic to prevent damage to equipment and surfaces.
- C. Provide coverings to protect finished surfaces from damage.

**1.08 DAMAGED PRODUCTS**

- A. Damaged or deteriorated materials shall be removed from the premises. Replace materials that have been damaged.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 7000**  
**EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Examination, preparation, and general installation procedures.
- B. Requirements for alterations work, including selective demolition, \_\_\_\_\_.
- C. Pre-installation meetings.
- D. Cutting and patching.
- E. Surveying for laying out the work.
- F. Cleaning and protection.
- G. Starting of systems and equipment.
- H. Demonstration and instruction of Owner personnel.
- I. Closeout procedures, including Contractor's Correction Punch List, except payment procedures.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements: Submittals procedures, Electronic document submittal service.
- B. Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements: Testing and inspection procedures.
- C. Section 01 5000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls: Temporary exterior enclosures.
- D. Section 01 5100 - Temporary Utilities: Temporary heating, cooling, and ventilating facilities.
- E. Section 01 7610
- F. Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals: Project record documents, operation and maintenance data, warranties and bonds.
- G. Section 01 7900 - Demonstration and Training: Demonstration of products and systems to be commissioned and where indicated in specific specification sections
- H. Section 01 9113 - General Commissioning Requirements: Contractor's responsibilities in regard to commissioning.
- I. Section 02 4100 - Demolition: Demolition of whole structures and parts thereof; site utility demolition.
- J. Section 07 8400 - Firestopping.
- K. Individual Product Specification Sections:
  - 1. Advance notification to other sections of openings required in work of those sections.
  - 2. Limitations on cutting structural members.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Survey work: Submit name, address, and telephone number of Surveyor before starting survey work.
  - 1. On request, submit documentation verifying accuracy of survey work.
  - 2. Submit a copy of site drawing signed by the Land Surveyor, that the elevations and locations of the work are in conformance with Contract Documents.
  - 3. Submit surveys and survey logs for the project record.
- C. Cutting and Patching: Submit written request in advance of cutting or alteration that affects:
  - 1. Structural integrity of any element of Project.

**01 7000**  
**EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS**

2. Integrity of weather exposed or moisture resistant element.
3. Efficiency, maintenance, or safety of any operational element.
4. Visual qualities of sight exposed elements.
5. Work of Owner or separate Contractor.
6. Include in request:
  - a. Identification of Project.
  - b. Location and description of affected work.
  - c. Necessity for cutting or alteration.
  - d. Description of proposed work and products to be used.
  - e. Effect on work of Owner or separate Contractor.
  - f. Written permission of affected separate Contractor.
  - g. Date and time work will be executed.

**1.05 QUALIFICATIONS**

- A. For demolition work, employ a firm specializing in the type of work required.
  1. Minimum of 5 years of documented experience.
- B. For survey work, employ a land surveyor registered in Oregon and acceptable to Architect. Submit evidence of Surveyor's Errors and Omissions insurance coverage in the form of an Insurance Certificate.
- C. For design of temporary shoring and bracing, employ a Professional Engineer experienced in design of this type of work and licensed in Oregon.

**1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Use of explosives is not permitted.
- B. Grade site to drain. Maintain excavations free of water. Provide, operate, and maintain pumping equipment.
- C. Protect site from puddling or running water. Provide water barriers as required to protect site from soil erosion.
- D. Ventilate enclosed areas to assist cure of materials, to dissipate humidity, and to prevent accumulation of dust, fumes, vapors, or gases.
- E. Dust Control: Execute work by methods to minimize raising dust from construction operations. Provide positive means to prevent air-borne dust from dispersing into atmosphere and over adjacent property.
  1. Provide dust-proof barriers between construction areas and areas continuing to be occupied by Owner.
- F. Erosion and Sediment Control: Plan and execute work by methods to control surface drainage from cuts and fills, from borrow and waste disposal areas. Prevent erosion and sedimentation.
  1. Provide temporary measures such as berms, dikes, and drains, to prevent water flow.
  2. Construct fill and waste areas by selective placement to avoid erosive surface silts or clays.
  3. Periodically inspect earthwork to detect evidence of erosion and sedimentation; promptly apply corrective measures.
- G. Noise Control: Provide methods, means, and facilities to minimize noise produced by construction operations.
  1. Outdoors: Limit conduct of especially noisy exterior work to the hours of 7 am to 4 pm.
- H. Pollution Control: Provide methods, means, and facilities to prevent contamination of soil, water, and atmosphere from discharge of noxious, toxic substances, and pollutants produced by construction operations. Comply with federal, state, and local regulations.

**1.07 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate scheduling, submittals, and work of the various sections of the Project Manual to ensure efficient and orderly sequence of installation of interdependent construction elements, with provisions for accommodating items installed later.

**01 7000**  
**EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS**

- B. Notify affected utility companies and comply with their requirements.
- C. Verify that utility requirements and characteristics of new operating equipment are compatible with building utilities. Coordinate work of various sections having interdependent responsibilities for installing, connecting to, and placing in service, such equipment.
- D. Coordinate space requirements, supports, and installation of mechanical and electrical work that are indicated diagrammatically on Drawings. Follow routing shown for pipes, ducts, and conduit, as closely as practicable; place runs parallel with lines of building. Utilize spaces efficiently to maximize accessibility for other installations, for maintenance, and for repairs.
- E. In finished areas except as otherwise indicated, conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring within the construction. Coordinate locations of fixtures and outlets with finish elements.
- F. Coordinate completion and clean-up of work of separate sections.
- G. After Owner occupancy of premises, coordinate access to site for correction of defective work and work not in accordance with Contract Documents, to minimize disruption of Owner's activities.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 PATCHING MATERIALS**

- A. New Materials: As specified in product sections; match existing products and work for patching and extending work.
- B. Type and Quality of Existing Products: Determine by inspecting and testing products where necessary, referring to existing work as a standard.
- C. Product Substitution: For any proposed change in materials, submit request for substitution described in Section 2500 - Substitutions.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that existing site conditions and substrate surfaces are acceptable for subsequent work. Start of work means acceptance of existing conditions.
- B. Verify that existing substrate is capable of structural support or attachment of new work being applied or attached.
- C. Examine and verify specific conditions described in individual specification sections.
- D. Take field measurements before confirming product orders or beginning fabrication, to minimize waste due to over-ordering or misfabrication.
- E. Verify that utility services are available, of the correct characteristics, and in the correct locations.
- F. Prior to Cutting: Examine existing conditions prior to commencing work, including elements subject to damage or movement during cutting and patching. After uncovering existing work, assess conditions affecting performance of work. Beginning of cutting or patching means acceptance of existing conditions.

**3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean substrate surfaces prior to applying next material or substance.
- B. Seal cracks or openings of substrate prior to applying next material or substance.
- C. Apply manufacturer required or recommended substrate primer, sealer, or conditioner prior to applying any new material or substance in contact or bond.

**3.03 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

- A. When required in individual specification sections, convene a preinstallation meeting at the site prior to commencing work of the section.
- B. Require attendance of parties directly affecting, or affected by, work of the specific section.
- C. Notify Architect four days in advance of meeting date.

**01 7000**  
**EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS**

- D. Prepare agenda and preside at meeting:
  - 1. Review conditions of examination, preparation and installation procedures.
  - 2. Review coordination with related work.
- E. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

**3.04 LAYING OUT THE WORK**

- A. Verify locations of survey control points prior to starting work.
- B. Promptly notify Architect of any discrepancies discovered.
- C. Owner will locate and protect survey control and reference points.
- D. Protect survey control points prior to starting site work; preserve permanent reference points during construction.
- E. Promptly report to Architect the loss or destruction of any reference point or relocation required because of changes in grades or other reasons.
- F. Replace dislocated survey control points based on original survey control. Make no changes without prior written notice to Architect.
- G. Utilize recognized engineering survey practices.
- H. Establish elevations, lines and levels. Locate and lay out by instrumentation and similar appropriate means:
  - 1. Site improvements including pavements; stakes for grading, fill and topsoil placement; utility locations, slopes, and invert elevations.
  - 2. Grid or axis for structures.
  - 3. Building foundation, column locations, ground floor elevations, and Parking and drives.
- I. Periodically verify layouts by same means.
- J. Maintain a complete and accurate log of control and survey work as it progresses.

**3.05 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Install products as specified in individual sections, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, and so as to avoid waste due to necessity for replacement.
- B. Make vertical elements plumb and horizontal elements level, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install equipment and fittings plumb and level, neatly aligned with adjacent vertical and horizontal lines, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Make consistent texture on surfaces, with seamless transitions, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Make neat transitions between different surfaces, maintaining texture and appearance.

**3.06 CUTTING AND PATCHING**

- A. Submit written request for cutting approval to Architect well in advance of any cutting which affects:
  - 1. Work of Owner or any separate Contractor.
  - 2. Structural value or integrity of any completed or existing work.
  - 3. Waterproof value or integrity of any weather exposed or moisture resistant work.
  - 4. Efficiency, operational life, maintenance, or safety of any completed or existing work.
  - 5. Visual qualities of any sight exposed work.
- B. Request shall include:
  - 1. Project identification.
  - 2. Location and Description of affected work.
  - 3. Necessity for cutting, alteration, or excavation
  - 4. Effect on Owner's or separate Contractor's work.
  - 5. Effect on structural or weatherproof integrity on completed or existing work.
  - 6. Description of proposed work including:
    - a. Extent of cutting, patching, alteration, or excavation.

**01 7000**  
**EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS**

- b. Trades who will execute work.
- c. Products proposed for use.
- d. Extent of required refinishing.
- 7. Alternative to cutting and patching.
- 8. Cost proposal, when applicable.

C.

- D. Whenever possible, execute the work by methods that avoid cutting or patching.
- E. Perform whatever cutting and patching is necessary to:
  1. Complete the work.
  2. Fit products together to integrate with other work.
  3. Provide openings for penetration of mechanical, electrical, and other services.
  4. Match work that has been cut to adjacent work.
  5. Repair areas adjacent to cuts to required condition.
  6. Repair new work damaged by subsequent work.
  7. Remove samples of installed work for testing when requested.
  8. Remove and replace defective and non-conforming work.
- F. Execute work by methods that avoid damage to other work and that will provide appropriate surfaces to receive patching and finishing. In existing work, minimize damage and restore to original condition.
- G. Employ original installer to perform cutting for weather exposed and moisture resistant elements, and sight exposed surfaces.
- H. Cut rigid materials using masonry saw or core drill. Pneumatic tools not allowed without prior approval.
- I. Restore work with new products in accordance with requirements of Contract Documents.
- J. Fit work air tight to pipes, sleeves, ducts, conduit, and other penetrations through surfaces.
- K. At penetrations of fire rated walls, partitions, ceiling, or floor construction, completely seal voids with fire rated material in accordance with Section 07 8400, to full thickness of the penetrated element.
- L. Patching:
  1. Finish patched surfaces to match finish that existed prior to patching. On continuous surfaces, refinish to nearest intersection or natural break. For an assembly, refinish entire unit.
  2. Match color, texture, and appearance.
  3. Repair patched surfaces that are damaged, lifted, discolored, or showing other imperfections due to patching work. If defects are due to condition of substrate, repair substrate prior to repairing finish.

**3.07 PROGRESS CLEANING**

- A. Maintain areas free of waste materials, debris, and rubbish. Maintain site in a clean and orderly condition to the satisfaction of the Architect.
- B. Remove debris and rubbish from pipe chases, plenums, attics, crawl spaces, and other closed or remote spaces, prior to enclosing the space.
- C. Broom and vacuum clean interior areas prior to start of surface finishing, and continue cleaning to eliminate dust.
- D. Collect and remove waste materials, debris, and trash/rubbish from site weekly and dispose off-site; do not burn or bury.

**3.08 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED WORK**

- A. See Section 01 7610 for temporary protective covering materials.
- B. Protect installed work from damage by construction operations.
- C. Provide special protection where specified in individual specification sections.

**01 7000**  
**EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS**

- D. Provide temporary and removable protection for installed products. Control activity in immediate work area to prevent damage.
- E. Provide protective coverings at walls, projections, jambs, sills, and soffits of openings.
- F. Protect finished floors, stairs, and other surfaces from traffic, dirt, wear, damage, or movement of heavy objects, by protecting with durable sheet materials.
- G. Protect work from spilled liquids. If work is exposed to spilled liquids, immediately remove protective coverings, dry out work, and replace protective coverings.
- H. Prohibit traffic or storage upon waterproofed or roofed surfaces. If traffic or activity is necessary, obtain recommendations for protection from waterproofing or roofing material manufacturer.
- I. Prohibit traffic from landscaped areas.
- J. Remove protective coverings when no longer needed; reuse or recycle coverings if possible.

**3.09 SYSTEM STARTUP**

- A. Coordinate with requirements of Section 01 9113 - General Commissioning Requirements.
- B. Coordinate schedule for start-up of various equipment and systems.
- C. Notify Architect and owner seven days prior to start-up of each item.
- D. Verify that each piece of equipment or system has been checked for proper lubrication, drive rotation, belt tension, control sequence, and for conditions that may cause damage.
- E. Verify tests, meter readings, and specified electrical characteristics agree with those required by the equipment or system manufacturer.
- F. Verify that wiring and support components for equipment are complete and tested.
- G. Execute start-up under supervision of applicable Contractor personnel and manufacturer's representative in accordance with manufacturers' instructions.
- H. When specified in individual specification Sections, require manufacturer to provide authorized representative to be present at site to inspect, check, and approve equipment or system installation prior to start-up, and to supervise placing equipment or system in operation.
- I. Submit a written report that equipment or system has been properly installed and is functioning correctly.

**3.10 DEMONSTRATION AND INSTRUCTION**

- A. See Section 01 7900 - Demonstration and Training.

**3.11 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust operating products and equipment to ensure smooth and unhindered operation.
- B. Testing, adjusting, and balancing HVAC systems: See Section 23 0593 - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC.

**3.12 FINAL CLEANING**

- A. Execute final cleaning prior to final project assessment.
- B. Use cleaning materials that are nonhazardous.
- C. Clean interior and exterior glass, surfaces exposed to view; remove temporary labels, stains and foreign substances, polish transparent and glossy surfaces, vacuum carpeted and soft surfaces.
- D. Remove all labels that are not permanent. Do not paint or otherwise cover fire test labels or nameplates on mechanical and electrical equipment.
- E. Clean equipment and fixtures to a sanitary condition with cleaning materials appropriate to the surface and material being cleaned.
- F. Clean filters of operating equipment.

**01 7000**  
**EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS**

- G. Clean debris from roofs, gutters, downspouts, scuppers, overflow drains, area drains, and drainage systems.
- H. Clean site; sweep paved areas, rake clean landscaped surfaces.
- I. Remove waste, surplus materials, trash/rubbish, and construction facilities from the site; dispose of in legal manner; do not burn or bury.

**3.13 DESCRIPTION OF REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Definitions: Project Closeout is the terminology used to describe certain collective project requirements, indicating completion of Work, that shall be fulfilled near end of Contract time in preparation for Final Acceptance and occupancy of Work by the Owner, as well as final payment to Contractor and normal termination of Contract.
- B. Time of Contract Closeout is directly related to "Substantial Completion"; therefore, time of closeout may be either single time period for entire Work or series of time periods for individual elements of Work that have been certified as substantially complete at different dates. This time variation, if any, shall be applicable to other provisions of this Section.

**3.14 PREREQUISITES TO SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

- A. Complete following before requesting Architect's review for certification of Substantial Completion, either for entire Work or for portions of Work. List known exceptions in request.
  - 1. In progress payment request that coincides with, or is first request following date Substantial Completion is claimed, show either 100% completion for portion of Work claimed as "substantially complete", or list incomplete items, value of incomplete Work, and reason for Work being incomplete.
  - 2. Include supporting documentation for completing Work noted as incomplete as indicated in these Contract Documents.
  - 3. Submit statement showing accounting of changes to Contract Sum.
  - 4. Submit specific warranties, workmanship/maintenance bonds, maintenance agreements, final certifications and similar documents.
  - 5. Deliver tools, spare parts, extra stock of material and similar physical items to the Owner.
  - 6. Complete start-up testing of systems, Performance Periods, and instruction of the Owner's operating and maintenance personnel. Discontinue or change over and remove temporary facilities and services from Project Site, along with construction tools and facilities mock-ups and similar elements.
  - 7. Complete final cleanup requirements, including touch-up painting of blemished surfaces.
  - 8. Test fire and life safety systems in presence of Owner, Architect and City/County/State officials.
  - 9. Obtain State of Oregon Approvals Author8ity Having Jurisdiction as required.
  - 10. Complete major punchlist items.
  - 11. Contractor shall submit copy of Contractor's Punchlist to Architect, clearly stating that building is ready for review with exception of items noted in Contractor's Punchlist.
- B. Review procedure: Upon receipt of Contractor's request for review, Architect will either proceed with review or advise Contractor of unfulfilled prerequisites.
- C. Following initial review, Architect will either prepare Certificate of Substantial Completion or will advise Contractor of Work that must be performed before Certificate will be issued.
- D. Results of completed review will form initial "punchlist" for final acceptance.

**3.15 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES**

- A. Make submittals that are required by governing or other authorities.
- B. Notify Architect when work is considered ready for Architect's Substantial Completion inspection.
- C. Submit written certification containing Contractor's Correction Punch List, that Contract Documents have been reviewed, work has been inspected, and that work is complete in

**01 7000**  
**EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS**

accordance with Contract Documents and ready for Architect's Substantial Completion inspection.

- D. Conduct Substantial Completion inspection and create Final Correction Punch List containing Architect's and Contractor's comprehensive list of items identified to be completed or corrected and submit to Architect.
- E. Correct items of work listed in Final Correction Punch List and comply with requirements for access to Owner-occupied areas.
- F. Notify Architect when work is considered finally complete and ready for Architect's Substantial Completion final inspection.
- G. Complete items of work determined by Architect listed in executed Certificate of Substantial Completion.

**3.16 FINAL INSPECTION**

- A. When Contractor considers Work complete, he shall submit written certification that:
  1. Contract Documents have been reviewed.
  2. Contractor has inspected Work for compliance with Contract Documents.
  3. Work has been completed in accordance with Contract Documents.
  4. The Project, properties, and streets are finally cleaned of debris and dirt caused by Contractor operations.
  5. Work is complete and ready for final inspection.
- B. Architect will inspect Work to verify completion status as soon as possible after receipt of Contractor's certification.
- C. Should Architect consider Work incomplete or defective:
  1. Architect will promptly notify Contractor and Owner in writing, listing incomplete or defective work.
  2. Contractor shall immediately remedy deficiencies, and send second written certification to Architect that Work is complete.
  3. Architect will re-inspect Work.
- D. When Architect and Owner find Work acceptable under Contract Documents, they will jointly request Contractor to make closeout submittals.

**3.17 REINSPECTION FEES**

- A. Should Architect be required to make more than two Substantial inspections or one Final inspection due to Contractor's failure to correct specified deficiencies, the Contractor shall bear all costs (including compensation for the Architect's and Owners Representative's additional services) made necessary thereby.

**3.18 EVIDENCE OF PAYMENTS AND RELEASE OF LIENS**

- A. Contractor shall submit to the Owner the following:
  1. Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debt and Claims (AIA Documents G706, or similar form approved by the Owner).
  2. Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens (AIA Documents G706A or similar form approved by the Owner) including the following:
    - a. Contractor's Release or Waiver of Liens.
    - b. Separate releases or Waivers of Lien for each Subcontractor, supplier, and others with lien rights against Owner's property, together with list of those parties.
- B. Duly sign and execute all submittals, before delivery to Owner.

**3.19 FINAL ADJUSTMENT OF ACCOUNTS**

- A. Submit final statement of accounting to the Owner, including the following:
  1. Original Contract Sum.
  2. Additions and deductions resulting from:
    - a. Previous Change Orders.
    - b. Deductions for incomplete Work. (if any)

**01 7000**  
**EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS**

- c. Deductions for Liquidated Damages. (if any)
- d. Deductions for Re-inspection Payments (if any)
- 3. Total Contract Sum, as adjusted.
- 4. Previous Payments
- 5. Sum remaining due.

B. The Owner will prepare and issue final Change Order, reflecting approved adjustments to Contract Sum not previously made by Change Orders.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 7413**  
**CLEANING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Work included: Throughout the construction period, maintain the project site where work is carried out in a standard of cleanliness as described in this section.
- B. Related work described elsewhere: In addition to standards described in this Section, comply with all requirements for cleaning as described in other various Sections of these Specifications.

**1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Inspection: Conduct daily inspection, and more often if necessary, to verify that requirements of cleanliness are being met.
- B. Codes and Standards: In addition to the standard described in this section, comply with all pertinent requirements of governmental agencies having jurisdiction.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 CLEANING MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT**

- A. Provide all required personnel, equipment, and materials needed to maintain specified standard of cleanliness.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 PROGRESS CLEANING**

- A. General:
  1. Retain all stored items in an orderly arrangement allowing maximum access, not impeding drainage or traffic, and providing the required protection of materials.
  2. Do not allow the accumulation of scrap, debris, waste material, and other items not required for construction of this Work.
  3. Provide adequate storage for all items, awaiting removal from the job site, observing all requirements for fire prevention and protection of the ecology.
  4. Comply with the cleaning requirements of other sections in the Project Manual.
- B. Site:
  1. Weekly, and more often if necessary, inspect all arrangements of materials stored on the site; restack, tidy, or otherwise service. All arrangements to meet the requirements of paragraph 3.01, A.1. above.
  2. Maintain the site in a neat and orderly condition at all times to the satisfaction of the Construction Program Manager.

**3.02 DUST CONTROL**

- A. Maintain continuous cleaning and wetting procedures to control dust pollution at project site and haul routes as required by governing authorities and the Contract Documents. Use power sweepers for street cleaning.
- B. Schedule cleaning so that resultant dust and contaminants will not fall on wet or newly coated surfaces.
- C. Erect dust proof barriers at the interior of building to control the spreading of construction generated dust and debris to areas of the building not affected by renovation work.
- D. Provide dampened walk-off mats at dust proof barriers that are also used to access other areas of the building to prevent tracking of dust and debris to areas of the building not affected by renovation work. Provide progress cleaning as required.

### **3.03 CLOSEOUT CLEANING**

- A. Closeout cleaning shall be limited to those areas in which construction occurred and also the on-site sanitary facilities used by the contractor. Contractor will be required to clean adjacent spaces of construction if dirt or dust penetrated the temporary barrier.
- B. Provide final cleaning of Work prior to Final Inspection at time indicated. Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit of work to condition expected from normal commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations. Complete following cleaning operations before requesting Owner review for Certification of Substantial Completion:
  1. Clean equipment and fixtures to sanitary condition.
  2. Clean or replace filters of operating equipment.
  3. Clean debris from roofs, gutters, downspouts, and drainage systems.
  4. Clean mechanical and electrical equipment and spaces, including tops of pipes, ducts, equipment, etc.
  5. Remove grease, mastic, adhesives, dust, dirt, stains, fingerprints, labels and other foreign matter from sight exposed interior and exterior surfaces.
  6. Hose-clean exterior paved surfaces, rake clean other surfaces of grounds.
  7. Re-clean areas or equipment, after final inspection, if dirtied as result of Contractor's work in preparing for final inspection or completion of punchlist.
  8. Restore landscape damaged as a result of construction of this project including removal of ruts caused by vehicle traffic, removal of construction debris, replacement of damaged or contaminated soils and mulches, reseeding of damaged lawns, restoration of sidewalks or pathways damaged during construction and other landscaping repairs required as a result of construction activity as directed by the Owner's Representative.
- C. Removal of protection: Except as otherwise indicated or requested by Owner, remove temporary protection devices and facilities which were installed during course of Work to protect previously completed Work during remainder of construction period or to protect public.
- D. Compliance:
  1. Comply with safety standards and governing regulations for cleaning operations.
  2. Do not burn waste materials at Site.
  3. Do not bury debris or excess materials on Owner's property.
  4. Do not discharge volatile or other harmful or dangerous materials into drainage systems.
  5. Remove waste materials from Site and dispose of in lawful manner.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 7419**  
**CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 WASTE MANAGEMENT REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Owner requires that this project generate the least amount of trash and waste possible.
- B. Employ processes that ensure the generation of as little waste as possible due to error, poor planning, breakage, mishandling, contamination, or other factors.
- C. Minimize trash/waste disposal in landfills; reuse, salvage, or recycle as much waste as economically feasible.
- D. Contractor shall submit periodic Waste Disposal Reports; all landfill disposal, incineration, recycling, salvage, and reuse must be reported regardless of to whom the cost or savings accrues; use the same units of measure on all reports.
- E. Methods of trash/waste disposal that are not acceptable are:
  - 1. Burning on the project site.
  - 2. Burying on the project site.
  - 3. Dumping or burying on other property, public or private.
  - 4. Other illegal dumping or burying.
- F. Regulatory Requirements: Contractor is responsible for knowing and complying with regulatory requirements, including but not limited to Federal, state and local requirements, pertaining to legal disposal of all construction and demolition waste materials.

**1.02 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Clean: Untreated and unpainted; not contaminated with oils, solvents, caulk, or the like.
- B. Construction and Demolition Waste: Solid wastes typically including building materials, packaging, trash, debris, and rubble resulting from construction, remodeling, repair and demolition operations.
- C. Hazardous: Exhibiting the characteristics of hazardous substances, i.e., ignitability, corrosivity, toxicity or reactivity.
- D. Nonhazardous: Exhibiting none of the characteristics of hazardous substances, i.e., ignitability, corrosivity, toxicity, or reactivity.
- E. Nontoxic: Neither immediately poisonous to humans nor poisonous after a long period of exposure.
- F. Recyclable: The ability of a product or material to be recovered at the end of its life cycle and remanufactured into a new product for reuse by others.
- G. Recycle: To remove a waste material from the project site to another site for remanufacture into a new product for reuse by others.
- H. Recycling: The process of sorting, cleansing, treating and reconstituting solid waste and other discarded materials for the purpose of using the altered form. Recycling does not include burning, incinerating, or thermally destroying waste.
- I. Return: To give back reusable items or unused products to vendors for credit.
- J. Reuse: To reuse a construction waste material in some manner on the project site.
- K. Salvage: To remove a waste material from the project site to another site for resale or reuse by others.
- L. Sediment: Soil and other debris that has been eroded and transported by storm or well production run-off water.
- M. Source Separation: The act of keeping different types of waste materials separate beginning from the first time they become waste.
- N. Toxic: Poisonous to humans either immediately or after a long period of exposure.

**01 7419**  
**CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL**

- O. Trash: Any product or material unable to be reused, returned, recycled, or salvaged.
- P. Waste: Extra material or material that has reached the end of its useful life in its intended use. Waste includes salvageable, returnable, recyclable, and reusable material.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**2.01 WASTE MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES**

- A. See Section 01 3000 for additional requirements for project meetings, reports, submittal procedures, and project documentation.
- B. See Section 01 5000 for additional requirements related to trash/waste collection and removal facilities and services.
- C. See Section 01 6000 for waste prevention requirements related to delivery, storage, and handling.
- D. See Section 01 7000 for trash/waste prevention procedures related to demolition, cutting and patching, installation, protection, and cleaning.

**2.02 WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN IMPLEMENTATION**

- A. Manager: Designate an on-site person or persons responsible for instructing workers and overseeing and documenting results of the Waste Management Plan.
- B. Communication: Distribute copies of the Waste Management Plan to job site foreman, each subcontractor, Owner, and Architect.
- C. Instruction: Provide on-site instruction of appropriate separation, handling, and recycling, salvage, reuse, and return methods to be used by all parties at the appropriate stages of the project.
- D. Meetings: Discuss trash/waste management goals and issues at project meetings.
  1. Pre-bid meeting.
  2. Pre-construction meeting.
  3. Regular job-site meetings.
- E. Facilities: Provide specific facilities for separation and storage of materials for recycling, salvage, reuse, return, and trash disposal, for use by all contractors and installers.
  1. Provide containers as required.
  2. Provide adequate space for pick-up and delivery and convenience to subcontractors.
  3. Keep recycling and trash/waste bin areas neat and clean and clearly marked in order to avoid contamination of materials.
- F. Hazardous Wastes: Separate, store, and dispose of hazardous wastes according to applicable regulations.
- G. Recycling: Separate, store, protect, and handle at the site identified recyclable waste products in order to prevent contamination of materials and to maximize recyclability of identified materials. Arrange for timely pickups from the site or deliveries to recycling facility in order to prevent contamination of recyclable materials.
- H. Reuse of Materials On-Site: Set aside, sort, and protect separated products in preparation for reuse.
- I. Salvage: Set aside, sort, and protect products to be salvaged for reuse off-site.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 7610**  
**TEMPORARY PROTECTIVE COVERINGS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Temporary protective coverings for installed floors, walls, and other surfaces.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 7000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Coordination of requirements for materials specified in this section.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ANSI A135.4 - American National Standard for Basic Hardboard; 2012.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 GENERAL**

- A. Provide materials that are easily removed without damage to the surfaces covered and with the following characteristics:
  1. Water resistant.
  2. Vapor permeable.
  3. Impact resistant.
  4. Slip resistant.

**2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. Sheet Materials:
  1. Corrugated polypropylene sheet.
  2. Recycled paperboard/plastic composite sheet.
  3. Recycled paperboard sheet.
  4. Wood Hardboard: ANSI A135.4, tempered, 1/4 inch thick nominal.
- B. Rolled Materials:
  1. Recycled cellulose fiberboard paper.
  2. Laminated glass fiber reinforced kraft paper.
- C. Door Jamb Protection Materials:
  1. Cardboard, shaped specifically for application.
  2. PVC plastic.
  3. Length: 60 inch.
- D. Tape: Type recommended by protective covering material manufacturer.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Remove dirt and debris from surfaces to be protected.

**3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Trim or overlap sheet materials to fit area to be covered.
- C. Roll out and cut rolled materials to fit area to be covered.

**01 7610**  
**TEMPORARY PROTECTIVE COVERINGS**

**3.03 REMOVAL**

A. Remove protective coverings prior to Date of Substantial Completion. Reuse or recycle materials if possible.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 7800**  
**CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Project Record Documents.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data.
- C. Warranties and bonds.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 00 7000 - General Conditions and 00 7300 - Supplementary Conditions: Performance bond and labor and material payment bonds, warranty, and correction of work.
- B. Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements: Submittals procedures, shop drawings, product data, and samples.
- C. Section 01 7000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Contract closeout procedures.
- D. Individual Product Sections: Specific requirements for operation and maintenance data.
- E. Individual Product Sections: Warranties required for specific products or Work.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Project Record Documents: Submit documents to Architect with claim for final Application for Payment.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data:
  1. Submit one copy of preliminary draft or proposed formats and outlines of contents before start of Work. Architect will review draft and return one copy with comments.
  2. For equipment, or component parts of equipment put into service during construction and operated by Owner, submit completed documents within ten days after acceptance.
  3. Submit one copy of completed documents 15 days prior to final inspection. This copy will be reviewed and returned after final inspection, with Architect comments. Revise content of all document sets as required prior to final submission.
  4. Submit two sets of revised final documents in final form within 10 days after final inspection.
- C. Warranties and Bonds:
  1. For equipment or component parts of equipment put into service during construction with Owner's permission, submit documents within 10 days after acceptance.
  2. Make other submittals within 10 days after Date of Substantial Completion, prior to final Application for Payment.
  3. For items of Work for which acceptance is delayed beyond Date of Substantial Completion, submit within 10 days after acceptance, listing the date of acceptance as the beginning of the warranty period.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS**

- A. Maintain on site one set of the following record documents; record actual revisions to the Work:
  1. Drawings.
  2. Specifications.
  3. Addenda.
  4. Change Orders and other modifications to the Contract.
  5. Reviewed shop drawings, product data, and samples.

**01 7800**  
**CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

6. Manufacturer's instruction for assembly, installation, and adjusting.
- B. Ensure entries are complete and accurate, enabling future reference by Owner.
- C. Store record documents separate from documents used for construction.
- D. Record information concurrent with construction progress.
- E. Specifications: Legibly mark and record at each product section description of actual products installed, including the following:
  1. Changes made by Addenda and modifications.
- F. Record Drawings: Legibly mark each item to record actual construction including:
  1. Field changes of dimension and detail.
  2. Details not on original Contract drawings.
- G. Record Drawings Submittal:
  1. After approval of Record Drawings by Architect, Contractor shall transfer all changes to the computer-aided design drafting (Revit) drawings provided by the Architect and Engineers. Revit dwg. files shall be issued to Contractor at his request to complete the project Record Drawing Submittal. Quality of the entire set shall match quality of the contract documents; quality to be judged by Architect.
  2. Upon completion of Revit Record Drawings, submit one complete full size hard copy and one Compact Disc to the Architect for Owner's records.

### **3.02 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA**

- A. Source Data: For each product or system, list names, addresses and telephone numbers of Subcontractors and suppliers, including local source of supplies and replacement parts.
- B. Product Data: Mark each sheet to clearly identify specific products and component parts, and data applicable to installation. Delete inapplicable information.
- C. Drawings: Supplement product data to illustrate relations of component parts of equipment and systems, to show control and flow diagrams. Do not use Project Record Documents as maintenance drawings.
- D. Typed Text: As required to supplement product data. Provide logical sequence of instructions for each procedure, incorporating manufacturer's instructions.

### **3.03 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA FOR MATERIALS AND FINISHES**

- A. For Each Product, Applied Material, and Finish:
  1. Product data, with catalog number, size, composition, and color and texture designations.
  2. Information for re-ordering custom manufactured products.
- B. Instructions for Care and Maintenance: Manufacturer's recommendations for cleaning agents and methods, precautions against detrimental cleaning agents and methods, and recommended schedule for cleaning and maintenance.
- C. Moisture protection and weather-exposed products: Include product data listing applicable reference standards, chemical composition, and details of installation. Provide recommendations for inspections, maintenance, and repair.
- D. Additional information as specified in individual product specification sections.
- E. Where additional instructions are required, beyond the manufacturer's standard printed instructions, have instructions prepared by personnel experienced in the operation and maintenance of the specific products.

### **3.04 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA FOR EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS**

- A. For Each Item of Equipment and Each System:
  1. Description of unit or system, and component parts.
  2. Identify function, normal operating characteristics, and limiting conditions.
  3. Include performance curves, with engineering data and tests.
  4. Complete nomenclature and model number of replaceable parts.

**01 7800  
CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- B. Where additional instructions are required, beyond the manufacturer's standard printed instructions, have instructions prepared by personnel experienced in the operation and maintenance of the specific products.
- C. Panelboard Circuit Directories: Provide electrical service characteristics, controls, and communications; typed.
- D. Include color coded wiring diagrams as installed.
- E. Operating Procedures: Include start-up, break-in, and routine normal operating instructions and sequences. Include regulation, control, stopping, shut-down, and emergency instructions. Include summer, winter, and any special operating instructions.
- F. Maintenance Requirements: Include routine procedures and guide for preventative maintenance and trouble shooting; disassembly, repair, and reassembly instructions; and alignment, adjusting, balancing, and checking instructions.
- G. Provide servicing and lubrication schedule, and list of lubricants required.
- H. Include manufacturer's printed operation and maintenance instructions.
- I. Include sequence of operation by controls manufacturer.
- J. Provide original manufacturer's parts list, illustrations, assembly drawings, and diagrams required for maintenance.
- K. Provide control diagrams by controls manufacturer as installed.
- L. Include test and balancing reports.
- M. Additional Requirements: As specified in individual product specification sections.

**3.05 ASSEMBLY OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

- A. Assemble operation and maintenance data into manuals for Owner's personnel use, with data arranged in the same sequence as, and identified by, the specification sections.
- B. Where systems involve more than one specification section, provide separate tabbed divider for each system.
- C. Binders: Commercial quality, 8-1/2 by 11 inch Wilson Jones #344 Series binders with stiff covers; 3 inch maximum ring size. When multiple binders are used, correlate data into related consistent groupings.
- D. Cover: Identify each binder with typed or printed title OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS; identify title of Project; identify subject matter of contents.
- E. Project Directory: Title and address of Project; names, addresses, and telephone numbers of Architect, Consultants, Contractor and subcontractors, with names of responsible parties.
- F. Tables of Contents: List every item separated by a divider, using the same identification as on the divider tab; where multiple volumes are required, include all volumes Tables of Contents in each volume, with the current volume clearly identified.
- G. Dividers: Provide tabbed dividers for each separate product and system; identify the contents on the divider tab; immediately following the divider tab include a description of product and major component parts of equipment.
- H. Text: Manufacturer's printed data, or typewritten data on 20 pound paper.
- I. Drawings: Provide with reinforced punched binder tab. Bind in with text; fold larger drawings to size of text pages.
- J. Arrangement of Contents: Organize each volume in parts as follows:
  1. Project Directory.
  2. Table of Contents, of all volumes, and of this volume.
  3. Operation and Maintenance Data: Arranged by system, then by product category.
    - a. Source data.
    - b. Operation and maintenance data.
    - c. Field quality control data.

**01 7800  
CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

d. Photocopies of warranties and bonds.

**3.06 WARRANTIES AND BONDS**

- A. Obtain warranties and bonds, executed in duplicate by responsible Subcontractors, suppliers, and manufacturers, within 10 days after completion of the applicable item of work. Except for items put into use with Owner's permission, leave date of beginning of time of warranty until Date of Substantial completion is determined.
- B. Verify that documents are in proper form, contain full information, and are notarized.
- C. Co-execute submittals when required.
- D. Retain warranties and bonds until time specified for submittal.
- E. Include originals of each in operation and maintenance manuals, indexed separately on Table of Contents.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 7900**  
**DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Demonstration of products and systems to be commissioned and where indicated in specific specification sections.
- B. Training of Owner personnel in operation and maintenance is required for:
  1. All software-operated systems.
  2. HVAC systems and equipment.
  3. Plumbing equipment.
  4. Electrical systems and equipment.
  5. Conveying systems.
  6. Low Voltage, Security, and Alarm Systems.
  7. Items specified in individual product Sections.
- C. Training of Owner personnel in care, cleaning, maintenance, and repair is required for:
  1. Roofing, waterproofing, and other weather-exposed or moisture protection products.
  2. Finishes, including flooring, wall finishes, ceiling finishes.
  3. Fixtures and fittings.
  4. Items specified in individual product Sections.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals: Operation and maintenance manuals.
- B. Section 01 9113 - General Commissioning Requirements: Additional requirements applicable to demonstration and training.
- C. Other Specification Sections: Additional requirements for demonstration and training.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures; except:
  1. Make all submittals specified in this section, and elsewhere where indicated for commissioning purposes, directly to the Commissioning Authority.
  2. Submit one copy to the Commissioning Authority, not to be returned.
  3. Make commissioning submittals on time schedule specified by Commissioning Authority.
  4. Submittals indicated as "Draft" are intended for the use of the Commissioning Authority in preparation of overall Training Plan; submit in editable electronic format, Microsoft Word 2003 preferred.
- B. Draft Training Plans: Owner will designate personnel to be trained; tailor training to needs and skill-level of attendees.
  1. Submit to Commissioning Authority for review and inclusion in overall training plan.
  2. Submit not less than four weeks prior to start of training.
  3. Revise and resubmit until acceptable.
  4. Provide an overall schedule showing all training sessions.
  5. Include at least the following for each training session:
    - a. Identification, date, time, and duration.
    - b. Description of products and/or systems to be covered.
    - c. Name of firm and person conducting training; include qualifications.
    - d. Intended audience, such as job description.
    - e. Objectives of training and suggested methods of ensuring adequate training.
    - f. Methods to be used, such as classroom lecture, live demonstrations, hands-on, etc.
    - g. Media to be used, such as slides, hand-outs, etc.

**01 7900**  
**DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING**

- h. Training equipment required, such as projector, projection screen, etc., to be provided by Contractor.
- C. Training Manuals: Provide training manual for each attendee; allow for minimum of two attendees per training session.
  - 1. Include applicable portion of O&M manuals.
  - 2. Include copies of all hand-outs, slides, overheads, video presentations, etc., that are not included in O&M manuals.
  - 3. Provide one extra copy of each training manual to be included with operation and maintenance data.
- D. Training Reports:
  - 1. Identification of each training session, date, time, and duration.
  - 2. Sign-in sheet showing names and job titles of attendees.
  - 3. List of attendee questions and written answers given, including copies of and references to supporting documentation required for clarification; include answers to questions that could not be answered in original training session.
  - 4. Include Commissioning Authority's formal acceptance of training session.
- E. Video Recordings: Submit digital video recording of each demonstration and training session for Owner's subsequent use.
  - 1. Format: DVD Disc.
  - 2. Label each disc and container with session identification and date.

#### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Instructor Qualifications: Familiar with design, operation, maintenance and troubleshooting of the relevant products and systems.
  - 1. Provide as instructors the most qualified trainer of those contractors and/or installers who actually supplied and installed the systems and equipment.
  - 2. Where a single person is not familiar with all aspects, provide specialists with necessary qualifications.

#### **PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

#### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

##### **3.01 DEMONSTRATION - GENERAL**

- A. Demonstrations conducted during system start-up do not qualify as demonstrations for the purposes of this section, unless approved in advance by Owner.
- B. Demonstrations conducted during Functional Testing need not be repeated unless Owner personnel training is specified.
- C. Demonstration may be combined with Owner personnel training if applicable.
- D. Operating Equipment and Systems: Demonstrate operation in all modes, including start-up, shut-down, seasonal changeover, emergency conditions, and troubleshooting, and maintenance procedures, including scheduled and preventive maintenance.
  - 1. Perform demonstrations not less than two weeks prior to Substantial Completion.
  - 2. For equipment or systems requiring seasonal operation, perform demonstration for other season within six months.
- E. Non-Operating Products: Demonstrate cleaning, scheduled and preventive maintenance, and repair procedures.
  - 1. Perform demonstrations not less than two weeks prior to Substantial Completion.

##### **3.02 TRAINING - GENERAL**

- A. Commissioning Authority will prepare the Training Plan based on draft plans submitted.
- B. Conduct training on-site unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Owner will provide classroom and seating at no cost to Contractor.

**01 7900**  
**DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING**

- D. Do not start training until Functional Testing is complete, unless otherwise specified or approved by the Commissioning Authority.
- E. Provide training in minimum two hour segments.
- F. The Commissioning Authority is responsible for determining that the training was satisfactorily completed and will provide approval forms.
- G. Training schedule will be subject to availability of Owner's personnel to be trained; re-schedule training sessions as required by Owner; once schedule has been approved by Owner failure to conduct sessions according to schedule will be cause for Owner to charge Contractor for personnel "show-up" time.
- H. Review of Facility Policy on Operation and Maintenance Data: During training discuss:
  - 1. The location of the O&M manuals and procedures for use and preservation; backup copies.
  - 2. Typical contents and organization of all manuals, including explanatory information, system narratives, and product specific information.
  - 3. Typical uses of the O&M manuals.
- I. Product- and System-Specific Training:
  - 1. Review the applicable O&M manuals.
  - 2. For systems, provide an overview of system operation, design parameters and constraints, and operational strategies.
  - 3. Review instructions for proper operation in all modes, including start-up, shut-down, seasonal changeover and emergency procedures, and for maintenance, including preventative maintenance.
  - 4. Provide hands-on training on all operational modes possible and preventive maintenance.
  - 5. Emphasize safe and proper operating requirements; discuss relevant health and safety issues and emergency procedures.
  - 6. Discuss common troubleshooting problems and solutions.
  - 7. Discuss any peculiarities of equipment installation or operation.
  - 8. Discuss warranties and guarantees, including procedures necessary to avoid voiding coverage.
  - 9. Review recommended tools and spare parts inventory suggestions of manufacturers.
  - 10. Review spare parts and tools required to be furnished by Contractor.
  - 11. Review spare parts suppliers and sources and procurement procedures.
- J. Be prepared to answer questions raised by training attendees; if unable to answer during training session, provide written response within three days.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 8119**  
**AIR QUALITY DURING CONSTRUCTION**

**PART 1 – GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

- A. Work of this section is bound by the Contract Conditions and Division 1, bound herewith, in addition to this Specification and accompanying Drawings.

**1.02 GENERAL**

- A. This section includes procedures for achieving an environmentally conscious work product in keeping with the sustainable design requirements.

**PART 2 – PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.01 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES**

- A. Prepare and implement an Indoor air Quality (IAQ) Management Plan for the construction and pre-occupancy phases of the building according to SMACNA requirements below. The plan must also include the following: procedures for protection of absorptive materials and remediation plans for absorptive materials that have been damaged; training sessions for all contractors and subcontractors to ensure they understand and agree to comply with the Construction IAQ Management Plan requirements; the schedule and sequence of events for HVAC system installation/startup, application of interior coatings and finishes, and installation of building furnishings; and a description of the building flush-out process.
  - 1. 1. Adhere to the methods and procedures outlined in the Construction IAQ Management Plan during construction and closeout.
  - 2. 2. Document compliance with the Construction IAQ Management Plan during construction.
  - 3. 3. Submit certification to the owner at closeout demonstrating compliance with the Construction IAQ Management Plan requirements.
- B. During construction the Contractor will meet or exceed the recommended Control Measures of the Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association (SMACNA) IAQ Guidelines of Occupied Buildings under Construction, 1995, Chapter 3.
- C. The Contractor will protect stored on-site or installed absorptive materials from moisture damage.
- D. If permanently installed handlers are used during construction, filtration media with a Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value (MERV) of 8 shall be used at each return air grille, as determined by ASHRAE 52.2-1999. Replace all filtration media immediately prior to occupancy.
- E. Prohibit smoking inside the building and within 25 feet of building entrances once the building is closed.

**3.02 SMACNA IAQ GUIDELINES FOR OCCUPIED BUILDINGS UNDER CONSTRUCTION:**

- A. HVAC Protection
  - 1. Protect all air handling and distribution equipment, and air supply and return ducting during construction.
  - 2. Adequately cover and protect all exposed air inlets and outlets openings, grilles, ducts, plenums, etc. to prevent water, moisture, dust, and other contaminant intrusion.
  - 3. Apply protection immediately after installation of equipment and ducting.
  - 4. Ducting runs that require more than a single day to install be protected at the end of each day's work.
  - 5. Install air filters with a MERV filtration value of 8, as determined by ASHRAE 52-2-1999, over all return air grilles.
- B. Source Control
  - 1. Protect stored on-site or installed absorptive or porous materials such as batt insulation and drywall from exposure to moisture.

**01 8119**  
**AIR QUALITY DURING CONSTRUCTION**

2. Do not use wet damaged porous materials in the building.
3. Provide adequate ventilation of packaged dry products prior to installation. Remove from packaging and ventilate in a secure, dry, well-ventilated space free from strong contaminant sources and residues. Provide a temperature range of 60 degrees F minimum to 90 degrees F maximum continuously during the ventilation period. Do not ventilate within limits of Work unless otherwise approved by the Architect.
4. Route material deliveries and construction waste removal around the exterior of the building, not through it.

C. Pathway Interruption

1. The Owner does not plan to occupy the building until construction is complete. Pathway interruption is not required.

D. Housekeeping

1. Minimize accumulation of dust, fumes, vapors, or gases in the building.
2. Suppress dust with wetting agents or sweeping compounds.
3. Clean-up dust using a wet rag or damp mop.
4. Increase the cleaning frequency when dust build-up is noted.
5. Remove spills or excess applications of solvent-containing products as soon as possible. Remove accumulated water and keep work areas as dry as possible.
6. Vacuum using HEPA filtered vacuum cleaners.
7. Store volatile liquids, including fuels and solvents, in closed containers and outside of the building when not in use.
8. Keep volatile liquid containers closed when the container is inside the building and not in use.

E. Scheduling

1. Schedule for application of interior finishes including timeframes for the application of wet materials onto dry materials, dry materials onto wet materials, and expected curing times for applied wet materials.
2. Wet materials include all paints, adhesives, sealants, coatings, finishes and spray-applied materials, such as structural fireproofing.
3. Insure that all applied interior finish materials are properly and fully cured before installing other finish materials over them.
4. Install carpets and furnishings after all other interior finish materials have been applied and are fully cured.
5. Provide sufficient ventilation, air circulation and air changes to dissipate excess humidity when present.

F. Building Flush Out Procedure

1. After construction ends and prior to occupancy and with all interior finishes installed, Contractor will perform a building flush-out by supplying a total air volume of 14,000 cu. ft. of outdoor air per sq. ft. of floor area while maintaining an internal temperature of at least 60 degrees F and relative Humidity no higher than 60%.
  - a. Flush-out may begin only after all construction work is completed, including punch-list items.
  - b. All cleaning should be finalized prior to flush-out.
  - c. Final test and balancing should be completed, and HVAC controls should be functional.

**3.03 SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. In compliance with sustainable design requirements specified in Section 01 3520, execute and submit the attached Certification Forms.
  1. The Contractor shall provide a copy of the projects' Indoor Air Quality (IAQ) Management Plan.
  2. Confirm if the permanently installed air handling equipment was used during construction.
  3. Provide photos to highlight the implemented construction IAQ practices.

**01 8119**  
**AIR QUALITY DURING CONSTRUCTION**

4. List all filtration media (manufacturer, model#, MERV rating, location of installed filter) installed during construction and confirm that each was replaced prior to final occupancy.
5. Provide a document confirming that smoking was prohibited inside the building and within 25 feet of building entrances once the building was closed.
6. Provide an optional narrative describing any special circumstances or non-standard approaches taken by the project.
7. Provide a narrative describing the project's pre-occupancy flush-out process. Include data regarding temperature, airflow, and duration of flush-out. Additionally, provide information regarding special considerations

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 9113**  
**GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT CONDITIONS**

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

A. Commissioning is intended to achieve the following specific objectives; this section specifies the Contractor's responsibilities for commissioning:

1. Verify that the work is installed in accordance with the Contract Documents and the manufacturer's recommendations and instructions, and that it receives adequate operational checkout prior to startup: Startup reports and Prefunctional Checklists executed by Contractor are utilized to achieve this.
2. Verify and document that functional performance is in accordance with the Contract Documents: Functional Tests executed by Contractor and witnessed by the Commissioning Authority are utilized to achieve this.
3. Verify that operation and maintenance manuals submitted to Owner are complete: Detailed operation and maintenance (O&M) data submittals by Contractor are utilized to achieve this.
4. Verify that the Owner's operating personnel are adequately trained: Formal training conducted by Contractor is utilized to achieve this.

B. Commissioning, including Functional Tests, O&M documentation review, and training, is to occur after startup and initial checkout and be completed before Substantial Completion

C. The Commissioning Authority directs and coordinates all commissioning activities; this section describes some but not all of the Commissioning Authority's responsibilities.

D. The Commissioning Authority is employed by Owner.

**1.03 SCOPE OF COMMISSIONING**

A. The following are to be commissioned:

B. Plumbing Systems:

1. Water heaters.
2. Booster pumps.

C. HVAC System, including:

1. Major and minor equipment items.
2. Piping systems and equipment.
3. Ductwork and accessories.
4. Terminal units.
5. Control system.
6. Vibration control devices.
7. Variable frequency drives.

D. Special Ventilation:

1. Specialty fans.

E. Electrical Systems:

1. Power quality.
2. Emergency power systems.
3. Uninterruptible power systems.
4. Lighting controls.

F. Electronic Safety and Security:

1. Security system, including doors and hardware.
2. Fire and smoke alarms.

**01 9113**  
**GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS**

- G. Communications:
  - 1. Voice and data systems.
- H. Other equipment and systems explicitly identified elsewhere in Contract Documents as requiring commissioning.

**1.04 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 7000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: General startup requirements.
- B. Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals: Scope and procedures for operation and maintenance manuals and project record documents.
- C. Section 01 7900 - Demonstration and Training: Scope and procedures for Owner personnel training.

**1.05 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

**1.06 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures; except:
  - 1. Make all submittals specified in this section, and elsewhere where indicated for commissioning purposes, directly to the Commissioning Authority, unless they require review by Architect; in that case, submit to Architect first.
  - 2. Submit one copy to the Commissioning Authority, not to be returned.
  - 3. Make commissioning submittals on time schedule specified by Commissioning Authority.
  - 4. Submittals indicated as "Draft" are intended for the use of the Commissioning Authority in preparation of Prefunctional Checklists or Functional Test requirements; submit in editable electronic format, Microsoft Word 2010 preferred.
  - 5. As soon as possible after submittals made to Architect are approved, submit copy of approved submittal to the Commissioning Authority.
- B. Product Data: If submittals to Architect do not include the following, submit copies as soon as possible:
  - 1. Manufacturer's product data, cut sheets, and shop drawings.
  - 2. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
  - 3. Startup, operating, and troubleshooting procedures.
  - 4. Fan and pump curves.
  - 5. Factory test reports.
  - 6. Warranty information, including details of Owner's responsibilities in regard to keeping warranties in force.
- C. Manufacturers' Instructions: Submit copies of all manufacturer-provided instructions that are shipped with the equipment as soon as the equipment is delivered.
- D. Startup Plans and Reports.
- E. Completed Prefunctional Checklists.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 TEST EQUIPMENT**

- A. Provide all standard testing equipment required to perform startup and initial checkout and required Functional Testing; unless otherwise noted such testing equipment will NOT become the property of Owner.
- B. Calibration Tolerances: Provide testing equipment of sufficient quality and accuracy to test and/or measure system performance with the tolerances specified. If not otherwise noted, the following minimum requirements apply:
  - 1. Temperature Sensors and Digital Thermometers: Certified calibration within past year to accuracy of 0.5 degree F and resolution of plus/minus 0.1 degree F.
  - 2. Pressure Sensors: Accuracy of plus/minus 2.0 percent of the value range being measured (not full range of meter), calibrated within the last year.

**01 9113**  
**GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS**

3. Calibration: According to the manufacturer's recommended intervals and when dropped or damaged; affix calibration tags or keep certificates readily available for inspection.
- C. Equipment-Specific Tools: Where special testing equipment, tools and instruments are specific to a piece of equipment, are only available from the vendor, and are required in order to accomplish startup or Functional Testing, provide such equipment, tools, and instruments as part of the work at no extra cost to Owner; such equipment, tools, and instruments are to become the property of Owner.
- D. Dataloggers: Independent equipment and software for monitoring flows, currents, status, pressures, etc. of equipment.
  1. Dataloggers required to for Functional Tests will be provided by the Commissioning Authority and will not become the property of Owner.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 COMMISSIONING PLAN**

- A. Commissioning Authority has prepared the Commissioning Plan.
  1. Attend meetings called by the Commissioning Authority for purposes of completing the commissioning plan.
  2. Require attendance and participation of relevant subcontractors, installers, suppliers, and manufacturer representatives.
- B. Contractor is responsible for compliance with the Commissioning Plan.
- C. Commissioning Plan: The commissioning schedule, procedures, and coordination requirements for all parties in the commissioning process.
- D. Commissioning Schedule:
  1. Submit anticipated dates of startup of each item of equipment and system to Commissioning Authority within 60 days after award of Contract.
  2. Re-submit anticipated startup dates monthly, but not less than 4 weeks prior to startup.
  3. Prefunctional Checklists and Functional Tests are to be performed in sequence from components, to subsystems, to systems.
  4. Provide sufficient notice to Commissioning Authority for delivery of relevant Checklists and Functional Test procedures, to avoid delay.

#### **3.02 STARTUP PLANS AND REPORTS**

- A. Startup Plans: For each item of equipment and system for which the manufacturer provides a startup plan, submit the plan not less than 8 weeks prior to startup.
- B. Startup Reports: For each item of equipment and system for which the manufacturer provides a startup checklist (or startup plan or field checkout sheet), document compliance by submitting the completed startup checklist prior to startup, signed and dated by responsible entity.
- C. Submit directly to the Commissioning Authority.

#### **3.03 PREFUNCTIONAL CHECKLISTS**

- A. A Prefunctional Checklist is required to be filled out for each item of equipment or other assembly specified to be commissioned.
  1. No sampling of identical or near-identical items is allowed.
  2. These checklists do not replace manufacturers' recommended startup checklists, regardless of apparent redundancy.
  3. Prefunctional Checklist forms will not be complete until after award of the contract; the following types of information will be gathered via the completed Checklist forms:
    - a. Certification by installing contractor that the unit is properly installed, started up, and operating and ready for Functional Testing.
    - b. Confirmation of receipt of each shop drawing and commissioning submittal specified, itemized by unit.
    - c. Manufacturer, model number, and relevant capacity information; list information "as specified," "as submitted," and "as installed."
    - d. Serial number of installed unit.

**01 9113**  
**GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS**

- e. List of inspections to be conducted to document proper installation prior to startup and Functional Testing; these will be primarily static inspections and procedures; for equipment and systems may include normal manufacturer's start-up checklist items and minor testing.
- f. Sensor and actuator calibration information.

B. Contractor is responsible for filling out Prefunctional Checklists, after completion of installation and before startup; witnessing by the Commissioning Authority is not required unless otherwise specified.

- 1. Each line item without deficiency is to be witnessed, initialed, and dated by the actual witness; checklists are not complete until all line items are initialed and dated complete without deficiencies.
- 2. Checklists with incomplete items may be submitted for approval provided the Contractor attests that incomplete items do not preclude the performance of safe and reliable Functional Testing; re-submission of the Checklist is required upon completion of remaining items.
- 3. Individual Checklists may contain line items that are the responsibility of more than one installer; Contractor shall assign responsibility to appropriate installers or subcontractors, with identification recorded on the form.
- 4. If any Checklist line item is not relevant, record reasons on the form.
- 5. Contractor may independently perform startup inspections and/or tests, at his option.
- 6. Regardless of these reporting requirements, Contractor is responsible for correct startup and operation.
- 7. Submit completed Checklists to Commissioning Authority within two days of completion.
- 8. See Section 01 7000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for additional general startup requirements.

C. Commissioning Authority is responsible for furnishing the Prefunctional Checklists to Contractor.

- 1. Initial Drafts: Contractor is responsible for initial draft of Prefunctional Checklist where so indicated in the Contract Documents.
- 2. Provide all additional information requested by Commissioning Authority to aid in preparation of checklists, such as shop drawing submittals, manufacturers' startup checklists, and O&M data.
- 3. Commissioning Authority may add any relevant items deemed necessary regardless of whether they are explicitly mentioned in the Contract Documents or not.
- 4. When asked to review the proposed Checklists, do so in a timely manner.

D. Commissioning Authority Witnessing: Required for:

- 1. Each piece of primary equipment, unless sampling of multiple similar units is allowed by the commissioning plan.
- 2. A sampling of non-primary equipment, as allowed by the commissioning plan.

E. Deficiencies: Correct deficiencies and re-inspect or re-test, as applicable, at no extra cost to Owner.

- 1. If difficulty in correction would delay progress, report deficiency to the Commissioning Authority immediately.

#### **3.04 FUNCTIONAL TESTS**

- A. A Functional Test is required for each item of equipment, system, or other assembly specified to be commissioned, unless sampling of multiple identical or near-identical units is allowed by the final test procedures.
- B. Contractor is responsible for execution of required Functional Tests, after completion of Prefunctional Checklist and before closeout.
- C. Commissioning Authority is responsible for witnessing and reporting results of Functional Tests, including preparation and completion of forms for that purpose.

**01 9113**  
**GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS**

- D. Contractor is responsible for correction of deficiencies and re-testing at no extra cost to Owner; if a deficiency is not corrected and re-tested immediately, the Commissioning Authority will document the deficiency and the Contractor's stated intentions regarding correction.
  - 1. Deficiencies are any condition in the installation or function of a component, piece of equipment or system that is not in compliance with the Contract Documents or does not perform properly.
  - 2. When the deficiency has been corrected, the Contractor completes the form certifying that the item is ready to be re-tested and returns the form to the Commissioning Authority; the Commissioning Authority will reschedule the test and the Contractor shall re-test.
  - 3. Identical or Near-Identical Items: If 10 percent, or three, whichever is greater, of identical or near-identical items fail to perform due to material or manufacturing defect, all items will be considered defective; provide a proposal for correction within 2 weeks after notification of defect, including provision for testing sample installations prior to replacement of all items.
  - 4. Contractor shall bear the cost of Owner and Commissioning Authority personnel time witnessing re-testing.
  - 5. Contractor shall bear the cost of Owner and Commissioning Authority personnel time witnessing re-testing if the test failed due to failure to execute the relevant Prefunctional Checklist correctly; if the test failed for reasons that would not have been identified in the Prefunctional Checklist process, Contractor shall bear the cost of the second and subsequent re-tests.
- E. Functional Test Procedures:
  - 1. Some test procedures are included in the Contract Documents; where Functional Test procedures are not included in the Contract Documents, test procedures will be determined by the Commissioning Authority with input by and coordination with Contractor.
  - 2. Examples of Functional Testing:
    - a. Test the dynamic function and operation of equipment and systems (rather than just components) using manual (direct observation) or monitoring methods under full operation (e.g., the chiller pump is tested interactively with the chiller functions to see if the pump ramps up and down to maintain the differential pressure setpoint).
    - b. Systems are tested under various modes, such as during low cooling or heating loads, high loads, component failures, unoccupied, varying outside air temperatures, fire alarm, power failure, etc.
    - c. Systems are run through all the HVAC control system's sequences of operation and components are verified to be responding as the sequence's state.
    - d. Traditional air or water test and balancing (TAB) is not Functional Testing; spot checking of TAB by demonstration to the Commissioning Authority is Functional Testing.
- F. Deferred Functional Tests: Some tests may need to be performed later, after substantial completion, due to partial occupancy, equipment, seasonal requirements, design or other site conditions; performance of these tests remains the Contractor's responsibility regardless of timing.

### **3.05 SENSOR AND ACTUATOR CALIBRATION**

- A. Calibrate all field-installed temperature, relative humidity, carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide, and pressure sensors and gages, and all actuators (dampers and valves) on this piece of equipment shall be calibrated. Sensors installed in the unit at the factory with calibration certification provided need not be field calibrated.
- B. Calibrate using the methods described below; alternate methods may be used, if approved by Commissioning Authority and Owner beforehand. See PART 2 for test instrument requirements. Record methods used on the relevant Prefunctional Checklist or other suitable forms, documenting initial, intermediate and final results.
- C. All Sensors:

**01 9113**  
**GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS**

1. Verify that sensor location is appropriate and away from potential causes of erratic operation.
2. Verify that sensors with shielded cable are grounded only at one end.
3. For sensor pairs that are used to determine a temperature or pressure difference, for temperature make sure they are reading within 0.2 degree F of each other, and for pressure, within tolerance equal to 2 percent of the reading, of each other.
4. Tolerances for critical applications may be tighter.

D. Sensors Without Transmitters - Standard Application:

1. Make a reading with a calibrated test instrument within 6 inches of the site sensor.
2. Verify that the sensor reading, via the permanent thermostat, gage or building automation system, is within the tolerances in the table below of the instrument-measured value.
3. If not, install offset, calibrate or replace sensor.

E. Sensors With Transmitters - Standard Application.

1. Disconnect sensor.
2. Connect a signal generator in place of sensor.
3. Connect ammeter in series between transmitter and building automation system control panel.
4. Using manufacturer's resistance-temperature data, simulate minimum desired temperature.
5. Adjust transmitter potentiometer zero until 4 mA is read by the ammeter.
6. Repeat for the maximum temperature matching 20 mA to the potentiometer span or maximum and verify at the building automation system.
7. Record all values and recalibrate controller as necessary to conform with specified control ramps, reset schedules, proportional relationship, reset relationship and P/I reaction.
8. Reconnect sensor.
9. Make a reading with a calibrated test instrument within 6 inches of the site sensor.
10. Verify that the sensor reading, via the permanent thermostat, gage or building automation system, is within the tolerances in the table below of the instrument-measured value.
11. If not, replace sensor and repeat.
12. For pressure sensors, perform a similar process with a suitable signal generator.

F. Sensor Tolerances for Standard Applications: Plus/minus the following maximums:

1. Watthour, Voltage, Amperage: 1 percent of design.
2. Pressure, Air, Water, Gas: 3 percent of design.
3. Air Temperatures (Outside Air, Space Air, Duct Air): 0.4 degrees F.
4. Relative Humidity: 4 percent of design.
5. Barometric Pressure: 0.1 inch of Hg.
6. Flow Rate, Air: 10 percent of design.
7. Flow Rate, Water: 4 percent of design.
8. AHU Wet Bulb and Dew Point: 2.0 degrees F.

G. Critical Applications: For some applications more rigorous calibration techniques may be required for selected sensors. Describe any such methods used on an attached sheet.

H. Valve/Damper Stroke Setup and Check:

1. For all valve/damper actuator positions checked, verify the actual position against the control system readout.
2. Set pump/fan to normal operating mode.
3. Command valve/damper closed; visually verify that valve/damper is closed and adjust output zero signal as required.
4. Command valve/damper to open; verify position is full open and adjust output signal as required.
5. Command valve/damper to a few intermediate positions.
6. If actual valve/damper position does not reasonably correspond, replace actuator or add pilot positioner (for pneumatics).

I. Isolation Valve or System Valve Leak Check: For valves not associated with coils.

**01 9113**  
**GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS**

1. With full pressure in the system, command valve closed.
2. Use an ultra-sonic flow meter to detect flow or leakage.

### **3.06 TEST PROCEDURES - GENERAL**

- A. Provide skilled technicians to execute starting of equipment and to execute the Functional Tests. Ensure that they are available and present during the agreed upon schedules and for sufficient duration to complete the necessary tests, adjustments and problem-solving.
- B. Provide all necessary materials and system modifications required to produce the flows, pressures, temperatures, and conditions necessary to execute the test according to the specified conditions. At completion of the test, return all affected equipment and systems to their pre-test condition.
- C. Sampling: Where Functional Testing of fewer than the total number of multiple identical or near-identical items is explicitly permitted, perform sampling as follows:
  1. Identical Units: Defined as units with same application and sequence of operation; only minor size or capacity difference.
  2. Sampling is not allowed for:
    - a. Major equipment.
    - b. Life-safety-critical equipment.
    - c. Prefunctional Checklist execution.
  3. XX = the percent of the group of identical equipment to be included in each sample; defined for specific type of equipment.
  4. YY = the percent of the sample that if failed will require another sample to be tested; defined for specific type of equipment.
  5. Randomly test at least XX percent of each group of identical equipment, but not less than three units. This constitutes the "first sample."
  6. If YY percent of the units in the first sample fail, test another XX percent of the remaining identical units.
  7. If YY percent of the units in the second sample fail, test all remaining identical units.
  8. If frequent failures occur, resulting in more troubleshooting than testing, the Commissioning Authority may stop the testing and require Contractor to perform and document a checkout of the remaining units prior to continuing testing.
- D. Manual Testing: Use hand-held instruments, immediate control system readouts, or direct observation to verify performance (contrasted to analyzing monitored data taken over time to make the "observation").
- E. Simulating Conditions: Artificially create the necessary condition for the purpose of testing the response of a system; for example apply hot air to a space sensor using a hair dryer to see the response in a VAV box.
- F. Simulating Signals: Disconnect the sensor and use a signal generator to send an amperage, resistance or pressure to the transducer and control system to simulate the sensor value.
- G. Over-Writing Values: Change the sensor value known to the control system in the control system to see the response of the system; for example, change the outside air temperature value from 50 degrees F to 75 degrees F to verify economizer operation.
- H. Indirect Indicators: Remote indicators of a response or condition, such as a reading from a control system screen reporting a damper to be 100 percent closed, are considered indirect indicators.
- I. Monitoring: Record parameters (flow, current, status, pressure, etc.) of equipment operation using dataloggers or the trending capabilities of the relevant control systems; where monitoring of specific points is called for in Functional Test Procedures:
  1. All points that are monitored by the relevant control system shall be trended by Contractor; at the Commissioning Authority's request, Contractor shall trend up to 20 percent more points than specified at no extra charge.
  2. Other points will be monitored by the Commissioning Authority using dataloggers.

**01 9113**  
**GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS**

3. At the option of the Commissioning Authority, some control system monitoring may be replaced with datalogger monitoring.
4. Provide hard copies of monitored data in columnar format with time down left column and at least 5 columns of point values on same page.
5. Graphical output is desirable and is required for all output if the system can produce it.
6. Monitoring may be used to augment manual testing.

**3.07 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

- A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals for additional requirements.
- B. Add design intent documentation furnished by Architect to manuals prior to submission to Owner.
- C. Submit manuals related to items that were commissioned to Commissioning Authority for review; make changes recommended by Commissioning Authority.
- D. Commissioning Authority will add commissioning records to manuals after submission to Owner.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 02 4100**  
**DEMOLITION**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Building demolition excluding removal of hazardous materials and toxic substances.
- B. Selective demolition of building elements for alteration purposes.
- C. Abandonment and removal of existing utilities and utility structures.
- D. Salvage of exiting items to be reused or recycled.
- E. Patching and Reconstruction of removed items.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 5000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls: Site fences, security, protective barriers, and waste removal.
- B. Section 01 7419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal: Limitations on disposal of removed materials; requirements for recycling.
- C. Section 31 2316 - Trenching and Backfill.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. NFPA 241 - Standard for Safeguarding Construction, Alteration, and Demolition Operations; 2013.

**1.05 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site, unless indicated to be removed and salvaged or removed and reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction and deliver them to Owner.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, prepare and revise them for reuse, and reinstall them where indicated.
- D. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

**1.06 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP**

- A. Historic items, relics, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, antiques, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be encountered during selective demolition remain Owner's property. Carefully remove and salvage each item or object in a manner to prevent damage and deliver promptly to Owner.
  - 1. Coordinate with Owner's, who will establish special procedures for removal and salvage.

**1.07 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data & Submittals.
- B. Site Plan: Showing:
  - 1. Areas for temporary construction and field offices.
  - 2. Areas for temporary and permanent placement of removed materials.
- C. Demolition Plan: Submit demolition plan as specified by OSHA and local authorities.
  - 1. Indicate extent of demolition, removal sequence, bracing and shoring, and location and construction of barricades and fences.
    - a. Identify demolition firm and submit qualifications.
    - b. Include a summary of safety procedures.

**02 4100**  
**DEMOLITION**

- D. Project Record Documents: Accurately record actual locations of capped and active utilities and subsurface construction.
- E. Pre-demolition Photographs: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by selective demolition operations.

#### **1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. **QUALITY ASSURANCE**
  - 1. Demolition Firm Qualifications: An experienced firm that has specialized in demolition work similar in material and extent to that indicated for this Project.
  - 2. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Pre-demolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Meetings." Review methods and procedures related to selective demolition including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
    - b. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
    - c. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
    - d. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
    - e. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.

#### **1.09 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
  - 1. Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section "Summary of the Work."
- B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
- C. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- D. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- E. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.

#### **1.10 WARRANTY**

- A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during selective demolition, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01**

- A. **REMOVED AND SALVAGED ITEMS FOR OWNER'S USE**
  - 1. Items to be removed and salvaged for Owner's use:
    - a. Items noted on demolition plans

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 SCOPE**

- A. Remove all existing items noted on demolition plans as required to accomplish new work.

**02 4100  
DEMOLITION**

**3.02 GENERAL PROCEDURES AND PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Comply with applicable codes and regulations for demolition operations and safety of adjacent structures and the public.
  - 1. Obtain required permits.
  - 2. Comply with applicable requirements of NFPA 241.
  - 3. Use of explosives is not permitted.
  - 4. Take precautions to prevent catastrophic or uncontrolled collapse of structures to be removed; do not allow worker or public access within range of potential collapse of unstable structures.
  - 5. Provide, erect, and maintain temporary barriers and security devices.
  - 6. Use physical barriers to prevent access to areas that could be hazardous to workers or the public.
  - 7. Conduct operations to minimize effects on and interference with adjacent structures and occupants.
  - 8. Do not close or obstruct roadways or sidewalks without permit.
  - 9. Conduct operations to minimize obstruction of public and private entrances and exits; do not obstruct required exits at any time; protect persons using entrances and exits from removal operations.
  - 10. Obtain written permission from owners of adjacent properties when demolition equipment will traverse, infringe upon or limit access to their property.
- B. Do not begin removal until receipt of notification to proceed from Owner.
- C. Do not begin removal until built elements to be salvaged or relocated have been removed.
- D. Protect existing structures and other elements that are not to be removed.
  - 1. Provide bracing and shoring.
  - 2. Prevent movement or settlement of adjacent structures.
  - 3. Stop work immediately if adjacent structures appear to be in danger.
- E. Minimize production of dust due to demolition operations; do not use water if that will result in ice, flooding, sedimentation of public waterways or storm sewers, or other pollution.
- F. If hazardous materials are discovered during removal operations, stop work and notify Architect and Owner; hazardous materials include regulated asbestos containing materials, lead, PCB's, and mercury.
- G. Perform demolition in a manner that maximizes salvage and recycling of materials.
  - 1. Comply with requirements of Section 01 7419 - Waste Management.
  - 2. Dismantle existing construction and separate materials.
  - 3. Set aside reusable, recyclable, and salvageable materials; store and deliver to collection point or point of reuse.
- H. Partial Removal of Paving and Curbs: Neatly saw cut at right angle to surface.

**3.03 EXISTING UTILITIES**

- A. Coordinate work with utility companies; notify before starting work and comply with their requirements; obtain required permits.
- B. Protect existing utilities to remain from damage.
- C. Do not disrupt public utilities without permit from authority having jurisdiction.
- D. Do not close, shut off, or disrupt existing life safety systems that are in use without at least 7 days prior written notification to Owner.
- E. Do not close, shut off, or disrupt existing utility branches or take-offs that are in use without at least 3 days prior written notification to Owner.
- F. Locate and mark utilities to remain; mark using highly visible tags or flags, with identification of utility type; protect from damage due to subsequent construction, using substantial barricades if necessary.

**02 4100  
DEMOLITION**

- G. Remove exposed piping, valves, meters, equipment, supports, and foundations of disconnected and abandoned utilities.
- H. Prepare building demolition areas by disconnecting and capping utilities outside the demolition zone; identify and mark utilities to be subsequently reconnected, in same manner as other utilities to remain.
- I. Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit after bypassing.
  - 1. Where entire wall is to be removed, existing services/systems may be removed with removal of the wall.

**3.04 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION FOR ALTERATIONS**

- A. Drawings showing existing construction and utilities are based on casual field observation and existing record documents only.
  - 1. Verify that construction and utility arrangements are as shown.
  - 2. Report discrepancies to Architect before disturbing existing installation.
  - 3. Beginning of demolition work constitutes acceptance of existing conditions that would be apparent upon examination prior to starting demolition.
- B. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
  - 1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
  - 2. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping, to minimize disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
  - 3. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
  - 4. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
  - 5. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
  - 6. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
  - 7. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
  - 8. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
  - 9. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.
- C. Removed and Salvaged Items:
  - 1. Clean salvaged items.
  - 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
  - 3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
  - 4. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner.
  - 5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
- D. Removed and Reinstalled Items:
  - 1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse. Paint equipment to match new equipment.
  - 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
  - 3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.

**02 4100**  
**DEMOLITION**

4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.
- E. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

**3.05 DEMOLITION BY MECHANICAL MEANS**

- A. Remove debris from elevated portions of the building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
  1. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to minimize ground impact and dust generation.
- B. Below-Grade Construction:
  1. Remove below-grade construction, including foundation walls and footings completely.
- C. Existing Utilities: Demolish existing utilities and below-grade utility structures.
  1. Fill abandoned utility structures with satisfactory soil materials.
  2. Piping: Disconnect piping at unions, flanges, valves, or fittings.
  3. Wiring Ducts: Disassemble into unit lengths and remove plug-in and disconnecting devices.

**3.06 DEMOLITION FOR ALTERATIONS**

- A. Remove existing work as indicated and as required to accomplish new work.
  1. Remove items indicated on drawings.
- B. Services (Including but not limited to HVAC, Plumbing, Fire Protection, Electrical, and Telecommunications): Remove existing systems and equipment as indicated.
  1. Maintain existing active systems that are to remain in operation; maintain access to equipment and operational components.
  2. Where existing active systems serve occupied facilities but are to be replaced with new services, maintain existing systems in service until new systems are complete and ready for service.
  3. Verify that abandoned services serve only abandoned facilities before removal.
  4. Remove abandoned pipe, ducts, conduits, and equipment, including those above accessible ceilings; remove back to source of supply where possible, otherwise cap stub and tag with identification.
- C. Protect existing work to remain.
  1. Prevent movement of structure; provide shoring and bracing if necessary.
  2. Perform cutting to accomplish removals neatly and as specified for cutting new work.
  3. Repair adjacent construction and finishes damaged during removal work.
  4. Patch as specified for patching new work.

**3.07 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION PROCEDURES FOR SPECIFIC MATERIALS**

- A. Concrete: Demolish in sections. Cut concrete full depth at junctures with construction to remain and at regular intervals, using power-driven saw, then remove concrete between saw cuts.
- B. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, then remove masonry between saw cuts.
- C. Resilient Floor Coverings: Remove floor coverings and adhesive according to recommendations in RFCI-WP and its Addendum.
  1. Remove residual adhesive and prepare substrate for new floor coverings by one of the methods recommended by RFCI.
- D. Air-Conditioning Equipment: Remove equipment without releasing refrigerants.

**02 4100  
DEMOLITION**

**3.08 PATCHING AND RECONSTRUCTION**

- A. If not specifically noted on plans or other Project Manual Sections, all items indicated to be removed (architectural, mechanical, electrical, etc.) shall be replaced with new items to match, unless noted otherwise.
- B. All areas of construction (concrete, framing, drywall, etc.) removed to allow for demolition of items shown on drawings shall be patched back to match adjacent surfaces prior to final finishes occurring.
- C. Revise paragraph below to suit Project.
- D. When items are indicated to be removed or relocated and are not to be replaced with new items (i.e. piping penetrations, items removed from walls, ceilings, etc.) the areas shall be patched to match adjacent surfaces prior to final finishes.
- E. Where architectural items (doors, windows, etc.) are scheduled to be removed and replaced, or cut into an existing walls or ceilings, provide trim and finishes at head, jambs, and sill to match others in adjacent occupied spaces, unless noted otherwise.
- F. Walls indicated on plans, or noted above, to be patched shall be paint finished floor to ceiling and corner to corner.
- G. Where architectural, plumbing, mechanical, electrical, etc. items (water closets, urinals, lavatories, sinks, light fixtures, etc.) are scheduled to be removed and replaced or relocated, provide modifications to existing concealed services (i.e. water supply, plumbing waste, electrical and low voltage cabling, etc.) as required to provide complete and operable systems. Provide patching and painting of all surfaces affected by this work to match adjacent surfaces.

**3.09 DEBRIS AND WASTE REMOVAL**

- A. Remove debris, junk, and trash from site.
- B. Remove from site all materials not to be reused on site; comply with requirements of Section 01 7419 - Waste Management.

**3.10 CLEANING**

- A. Leave site in clean condition, ready for subsequent work.
- B. Clean up spillage and wind-blown debris from public and private lands.
- C. A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by building demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before building demolition operations began.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 03 3000**  
**CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Concrete formwork.
- B. Slabs on grade.
- C. Concrete reinforcement.
- D. Joint devices associated with concrete work.
- E. Concrete curing.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 03 5400 - Cast Underlayment: Floor leveling compounds with primers
- B. Section 07 9200 - Joint Sealants: Products and installation for sealants for saw cut joints and isolation joints in slabs.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ACI 117 - Standard Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials; 2010.
- B. ACI 211.1 - Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Normal, Heavyweight, and Mass Concrete; 1991 (Reapproved 2009).
- C. ACI 301 - Specifications for Structural Concrete; 2010 (Errata 2012).
- D. ACI 302.1R - Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction; 2004 (Errata 2007).
- E. ACI 305R - Hot Weather Concreting; 2010.
- F. ACI 306R - Cold Weather Concreting; 2010.
- G. ACI 308R - Guide to Curing Concrete; 2001 (Reapproved 2008).
- H. ACI 318 - Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary; 2014 (Errata 2016).
- I. ACI 347R - Guide to Formwork for Concrete; 2014.
- J. ASTM A615/A615M - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement; 2016.
- K. ASTM C94/C94M - Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete; 2015.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Submittals for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturers' data on manufactured products showing compliance with specified requirements and installation instructions.
  - 1. For curing compounds, provide data on method of removal in the event of incompatibility with floor covering adhesives.
- C. Mix Design: Submit proposed concrete mix design.
  - 1. Indicate proposed mix design complies with requirements of ACI 301, Section 4 - Concrete Mixtures.
- D. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement. Include bar sizes, lengths, material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, splices and laps, mechanical connections, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.

**03 3000**  
**CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

- E. Embedment Shop Drawings: Provide placement drawings for all steel embeds.
- F. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements to determine compliance with specified tolerances.
- G. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.
- H. Samples: Submit samples of underslab vapor retarder to be used.
- I. Test Reports: Submit report for each test or series of tests specified.

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Perform work of this section in accordance with ACI 301 and ACI 318.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.
  - 1. Installer shall have a minimum of 10 years and 5 similar sized project with the same scope performing tall board formed poured-in-place concrete walls.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
  - 1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- D. Follow recommendations of ACI 305R when concreting during hot weather.
- E. Follow recommendations of ACI 306R when concreting during cold weather.
- F. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
  - 1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-01 or an equivalent certification program.
  - 2. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade I. Testing Agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade II.
- G. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from one source, and obtain admixtures through one source from a single manufacturer.
- H. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."
- I. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.
- J. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
  - 1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:
    - a. Contractor's superintendent.
    - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
    - c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
    - d. Concrete subcontractor.
  - 2. Review special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control, concrete finishes and finishing, cold- and hot-weather concreting procedures, curing procedures, construction contraction and isolation joints, and joint-filler strips, forms and form removal limitations, shoring and reshoring procedures, vapor-retarder

**03 3000**  
**CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

installation, steel reinforcement installation, floor and slab flatness and levelness measurement, concrete repair procedures, and concrete protection.

**1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.
- B. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

**1.08 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 FORMWORK**

- A. Formwork Design and Construction: Comply with guidelines of ACI 347R to provide formwork that will produce concrete complying with tolerances of ACI 117.
- B. Form Materials: Contractor's choice of standard products with sufficient strength to withstand hydrostatic head without distortion in excess of permitted tolerances.
  - 1. Form Ties: Cone snap type that will leave no metal within 1-1/2 inches of concrete surface.
- C. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
  - 1. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.
  - 2. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:
    - a. High-density overlay, Class 1 or better at areas exposed to view but not board formed.
    - b. B-B (Concrete Form), Class 1 or better; mill oiled and edge sealed at areas not exposed to view.
- D. Void Forms: Biodegradable paper surface, treated for moisture resistance, structurally sufficient to support weight of plastic concrete and other superimposed loads.
- E. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
  - 1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.

**2.02 REINFORCEMENT**

- A. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 (60,000 psi).
  - 1. Type: Deformed billet-steel bars.
- B. Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement (WWR): Galvanized, plain type, ASTM A1064/A1064M.
- C. Reinforcement Accessories:
  - 1. Tie Wire: Annealed, minimum 16 gage, 0.0508 inch.
  - 2. Chairs, Bolsters, Bar Supports, Spacers: Sized and shaped for adequate support of reinforcement during concrete placement.
  - 3. Provide stainless steel, galvanized, plastic, or plastic coated steel components for placement within 1-1/2 inches of weathering surfaces.

**2.03 CONCRETE MATERIALS**

- A. Cement: ASTM C150, Type II - Moderate Portland type.
  - 1. Acquire all cement for entire project from same source.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 3S coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.
  - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 3/4 inch nominal.

**03 3000**  
**CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- C. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F. Content 40% at footings and foundation walls
- D. Silica Fume: ASTM C1240, amorphous siliaca, proportioned in accordance with ACI 211.1.
- E. Water: Clean and not detrimental to concrete. ASTM C 94/C 94/M and potable.

**2.04 ADMIXTURES**

- A. Do not use chemicals that will result in soluble chloride ions in excess of 0.1 percent by weight of cement.
- B. Air Entrainment Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M.
  1. Interior Flatwork exposed to freeze-thaw cycles: 2 - 4% of volume.
  2. Exterior Flatwork: 4 - 7% of volume.
- C. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
  1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
  2. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
  3. Shrinkage-Reducing Admixtures: Tetraguard AS20.
    - a. Locations: Provide Shrinkage-Reducing Admixtures to concrete for all slabs scheduled to be exposed and/or polished.
    - b. Dosage Amount: Provide as per manufacturer's recommendations.

**2.05 ACCESSORY MATERIALS**

- A. Underslab Vapor Barrier: Multi-layer, fabric-, cord-, grid-, or aluminum-reinforced polyethylene or equivalent, complying with ASTM E1745, Class B; stated by manufacturer as suitable for installation in contact with soil or granular fill under concrete slabs. The use of single ply polyethylene is prohibited.
  1. Installation: Comply with ASTM E1643.
  2. Accessory Products: Vapor retarder manufacturer's recommended tape, adhesive, mastic, prefabricated boots, etc., for sealing seams and penetrations in vapor retarder.
  3. Manufacturers:
    - a. Fortifiber Building Systems Group; Moistop Ultra 15: [www.fortifiber.com/#sle](http://www.fortifiber.com/#sle).
    - b. Husky; Yellow guard 15 mils.
    - c. Raven Industries Inc.; Vapor Block 15.
    - d. Reef Industries, Inc.; Griffolyn Type-105.
    - e. Stego Industries, LLC; Stego Wrap, 15 mils: [www.stegoindustries.com](http://www.stegoindustries.com).
    - f. W.R. Meadows, Inc.; PERMINATOR Class A - 15 mils: [www.wrmeadows.com/#sle](http://www.wrmeadows.com/#sle).
    - g. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.
  4. Locations: Beneath all slabs on grade

**2.06 BONDING AND JOINTING PRODUCTS**

- A. Latex Bonding Agent: Non-redispersable acrylic latex or styrene butadiene, complying with ASTM C1059/C1059M, Type II.
- B. Reglets: Formed steel sheet, galvanized, with temporary filler to prevent concrete intrusion during placement.
- C. Slab Isolation Joint Filler: 1/2 inch thick, height equal to slab thickness, with removable top section that will form 1/2 inch deep sealant pocket after removal.
  1. Material: ASTM D1751, asphalt-saturated cellulose fiber, cork or self-expanding cork
- D. Slab Construction Joint Devices: Combination keyed joint form and screed, galvanized steel, with minimum 1 inch diameter holes for conduit or rebars to pass through at 6 inches on center; ribbed steel stakes for setting.

**2.07 CURING MATERIALS**

- A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.

**03 3000**  
**CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- C. Water: Potable.
- D. Curing Compound, Non-dissipating: Liquid, membrane-forming, clear, non-yellowing acrylic; complying with ASTM C309, Type 1, Class B. Certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.
  - 1. Vehicle: Water-based.
  - 2. Manufacturers:
    - a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Clear Cure WB.
    - b. Burke by Edoco; Spartan Cote WB II.
    - c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure & Seal 20.
    - d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; Cure and Seal WB.
    - e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Cure & Seal 309 J18: [www.daytonsuperior.com/#sle](http://www.daytonsuperior.com/#sle).
    - f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Aqua Cure VOX.
    - g. Kaufman Products Inc.; Krystal 15 Emulsion: [www.kaufmanproducts.net/#sle](http://www.kaufmanproducts.net/#sle).
    - h. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc., a subsidiary of Laticrete International, Inc.; Dress & Seal WB: [www.lmcc.com/#sle](http://www.lmcc.com/#sle).
    - i. W.R. Meadows, Inc.; VOCOMP-20: [www.wrmeadows.com/#sle](http://www.wrmeadows.com/#sle).
    - j. Tamms Industries, Inc.; Clearseal WB 150.
  - 3. Extent of Work: Apply concrete curing materials to all interior exposed concrete surfaces.

## **2.08 FLOOR AND SLAB TREATMENTS**

- A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Clear, chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or silicate materials and proprietary components; odorless; colorless; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces.
  - 1. Available Products:
    - a. Curecrete Distribution Inc.; Ashford Formula.
  - 2. Location: At all exposed concrete floors not scheduled to receive floor finishes.

## **2.09 REPAIR MATERIALS**

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, Portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
  - 2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
  - 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
  - 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
- B. Repair Overlay: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, Portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
  - 2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
  - 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
  - 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

**03 3000**  
**CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

## **2.10 CONCRETE MIX DESIGN**

- A. Concrete Strength: Establish required average strength for each type of concrete on the basis of field experience or trial mixtures, as specified in ACI 301.
  - 1. For trial mixtures method, employ independent testing agency acceptable to Architect for preparing and reporting proposed mix designs.
  - 2. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than Portland cement in concrete as follows:
  - 1. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolans, Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag, and Silica Fume: 50 percent with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent.
- C. Admixtures: Add acceptable admixtures as recommended in ACI 211.1 and at rates recommended or required by manufacturer.
  - 1. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
- D. Slabs-on-Grade: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
  - 1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psi at 28 days.
  - 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.43.
  - 3. Slump Limit: 4 inches plus or minus 1/2 inch.
  - 4. Air Content: 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery.

## **2.11 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT**

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

## **2.12 MIXING**

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116, and furnish batch ticket information.
  - 1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify lines, levels, and dimensions before proceeding with work of this section.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Formwork: Comply with requirements of ACI 301. Design and fabricate forms to support all applied loads until concrete is cured, and for easy removal without damage to concrete.
  - 1. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
  - 2. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
  - 3. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
    - a. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
    - b. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
  - 4. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
  - 5. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.

**03 3000**  
**CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

6. Chamfer exterior corners, accent strips, and edges as shown on Drawings of permanently exposed concrete.
7. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
8. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
9. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
10. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

B. Where new concrete is to be bonded to previously placed concrete, prepare existing surface by cleaning with steel brush and applying bonding agent in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

1. Use epoxy bonding system for bonding to damp surfaces, for structural load-bearing applications, and where curing under humid conditions is required.
2. Use latex bonding agent only for non-load-bearing applications.

C. Interior Slabs on Grade: Install vapor retarder under interior slabs on grade according to ASTM E 1643. Lap joints minimum 6 inches. Seal joints, seams and penetrations watertight with manufacturer's recommended products and follow manufacturer's written instructions. Repair damaged vapor retarder before covering.

### **3.03 INSTALLING REINFORCEMENT AND OTHER EMBEDDED ITEMS**

- A. Comply with requirements of ACI 301. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, and accurately position, support, and secure in place to achieve not less than minimum concrete coverage required for protection.
- B. Install welded wire reinforcement in maximum possible lengths, and offset end laps in both directions. Splice laps with tie wire. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- C. Verify that anchors, seats, plates, reinforcement and other items to be cast into concrete are accurately placed, positioned securely, and will not interfere with concrete placement.
- D. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
  2. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.

### **3.04 VAPOR BARRIER INSTALLATION**

- A. Plastic Vapor Barriers: Place, protect, and repair vapor barriers according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Lap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape. Seal around all pipe penetrations with recommended tape.
  2. At slab edges, extend vapor barrier minimum of 6-inches above top of slab and tooled slab edge. Cut vapor barrier at tooled edge after slab cure for joint sealant application.

### **3.05 SHORES AND RESHORES**

- A. Comply with ACI 318 (ACI 318M) and ACI 301 for design, installation, and removal of shoring and reshoring.
  1. Do not remove shoring or reshoring until measurement of slab tolerances is complete.

**03 3000**  
**CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

B. Plan sequence of removal of shores and re-shore to avoid damage to concrete. Locate and provide adequate reshoring to support construction without excessive stress or deflection.

**3.06 PLACING CONCRETE**

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
- B. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect.
- C. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.
  1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- D. Place concrete in accordance with ACI 304R.
- E. Place concrete for floor slabs in accordance with ACI 302.1R.
- F. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
  1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth to not exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
  2. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
  3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- G. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
  1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
  2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
  3. Screeed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
  4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
  5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.
- H. Ensure reinforcement, inserts, waterstops, embedded parts, and formed construction joint devices will not be disturbed during concrete placement.
- I. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
  1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
  2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
  3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- J. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:
  1. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is

**03 3000**  
**CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.

2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.
- K. Finish floors level and flat, unless otherwise indicated, within the tolerances specified below.

**3.07 SLAB JOINTING**

- A. Locate joints as indicated on drawings.
- B. Anchor joint fillers and devices to prevent movement during concrete placement.
- C. Isolation Joints: Use preformed joint filler with removable top section for joint sealant, total height equal to thickness of slab, set flush with top of slab.
  1. Install wherever necessary to separate slab from other building members, including columns, walls, equipment foundations, footings, stairs, manholes, sumps, and drains.
- D. Saw Cut Contraction Joints: Saw cut joints before concrete begins to cool, within 4 to 12 hours after placing; use 3/16 inch thick blade and cut at least 1 inch deep but not less than one quarter (1/4) the depth of the slab.
- E. Construction Joints: Where not otherwise indicated, use metal combination screed and key form, with removable top section for joint sealant.
- F. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least six months. Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.
- G. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.
- H. Install semi-rigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches deep in formed joints. Overfill joint and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

**3.08 FLOOR FLATNESS AND LEVELNESS TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation of Surface Flatness:
  1. Exposed Concrete Floors: 1/4 inch in 10 feet.
  2. Under Carpeting: 1/4 inch in 10 feet.
- B. Correct the slab surface if tolerances are less than specified.
- C. Correct defects by grinding or by removal and replacement of the defective work. Areas requiring corrective work will be identified. Re-measure corrected areas by the same process.

**3.09 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS**

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of one part Portland cement to two and one-half parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
  1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension in solid concrete, but not less than 1 inch in depth. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
  2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white Portland cement and standard Portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before

**03 3000**  
**CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.

- 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
  - 1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
  - 2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
  - 3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
  - 4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
  - 6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
  - 7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

### **3.10 CONCRETE FINISHING**

- A. Repair surface defects, including tie holes, immediately after removing formwork.
- B. Unexposed Form Finish: Rub down or chip off fins or other raised areas 1/4 inch or more in height.
- C. Exposed Form Finish: Rub down or chip off and smooth fins or other raised areas 1/4 inch or more in height. Provide finish as follows:
  - 1. Smooth Rubbed Finish: Wet concrete and rub with carborundum brick or other abrasive, not more than 24 hours after form removal.
- D. Concrete Slabs: Finish to requirements of ACI 302.1R, and as follows:
  - 1. Other Surfaces to Be Left Exposed: Trowel as described in ACI 302.1R, minimizing burnish marks and other appearance defects.

**03 3000**  
**CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

### **3.11 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS**

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
  1. Apply float finish to surfaces to receive trowel finish.
- C. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
  1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system.
  2. Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unleveled, freestanding, 10-foot-long straightedge resting on 2 high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 1/8 inch.
- D. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces indicated where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thin-set method. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.
  1. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel finished floor surfaces.

### **3.12 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS**

- A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures, unless otherwise indicated, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.

### **3.13 CURING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Comply with requirements of ACI 308R. Immediately after placement, protect concrete from premature drying, excessively hot or cold temperatures, and mechanical injury.
- B. Maintain concrete with minimal moisture loss at relatively constant temperature for period necessary for hydration of cement and hardening of concrete.
- C. Formed Surfaces: Cure by moist curing with forms in place for full curing period. Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for the remainder of the curing period.
- D. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- E. Surfaces Not in Contact with Forms:
  1. Slabs and Floors To Receive Adhesive-Applied Flooring: Curing compounds and other surface coatings are usually considered unacceptable by flooring and adhesive manufacturers. If such materials must be used, either obtain the approval of the flooring and adhesive manufacturers prior to use or remove the surface coating after curing to flooring manufacturer's satisfaction.
  2. Initial Curing: Start as soon as free water has disappeared and before surface is dry. Keep continuously moist for not less than three days by water ponding, water-saturated sand, water-fog spray, or saturated burlap.
  3. Final Curing: Begin after initial curing but before surface is dry.
- F. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:

**03 3000**  
**CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
  - a. Water.
  - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
  - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
  - a. Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer certifies will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
  - a. After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
4. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

**3.14 LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS**

- A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Prepare, apply, and finish penetrating liquid floor treatment according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Remove curing compounds, sealers, oil, dirt, laitance, and other contaminants and complete surface repairs.
  2. Some manufacturers state that this floor treatment also functions as a curing aid. If used as a cure, delete minimum age of concrete in first subparagraph below and revise application method to follow manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate with "Concrete Protecting and Curing" Article.
  3. Apply floor treatment immediately.
  4. Apply liquid until surface is saturated, scrubbing into surface until a gel forms; rewet; and repeat brooming or scrubbing. Rinse with water; remove excess material until surface is dry. Apply a second coat in a similar manner if surface is rough or porous.

**3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. An independent testing agency will perform field quality control tests, as specified in Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements. Testing Agency will be retained by the Owner.
- B. Provide free access to concrete operations at project site and cooperate with appointed firm.
- C. Submit proposed mix design of each class of concrete to inspection and testing firm for review prior to commencement of concrete operations.
- D. Inspections:
  1. Steel reinforcement placement.
  2. Steel reinforcement welding.
  3. Headed bolts and studs.
  4. Verification of use of required design mixture.
  5. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
  6. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.

**03 3000**  
**CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

7. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
- E. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
  1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.
  2. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
    - a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  3. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  4. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  5. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
  6. Unit Weight: ASTM C 567, fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  7. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.
    - a. Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
    - b. Cast and field cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
  8. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one set of one laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days, one set of one specimen at 14 days, and one set of two specimens at 28 days, one specimen held in reserve.
    - a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
  9. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
  10. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
  11. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7, 14, and 28-day tests.
  12. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
  13. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42/C 42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.

**03 3000**  
**CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

14. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
15. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.
16. Take one additional test cylinder during cold weather concreting, cured on job site under same conditions as concrete it represents.

F. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness according to ASTM E 1155 within 48 hours of finishing.

**3.16 DEFECTIVE CONCRETE**

- A. Test Results: The testing agency shall report test results in writing to Architect and Contractor within 24 hours of test.
- B. Defective Concrete: Concrete not conforming to required lines, details, dimensions, tolerances or specified requirements.
- C. Repair or replacement of defective concrete will be determined by the Architect. The cost of additional testing shall be borne by Contractor when defective concrete is identified.
- D. Do not patch, fill, touch-up, repair, or replace exposed concrete except upon express direction of Architect for each individual area.

**3.17 PROTECTION**

- A. Do not permit traffic over unprotected concrete floor surface until fully cured.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 03 5400**  
**CAST UNDERLayment**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Liquid-applied self-leveling floor underlayment.
  - 1. Use cementitious type at \_\_\_\_\_.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 7000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Alteration project procedures; selective demolition for remodeling.
- B. Division 9 Sections for patching and leveling compounds applied with floor coverings.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C109/C109M - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars (Using 2-in. or (50-mm) Cube Specimens); 2013.
- B. ASTM C1602/C1602M - Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete; 2012.
- C. ASTM C348 - Standard Test Method for Flexural Strength of Hydraulic-Cement Mortars; 2014.
- D. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2015a.
- E. ICRI 310.2R - Selecting and Specifying Concrete Surface Preparation; 2013.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data & Submittals.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's data sheets documenting physical characteristics and product limitations of underlayment materials. Include information on surface preparation, environmental limitations, and installation instructions.
- C. Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- D. Maintenance Data: For inclusion in maintenance manual required by Section 01 7823.

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section, and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Compatibility: Manufacturers of both underlayment and floor covering system certify in writing that products are compatible.
- C. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

**1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- B. Keep dry and protect from direct sun exposure, freezing, and ambient temperature greater than 105 degrees F.

**1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install underlayment until floor penetrations and peripheral work are complete.
- B. Maintain minimum ambient temperatures of 50 degrees F 24 hours before, during and 72 hours after installation of underlayment.
- C. During the curing process, ventilate spaces to remove excess moisture.

**03 5400**  
**CAST UNDERLayment**

**1.09 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate application of underlayment with requirements of floor covering products, including adhesives, specified in Division 9 Sections, to ensure compatibility of products.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Cementitious Underlayment:
  - 1. HP Subfloors: Schonox XM Cement based self-leveling compound with Schonox VD primer.

**2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. Cast Underlays, General:
  - 1. Conform to applicable code for combustibility or flame spread requirements.
  - 2. Provide certificate of compliance from authority having jurisdiction indicating approval of underlayment materials in the required fire rated assembly.
- B. Cementitious Underlayment: Blended cement mix, that when mixed with water in accordance with manufacturer's directions will produce self-leveling underlayment with the following properties:
  - 1. Compressive Strength: Minimum 4300 psi after 28 days, tested per ASTM C109/C109M.
  - 2. Flexural Strength: Minimum 1000 psi after 28 days, tested per ASTM C348.
  - 3. Density: 116 lb/cu ft, nominal.
  - 4. Final Set Time: 80 minutes.
  - 5. Thickness: Capable of thicknesses from feather edge to maximum 1/2 inch.
  - 6. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread/Smoke developed index of 0/0 in accordance with ASTM E84.
- C. Water: Potable and not detrimental to underlayment mix materials.
- D. Sand: Washed masonry, mortar, or plaster sand.
- E. Primer and Sealer: Provide primer and sealer as suitable for specified floor finish as recommended by applied floor finish manufacturer and gypsum cement underlayment manufacturer.
- F. Joint and Crack Filler: Latex based filler, as recommended by manufacturer.

**2.03 MIXING**

- A. Site mix materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Mix to self-leveling consistency without over-watering.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that substrate surfaces are clean, dry, unfrozen, do not contain petroleum byproducts, or other compounds detrimental to underlayment material bond to substrate.
- B. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for conditions affecting performance.
  - 1. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

**3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. General: Prepare and clean substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Treat nonmoving substrate cracks according to manufacturer's written instructions to prevent cracks from telegraphing (reflecting) through underlayment.
  - 2. Fill substrate voids to prevent underlayment from leaking.
- B. Remove substrate surface irregularities. Fill voids and deck joints with filler. Finish smooth. Mechanically fasten loose boards and panels to eliminate substrate movement and squeaks.
- C. Vacuum clean surfaces.
- D. Prime substrate in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Allow to dry.

**03 5400**  
**CAST UNDERLayment**

- E. Close floor openings.
- F. Sound deadening mat placement: Follow manufacturer's instructions. Extend mat up the perimeters of wall 2 inches. Snugly butt joints together and tape.
- G. Adhesion Tests: After substrate preparation, test substrate for adhesion with underlayment according to manufacturer's written instructions.

**3.03 APPLICATION**

- A. Install underlayment in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - 1. Close areas to traffic during underlayment application and for time period after application recommended in writing by manufacturer.
  - 2. Coordinate application of components to provide optimum underlayment-to-substrate and intercoat adhesion.
  - 3. At substrate expansion, isolation, and other moving joints, allow joint of same width to continue through underlayment.
- B. Apply primer over prepared substrate at manufacturer's recommended spreading rate.
- C. Pump or pour material onto substrate. Do not retemper or add water.
  - 1. Pump, move, and screed while the material is still highly flowable.
  - 2. Be careful not to create cold joints.
  - 3. Wear spiked shoes while working in the wet material to avoid leaving marks.
  - 4. Apply a final layer without aggregate to produce surface.
  - 5. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
- D. Place to indicated thickness, with top surface level to 1/8 inch in 10 ft.
- E. Cure underlayment according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent contamination during application and curing processes.
- F. Do not install floor coverings over underlayment until after time period recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer.
- G. Remove and replace underlayment areas that evidence lack of bond with substrate, including areas that emit a "hollow" sound when tapped.

**3.04 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect against direct sunlight, heat, and wind; prevent rapid drying to avoid shrinkage and cracking.
- B. Do not permit traffic over unprotected floor underlayment surfaces.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 04 2000**  
**UNIT MASONRY**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Concrete Block.
- B. Mortar and Grout.
- C. Reinforcement and Anchorage.
- D. Lintels.
- E. Accessories.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Nailing strips built into masonry.
- B. Section 07 9200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing control and expansion joints.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware; 2009.
- B. ASTM A615/A615M - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement; 2016.
- C. ASTM A641/A641M - Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire; 2009a (Reapproved 2014).
- D. ASTM C62 - Standard Specification for Building Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made From Clay or Shale); 2013.
- E. ASTM C91/C91M - Standard Specification for Masonry Cement; 2012.
- F. ASTM C144 - Standard Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar; 2011.
- G. ASTM C150/C150M - Standard Specification for Portland Cement; 2016.
- H. ASTM C207 - Standard Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes; 2006 (Reapproved 2011).
- I. ASTM C404 - Standard Specification for Aggregates for Masonry Grout; 2011.
- J. ASTM C476 - Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry; 2010.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Product Data: Provide data for masonry units, fabricated wire reinforcement, mortar, and masonry accessories.
- C. Shop Drawings: For the following:
  1. Masonry Units: Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
  2. Fabricated Flashing: Detail corner units, end-dam units, and other special applications.
  3. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement."
- D. Material Certificates: Include statements of material properties indicating compliance with requirements including compliance with standards and type designations within standards. Provide for each type and size of the following:
  1. Masonry Units.
    - a. Include material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.

**04 2000**  
**UNIT MASONRY**

- b. For masonry units used in structural masonry, include data and calculations establishing average net-area compressive strength of units.
- E. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
- F. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined according to Building Code.
- G. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that masonry units meet or exceed specified requirements.
- H. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that water repellent admixture manufacturer has certified masonry unit manufacturer as an approved user of water repellent admixture in the manufacture of concrete block.
- I. Test Reports: Concrete masonry manufacturer's test reports for units with integral water repellent admixture.
- J. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
  - 2. List of CMU products and used.

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain masonry units of a uniform texture through one source from a single manufacturer for each product required.
- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from a single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from one source or producer for each aggregate.
- C. Certification of Materials: Stamp bags of materials showing that they meet the requirements of this specification.
- D. Workmanship: All block shall be laid in a workmanlike manner by skilled masons. Allow for caulking where required. Lay units with full buttered ends, with full flat mortar beds, shove in place filling all joints thoroughly.
- E. Special Inspection: Required only if so indicated on Drawings. Schedule and notify testing agency giving a reasonable lead time. Pay for costs of inspections at no additional cost to the Owner.

**1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver, handle, and store masonry units by means that will prevent mechanical damage and contamination by other materials.
- B. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. Wrap units in such a manner to keep weather out, but allow units to breath. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- C. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- D. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- E. Deliver pre-blended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for lifting and emptying into dispensing silo. Store pre-blended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location or in a metal dispensing silo with weatherproof cover.
- F. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

## 1.08 LINES AND LEVELS

A. Verify location of control points. Check all lines and levels. Contractor will be held responsible for bearing all expenses incurred by alterations due to errors in laying out, at no additional cost to the Owner.

## 1.09 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.

1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides and hold cover securely in place.
2. Where 1 wythe of multiwythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of 24 inches down face next to unconstructed wythe and hold cover in place.

B. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, concrete, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, concrete, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.

1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.

C. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 degrees Fahrenheit and above and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than 7 days after completing cleaning.

D. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

1. When ambient temperature exceeds 100 degrees Fahrenheit, or 90 degrees Fahrenheit with a wind velocity greater than 8 mph, do not spread mortar beds more than 48 inches ahead of masonry. Set masonry units within one minute of spreading mortar.
2. Protect masonry from direct exposure to wind and sun when erected in an ambient air temperature of 90 degrees Fahrenheit in the shade with relative humidity less than 50 percent.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS, GENERAL

A. Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C 90 and as follows:

1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 1900 psi.
2. Weight Classification: Medium weight.
3. Provide Type I, moisture-controlled units.
4. Size: Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less than nominal dimensions. Thickness per drawings.

B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects in the standard. Do not use units where such defects, including dimensions that vary from specified dimensions by more than stated tolerances, will be exposed in the completed Work or will impair the quality of completed masonry. The 5% of allowed chips by ASTM C90 shall be concealed from the public eye as best possible.

## 2.02 MASONRY LINTELS

- A. General: Provide masonry lintels complying with requirements below.
- B. Masonry Lintels: Built-in-place masonry lintels made from bond beam concrete masonry units with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout. Temporarily support built-in-place lintels until cured.

## 2.03 CONCRETE MASONRY UNIT TYPES

- A. TYPE 1 (CMU-1):
  - 1. Manufacturer: Willamette Graystone, or approved.
  - 2. Type: Structural Units.
  - 3. Widths: 4 and 8 inches.
  - 4. Sizes: 8 x 16 inches.
  - 5. Pattern: Stack and Running bond.
  - 6. Face: Smooth Face.
  - 7. Color: Gray with paint finish.
  - 8. Location: As indicated on the drawings.

## 2.04 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Masonry Cement: ASTM C91/C91M, Type N.
- B. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I; color as required to produce approved color sample.
- C. Fly Ash Content: 14% – 25%.
- D. Unit Masonry Mortar: ASTM C 270.
- E. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.
- F. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of Portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, and hydrated lime complying with ASTM C 207, Type S.
- G. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
- H. Mortar Aggregate: ASTM C144.
- I. Grout Aggregate: ASTM C404.
- J. Water: Clean and potable.

## 2.05 REINFORCEMENT AND ANCHORAGE

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc (including Dur-O-Wal brand); RJ 711 or RJ 721: [www.h-b.com](http://www.h-b.com).
  - 2. WIRE-BOND: [www.wirebond.com/#sle](http://www.wirebond.com/#sle).
  - 3. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 (60,000 psi), deformed billet bars; galvanized.
- C. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells with loops for holding reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.142-inch steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units with either two loops or four loops as needed for number of bars indicated. Manufactured by A. A. Wire or equal.
- D. Joint Reinforcement: Use ladder type joint reinforcement where vertical reinforcement is involved and truss type elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Single Wythe Joint Reinforcement: Truss or ladder type; ASTM A1064/A1064M steel wire, mill galvanized to ASTM A641/A641M, Class 3; 0.1483 inch side rods with 0.1483 inch cross rods; width as required to provide not more than 1 inch and not less than 1/2 inch of mortar coverage on each exposure.

**04 2000**  
**UNIT MASONRY**

F. Flexible Anchors: 2-piece anchors that permit differential movement between masonry and building frame, sized to provide not more than 1 inch and not less than 1/2 inch of mortar coverage from masonry face.

## **2.06 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES**

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.
  1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
  2. Limit cementitious materials in mortar to Portland cement, mortar cement, and lime.
  3. Use latex additive for part or all of the gaging water in a mortar or grout. Proportion and mix Portland cement, sand, and latex additive to comply with written instructions of latex-additive manufacturer.
  4. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
  5. Add non re-emulsifiable polymer bonding agent to setting bed mortar mixes where unit masonry is set on cured or partially cured concrete footings, or to grout mixes where unit masonry is joined to other cured concrete surfaces.
- B. Pre-blended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a pre-blended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: ASTM C270, using the Proportion Specification.
  1. Masonry below grade and in contact with earth: Type S.
  2. Exterior, loadbearing masonry: Type N or S.
  3. Exterior, non-loadbearing masonry: Type N or S.
  4. Interior Non-load bearing partitions and exterior veneer: Type N
- D. Grout: ASTM C476; consistency required to fill completely volumes indicated for grouting; fine grout for spaces with smallest horizontal dimension of 2 inches or less; coarse grout for spaces with smallest horizontal dimension greater than 2 inches.
- E. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476, 2000 psi
  1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with Table 1.15.1 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
  2. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured according to ASTM C 143.
- F. Mixing: Use mechanical batch mixer and comply with referenced standards.
- G. Use mortar and grout within 90 minutes of addition of water to Portland cement.

## **2.07 MASONRY CLEANERS**

- A. A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.
  1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.
    - b. EaCo Chem, Inc.
    - c. ProSoCo, Inc., Sure-Clean.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that field conditions are acceptable and are ready to receive masonry.
- B. Verify that related items provided under other sections are properly sized and located.
- C. Verify that built-in items are in proper location, and ready for roughing into masonry work.

**04 2000**  
**UNIT MASONRY**

- D. Field Measurements: verify prior to starting work. If measurements differ slightly from drawing dimensions, modify work as required for accurate fit. If measurements differ substantially, notify Architect's Representative prior to starting Work. Starting Work constitutes acceptance of existing conditions.
- E. Protection of existing surfaces: Protect existing adjacent surfaces from mortar stains. If damaged or stained, repair or replace as directed by Architect's Representative, at no additional cost to the Owner.

**3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Direct and coordinate placement of metal anchors supplied for installation under other sections.
- B. Provide temporary bracing during installation of masonry work. Maintain in place until building structure provides permanent bracing.

**3.03 COURSING**

- A. Establish lines, levels, and coursing indicated. Protect from displacement.
- B. Maintain masonry courses to uniform dimension. Form vertical and horizontal joints of uniform thickness.
- C. Concrete Masonry Units:
  1. Bond: As indicated for different locations.
  2. Coursing: One unit and one mortar joint to equal 8 inches.
  3. Mortar Joints: Concave.

**3.04 PLACING AND BONDING**

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Lay solid masonry units in full bed of mortar, with full head joints, uniformly jointed with other work.
- C. Lay hollow masonry units with face shell bedding on head and bed joints.
- D. Buttering corners of joints or excessive furrowing of mortar joints is not permitted.
- E. Remove excess mortar and mortar smears as work progresses.
- F. Remove excess mortar with water repellent admixture promptly. Do not use acids, sandblasting or high pressure cleaning methods.
- G. Interlock intersections and external corners.
- H. Do not shift or tap masonry units after mortar has achieved initial set. Where adjustment must be made, remove mortar and replace.
- I. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness, unless otherwise indicated. Joints shall be 3/8 inch.
  1. After initial tooling of concaved joints, contractor shall finish the joint tooling by retooling with a sled runner that is a minimum of 4 inches longer than the longest piece of masonry.
- J. Build non-load-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. At fire-rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Division 7 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems."
- K. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by racking back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.

**04 2000  
UNIT MASONRY**

- L. Perform job site cutting of masonry units with proper tools to provide straight, clean, unchipped edges. Prevent broken masonry unit corners or edges.
- M. Cut mortar joints flush where wall tile is scheduled or resilient base is scheduled.
- N. Isolate masonry partitions from vertical structural framing members with a control joint.
- O. Isolate top joint of masonry partitions from horizontal structural framing members and slabs or decks with compressible joint filler.

**3.05 REINFORCEMENT AND ANCHORAGE - GENERAL**

- A. Unless otherwise indicated on drawings or specified under specific wall type, install horizontal joint reinforcement 16 inches on center.
- B. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 24 inches o.c. vertically and 36 inches o.c. horizontally.
- C. Provide an open space not less than 1/2 inch in width between masonry and structural member, unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar and other rigid materials.
- D. Anchor masonry to structural members with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
- E. Place masonry joint reinforcement in first and second horizontal joints above and below openings. Extend minimum 16 inches each side of opening.
- F. Place continuous joint reinforcement in first and second joint below top of walls.
- G. Lap joint reinforcement ends minimum 6 inches.
- H. Fasten anchors to structural framing and embed in masonry joints as masonry is laid. Unless otherwise indicated on drawings or closer spacing is indicated under specific wall type, space anchors at maximum of 36 inches horizontally and 24 inches vertically.

**3.06 GROUTED COMPONENTS**

- A. Lap splices minimum 24 bar diameters.
- B. Support and secure reinforcing bars from displacement. Maintain position within 1/2 inch of dimensioned position.
- C. Place and consolidate grout fill without displacing reinforcing.
- D. At bearing locations, fill masonry cores with grout for a minimum 12 inches either side of opening.

**3.07 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS**

- A. Do not continue horizontal joint reinforcement through control or expansion joints.
- B. General: Install control and expansion joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
- C. Form control joints in concrete masonry using one of the following methods:
  1. Fit bond-breaker strips into hollow contour in ends of concrete masonry units on one side of control joint. Fill resultant core with grout and rake out joints in exposed faces for application of sealant.
  2. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.
  3. Install interlocking units designed for control joints. Install bond-breaker strips at joint. Keep head joints free and clear of mortar or rake out joint for application of sealant.
  4. Install temporary foam-plastic filler in head joints and remove filler when unit masonry is complete for application of sealant.

**3.08 BUILT-IN WORK**

- A. As work progresses, install built-in metal door frames and other items to be built into the work and furnished under other sections.
- B. Install built-in items plumb, level, and true to line.

**04 2000**  
**UNIT MASONRY**

- C. Bed anchors of metal door and glazed frames in adjacent mortar joints. Fill frame voids solid with grout.
  - 1. Fill adjacent masonry cores with grout minimum 12 inches from framed openings.
- D. Do not build into masonry construction organic materials that are subject to deterioration.

**3.09 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation from Alignment of Columns: 1/4 inch.
- B. Maximum Variation From Unit to Adjacent Unit: 1/16 inch.
- C. Maximum Variation from Plane of Wall: 1/4 inch in 10 ft and 1/2 inch in 20 ft or more.
- D. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 1/4 inch per story non-cumulative; 1/2 inch in two stories or more.
- E. Opening sizes to within plus or minus 1/4 inch.
- F. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
- G. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as tops of walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
- H. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as corners, expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
- I. Maximum Variation from Level Coursing: 1/8 inch in 3 ft and 1/4 inch in 10 ft; 1/2 inch in 30 ft.
- J. Maximum Variation of Mortar Joint Thickness: Head joint, minus 1/4 inch, plus 3/8 inch.
- K. Maximum Variation from Cross Sectional Thickness of Walls: 1/4 inch.

**3.10 CUTTING AND FITTING**

- A. Cut and fit for chases. Coordinate with other sections of work to provide correct size, shape, and location.
- B. Obtain approval prior to cutting or fitting masonry work not indicated or where appearance or strength of masonry work may be impaired.

**3.11 REPAIRING, POINTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Remove excess mortar and mortar droppings.
- B. Replace defective mortar. Match adjacent work.
- C. Clean soiled surfaces with cleaning solution.
- D. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement at no additional cost to the Owner.
- E. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated on the Drawings.
- F. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- G. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
  - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.

**3.12 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL**

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site and dispose of in a lawful manner.

**04 2000  
UNIT MASONRY**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 05 5000**  
**METAL FABRICATIONS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Shop fabricated steel items.
- B. Steel framing and supports for countertops.
- C. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
- D. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
- E. Steel fabricated guardrails and railings.
- F. Worksurface supports.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Placement of metal fabrications in concrete.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM A36/A36M - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel; 2014.
- B. ASTM A53/A53M - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless; 2012.
- C. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2015.
- D. ASTM A283/A283M - Standard Specification for Low and Intermediate Tensile Strength Carbon Steel Plates; 2013.
- E. ASTM A325 - Standard Specification for Structural Bolts, Steel, Heat Treated, 120/105 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength; 2014.
- F. ASTM A325M - Standard Specification for Structural Bolts, Steel, Heat Treated 830 MPa Minimum Tensile Strength (Metric); 2014.
- G. ASTM A501/A501M - Standard Specification for Hot-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing; 2014.
- H. ASTM A1011/A1011M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength; 2014.
- I. AWS A2.4 - Standard Symbols for Welding, Brazing, and Nondestructive Examination; 2012.
- J. AWS D1.1/D1.1M - Structural Welding Code - Steel; 2015 (Errata 2016).
- K. IAS AC172 - Accreditation Criteria for Fabricator Inspection Programs for Structural Steel; International Accreditation Service, Inc; 2011.
- L. SSPC-Paint 15 - Steel Joist Shop Primer/Metal Building Primer; 1999 (Ed. 2004).
- M. SSPC-Paint 20 - Zinc-Rich Primers (Type I, "Inorganic," and Type II, "Organic"); 2002 (Ed. 2004).
- N. SSPC-SP 2 - Hand Tool Cleaning; 1982 (Ed. 2004).

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.

**05 5000**  
**METAL FABRICATIONS**

- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate profiles, sizes, connection attachments, reinforcing, anchorage, size and type of fasteners, and accessories. Include erection drawings, elevations, and details where applicable.
  - 1. Indicate welded connections using standard AWS A2.4 welding symbols. Indicate net weld lengths.
- C. Welders' Certificates: Submit certification for welders employed on the project, verifying AWS qualification within the previous 12 months.
- D. Fabricator's Qualification Statement: Provide documentation showing steel fabricator is accredited under IAS AC172.

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Design structural steel elements under direct supervision of a Professional Structural Engineer experienced in design of this Work and licensed in Oregon.
- B. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified steel fabricator that is accredited by IAS AC172.

**1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

**1.08 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal fabrications. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MATERIALS - STEEL**

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces, unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Recycled Content of Steel Products: For all miscellaneous steel products, provide minimum Recycled Steel Content of 90% and minimum Post-Consumer Steel Content of 75%.
- C. Steel Sections: ASTM A36/A36M.
- D. Steel Tubing: ASTM A501/A501M hot-formed structural tubing.
- E. Plates: ASTM A283/A283M.
- F. Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Grade B Schedule 40, black finish.
- G. Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A325 (ASTM A325M), Type 1, plain.
- H. Welding Materials: AWS D1.1/D1.1M; type required for materials being welded.
- I. Shop and Touch-Up Primer: SSPC-Paint 15, complying with VOC limitations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- J. Touch-Up Primer for Galvanized Surfaces: SSPC-Paint 20, Type I - Inorganic, complying with VOC limitations of authorities having jurisdiction.

**2.02 FABRICATION**

- A. Fit and shop assemble items in largest practical sections, for delivery to site.
- B. Fabricate items with joints tightly fitted and secured.
- C. Grind exposed joints flush and smooth with adjacent finish surface. Make exposed joints butt tight, flush, and hairline. Ease exposed edges to small uniform radius.
- D. Exposed Mechanical Fastenings: Flush countersunk screws or bolts; unobtrusively located; consistent with design of component, except where specifically noted otherwise.

**05 5000**  
**METAL FABRICATIONS**

- E. Supply components required for anchorage of fabrications. Fabricate anchors and related components of same material and finish as fabrication, except where specifically noted otherwise.

**2.03 FABRICATED ITEMS**

**2.04 WORKSURFACE SUPPORTS**

- A. Fabricate supports from steel plate of sizes indicated and for attachment to concrete floor.
- B. Connect to concrete slab with expansion bolts.
- C. Finish: Powder Coated, Color to be selected.

**2.05 GUARDRAILS AND RAILINGS**

- A. Fabricate as indicated on the drawings.

**2.06 FINISHES - STEEL**

- A. Prime paint steel items.
  - 1. Exceptions: Galvanize items to be embedded in concrete, items to be imbedded in masonry, and items specified for \_\_\_\_\_ finish.
- B. Prepare surfaces to be primed in accordance with SSPC-SP2.
- C. Clean surfaces of rust, scale, grease, and foreign matter prior to finishing.
- D. Prime Painting: One coat.
- E. Galvanizing of Structural Steel Members: Galvanize after fabrication to ASTM A123/A123M requirements. Provide minimum 1.7 oz/sq ft galvanized coating.
- F. Galvanizing of Non-structural Items: Galvanize after fabrication to ASTM A123/A123M requirements.

**2.07 FABRICATION TOLERANCES**

- A. Squareness: 1/8 inch maximum difference in diagonal measurements.
- B. Maximum Offset Between Faces: 1/16 inch.
- C. Maximum Misalignment of Adjacent Members: 1/16 inch.
- D. Maximum Bow: 1/8 inch in 48 inches.
- E. Maximum Deviation From Plane: 1/16 inch in 48 inches.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that field conditions are acceptable and are ready to receive work.

**3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean and strip primed steel items to bare metal where site welding is required.
- B. Supply setting templates to the appropriate entities for steel items required to be cast into concrete or embedded in masonry.

**3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install items plumb and level, accurately fitted, free from distortion or defects.
- B. Provide for erection loads, and for sufficient temporary bracing to maintain true alignment until completion of erection and installation of permanent attachments.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.

**05 5000**  
**METAL FABRICATIONS**

4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Field weld components as indicated on drawings.
- E. Perform field welding in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- F. Obtain approval prior to site cutting or making adjustments not scheduled.
- G. After erection, prime welds, abrasions, and surfaces not shop primed, except surfaces to be in contact with concrete.

**3.04 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation From Plumb: 1/4 inch per story, non-cumulative.
- B. Maximum Offset From True Alignment: 1/8 inch.
- C. Maximum Out-of-Position: 1/4 inch.

**3.05 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.
- B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 9 painting Sections.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 06 1000**  
**ROUGH CARPENTRY**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Non-structural dimension lumber framing.
- B. Sheathing.
- C. Preservative treated wood materials.
- D. Communications and electrical room mounting boards.
- E. Concealed wood blocking, nailers, and supports.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Setting anchors in concrete.
- B. Section 05 5000 - Metal Fabrications: Miscellaneous steel connectors and support angles for wood framing.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AWC (WFCM) - Wood Frame Construction Manual for One- and Two-Family Dwellings; 2015.
- B. AFPA (WFCM) - Wood Frame Construction Manual for One- and Two-Family Dwellings; 2012.
- C. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware; 2009.
- D. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2015a.
- E. PS 1 - Structural Plywood; 2009.
- F. PS 20 - American Softwood Lumber Standard; 2010.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

**1.06 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal or greater but less than 5 inches nominal in least dimension.
- C. Timber: Lumber of 5 inches nominal or greater in least dimension.
- D. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
  1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
  2. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
  3. RIS: Redwood Inspection Service.
  4. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
  5. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
  6. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

**1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Source Limitations for Engineered Wood Products: Obtain each type of engineered wood product through one source from a single manufacturer.

**1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. General: Cover wood products to protect against moisture. Support stacked products to prevent deformation and to allow air circulation.

**06 1000**  
**ROUGH CARPENTRY**

B. Fire Retardant Treated Wood: Prevent exposure to precipitation during shipping, storage, or installation.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Dimension Lumber: Comply with PS 20 and requirements of specified grading agencies.
  1. If no species is specified, provide any species graded by the agency specified; if no grading agency is specified, provide lumber graded by any grading agency meeting the specified requirements.
  2. Grading Agency: Any grading agency whose rules are approved by the Board of Review, American Lumber Standard Committee ([www.alsc.org](http://www.alsc.org)) and who provides grading service for the species and grade specified; provide lumber stamped with grade mark unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Lumber fabricated from old growth timber is not permitted.

### **2.02 DIMENSION LUMBER FOR CONCEALED APPLICATIONS**

- A. Sizes: Nominal sizes as indicated on drawings, S4S.
- B. Moisture Content: S-dry or MC19.
- C. Miscellaneous Framing, Blocking, Nailers, Grounds, and Furring:
  1. Lumber: S4S, No. 2 or Standard Grade.
  2. Boards: Standard or No. 3.

### **2.03 CONSTRUCTION PANELS**

- A. Wall Sheathing: Plywood, PS 1, Grade C-D, Exposure I.
  1. Bond Classification: Exterior.
  2. Grade: Structural I Sheathing.
  3. Performance Category: 7/16 PERFCAT.
- B. Communications and Electrical Room Mounting Boards: PS 1 A-D plywood, or medium density fiberboard; 3/4 inch thick; flame spread index of 25 or less, smoke developed index of 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

### **2.04 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Fasteners and Anchors:
  1. Metal and Finish: Hot-dipped galvanized steel complying with ASTM A153/A153M for high humidity and preservative-treated wood locations, unfinished steel elsewhere.

### **2.05 FACTORY WOOD TREATMENT**

- A. Treated Lumber and Plywood: Comply with requirements of AWPA U1 - Use Category System for wood treatments determined by use categories, expected service conditions, and specific applications.
  1. Preservative-Treated Wood: Provide lumber and plywood marked or stamped by an ALSC-accredited testing agency, certifying level and type of treatment in accordance with AWPA standards.
- B. Preservative Treatment:
  1. Preservative Pressure Treatment of Plywood Above Grade: AWPA U1, Use Category UC2 and UC3B, Commodity Specification F using waterborne preservative.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Where wood framing bears on cementitious foundations, install full width sill flashing continuous over top of foundation, lap ends of flashing minimum of 4 inches and seal.
- B. Coordinate installation of rough carpentry members specified in other sections.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Select material sizes to minimize waste.
- B. Reuse scrap to the greatest extent possible; clearly separate scrap for use on site as accessory components, including: shims, bracing, and blocking.

### 3.03 FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. Make provisions for temporary construction loads, and provide temporary bracing sufficient to maintain structure in true alignment and safe condition until completion of erection and installation of permanent bracing.
- B. Comply with member sizes, spacing, and configurations indicated, and fastener size and spacing indicated, but not less than required by applicable codes and AWI (WFCM) Wood Frame Construction Manual.
- C. Install horizontal spanning members with crown edge up and not less than 1-1/2 inches of bearing at each end.
- D. Provide deflection clips at the top of all non-load-bearing framed walls that continue to structure.

### 3.04 BLOCKING, NAILERS, AND SUPPORTS

- A. Provide framing and blocking members as indicated or as required to support finishes, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
- B. In framed assemblies that have concealed spaces, provide solid wood fireblocking as required by applicable local code, to close concealed draft openings between floors and between top story and roof/attic space; other material acceptable to code authorities may be used in lieu of solid wood blocking.
- C. In walls, provide blocking attached to studs as backing and support for wall-mounted items, unless item can be securely fastened to two or more studs or other method of support is explicitly indicated.
- D. Where ceiling-mounting is indicated, provide blocking and supplementary supports above ceiling, unless other method of support is explicitly indicated.
- E. Provide the following specific non-structural framing and blocking:
  1. Cabinets and shelf supports.
  2. Wall brackets.
  3. Handrails.
  4. Grab bars.
  5. Towel and bath accessories.
  6. Wall-mounted door stops.
  7. Chalkboards and marker boards.
  8. Wall paneling and trim.
  9. Joints of rigid wall coverings that occur between studs.

### 3.05 ROOF-RELATED CARPENTRY

- A. Coordinate installation of roofing carpentry with deck construction, framing of roof openings, and roofing assembly installation.
- B. Provide wood curb at all roof openings except where prefabricated curbs are specified and where specifically indicated otherwise. Form corners by alternating lapping side members.

### 3.06 INSTALLATION OF CONSTRUCTION PANELS

- A. Wall Sheathing: Secure with long dimension perpendicular to wall studs, with ends over firm bearing and staggered, using nails, screws, or staples.
- B. Communications and Electrical Room Mounting Boards: Secure with screws to studs with edges over firm bearing; space fasteners at maximum 24 inches on center on all edges and into studs in field of board.
  1. At fire-rated walls, install board over wall board indicated as part of the fire-rated assembly.

**06 1000**  
**ROUGH CARPENTRY**

2. Where boards are indicated as full floor-to-ceiling height, install with long edge of board parallel to studs.
3. Install adjacent boards without gaps.

**3.07 TOLERANCES**

- A. Framing Members: 1/4 inch from true position, maximum.
- B. Surface Flatness of Floor: 1/8 inch in 10 feet maximum, and 1/4 inch in 30 feet maximum.
- C. Variation from Plane (Other than Floors): 1/4 inch in 10 feet maximum, and 1/4 inch in 30 feet maximum.

**3.08 CLEANING**

- A. Waste Disposal: Comply with the requirements of Section 01 7419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal.
  1. Comply with applicable regulations.
  2. Do not burn scrap on project site.
  3. Do not burn scraps that have been pressure treated.
  4. Do not send materials treated with pentachlorophenol, CCA, or ACA to co-generation facilities or "waste-to-energy" facilities.
- B. Do not leave any wood, shavings, sawdust, etc. on the ground or buried in fill.
- C. Prevent sawdust and wood shavings from entering the storm drainage system.

**3.09 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 06 4100**  
**ARCHITECTURAL WOOD CASEWORK**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Plastic-Laminate Cabinets.
- B. Shop finishing of interior woodwork.
- C. Countertops.
- D. Cabinet hardware.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Support framing, grounds, and concealed blocking.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards; 2014.
- B. AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) - North American Architectural Woodwork Standards, U.S. Version 3.0; 2016.
- C. NEMA LD 3 - High-Pressure Decorative Laminates; 2005.
- D. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards; 2014.
- E. BHMA A156.9 - American National Standard for Cabinet Hardware; Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association; 2010 (ANSI/BHMA A156.9).

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate materials, component profiles, fastening methods, jointing details, and accessories.
  1. Minimum Scale of Detail Drawings: Full-size.
  2. Provide the information required by AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS).
  3. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
  4. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for plumbing fixtures, faucets, soap dispensers and other items installed in architectural woodwork.
  5. Show veneer leaves with dimensions, grain direction, exposed face, and identification numbers indicating the flitch and sequence within the flitch for each leaf.
- C. Product Data: Provide data for panel products, high-pressure decorative laminates, adhesives for bonding plastic laminates, cabinet hardware and accessories, and finishing materials and processes.
- D. Samples: Submit actual samples of architectural cabinet construction, minimum 12 inches square, illustrating proposed cabinet, countertop, and shelf unit substrate and finish.
- E. Samples: Submit actual sample items of proposed pulls, hinges, shelf standards, and locksets, demonstrating hardware design, quality, and finish.
- F. Qualification Data: For Installer and fabricator.
- G. Maintenance Data: For inclusion in maintenance manual required by Section 01 7823.

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

**06 4100**  
**ARCHITECTURAL WOOD CASEWORK**

- B. Source Limitations: Engage a qualified woodworking firm to assume undivided responsibility for production of interior architectural woodwork with sequence-matched wood veneers and wood doors with face veneers that are sequence matched with woodwork and transparent-finished wood doors that are required to be of same species as woodwork.
- C. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" for grades of interior architectural woodwork indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
- D. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

**1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect units from moisture damage.
- B. Do not deliver woodwork until painting and similar operations that could damage woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If woodwork must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Project Conditions" Article.

**1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Field Measurements: Where woodwork is indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
  1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support woodwork by field measurements before being enclosed, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
  2. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating woodwork without field measurements. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.
- B. During and after installation of custom cabinets, maintain temperature and humidity conditions in building spaces at same levels planned for occupancy.

**1.09 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that interior architectural woodwork can be supported and installed as indicated.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 CABINETS**

- A. Quality Standard: Premium Grade, in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS), unless noted otherwise.
- B. Plastic Laminate Faced Cabinets: Premium grade.
- C. General: Construction of the cabinetry shall be high-pressure laminate over NAUF plywood sheathing. Particle board or MDF is not allowed in the cabinet construction, unless noted otherwise.
  1. Alternate Core Material to Plywood: Columbia Forest Products; Pure Bond Classic Core.
- D. AWI Type of Cabinet Construction: Reveal overlay.
- E. Reveal Dimension: 1/2 inch.
- F. Laminate Cladding for Exposed Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate complying with the following requirements:
  1. Horizontal Surfaces Other Than Tops: Grade HGS.
  2. Vertical Surfaces: Grade HGS. Grain directions shall be perpendicular to floor.
  3. Edges: ABS edge banding, 3 mm thick. Color and pattern to be selected from manufacturer's full line of banding.

**06 4100**  
**ARCHITECTURAL WOOD CASEWORK**

- G. Materials for Semi-exposed Surfaces:
  - 1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: High-pressure decorative laminate, Grade HGS.
    - a. Edges of Plastic-Laminate Shelves: ABS edge banding, 3 mm thick. Color and pattern to be selected from manufacturer's full line of banding.
    - b. For semi-exposed backs of panels with exposed plastic-laminate surfaces, provide surface of high-pressure decorative laminate, Grade HGS.
    - c. Thermoset Decorative Panels, thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper may be used for semi-exposed surfaces where Alternate Core Material is used or where particle board or MDF is allowed.
  - 2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Thermoset decorative panels.
  - 3. Drawer Bottoms: Thermoset decorative panels.
- H. Concealed Backs of Panels with Exposed Plastic Laminate Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate, Grade BKL.
- I. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. As indicated by laminate manufacturer's designations. See Interior Finish Schedule.
- J. Provide dust panels of 1/4-inch plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers, unless located directly under tops.

## **2.02 LAMINATE MATERIALS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Formica Corporation; \_\_\_\_: [www.formica.com/#sle](http://www.formica.com/#sle).
  - 2. Panolam Industries International, IncNevamar; \_\_\_\_: [www.nevamar.com/#sle](http://www.nevamar.com/#sle).
  - 3. Wilsonart; \_\_\_\_: [www.wilsonart.com/#sle](http://www.wilsonart.com/#sle).

## **2.03 COUNTERTOPS**

- A. Grade: Premium.
- B. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. As indicated by manufacturer's designations. See Interior Finish Schedule.
- C. Core Material: 3/4" MDO plywood top layer glued and screwed to 3/4" A/C plywood base for bonding of stainless steel sheet.

## **2.04 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Adhesive: Type recommended by fabricator to suit application.
- B. Plastic Edge Banding: Extruded 3 mm thick, ABS, convex shaped; smooth finish; self locking serrated tongue; of width to match component thickness.
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
  - 2. Use at all door, drawer & shelf edges..
- C. Fasteners: Size and type to suit application.
- D. Bolts, Nuts, Washers, Lags, Pins, and Screws: Of size and type to suit application; galvanized or chrome-plated finish in concealed locations and stainless steel or chrome-plated finish in exposed locations.

## **2.05 HARDWARE**

- A. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets.
- B. Hardware: BHMA A156.9, types as indicated for quality grade specified.
- C. Adjustable Shelf Supports: Standard side-mounted system using recessed metal shelf standards or multiple holes for pin supports and coordinated self rests, polished chrome finish, for nominal 1 inch spacing adjustments. BHMA A156.9, B04071 with shelf rests B0408.
- D. Drawer and Door Pulls: "U" shaped wire pull, steel with chrome finish, 4 inch centers.

**06 4100**  
**ARCHITECTURAL WOOD CASEWORK**

1. Back-mounted, solid metal, 5-inches long, 5/16-inch diameter.
- E. Cabinet Locks: Keyed cylinder, two keys per lock, master keyed, steel with chrome finish.
  1. Door Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07121.
  2. Drawer Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07041.
    - a. Product: 100 DR manufactured by Olympus.
    - b. All cabinet & drawer locks are to be keyed the same.
- F. Catches: Magnetic. BHMA A156.9, B03141.
- G. Drawer Slides: BHMA A156.9, B05091.
  1. Heavy Duty (Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200 at file drawers): Side mounted; full-extension type; zinc-plated steel ball-bearing slides.
  2. Keyboard Slides: Grade 1HD-100; for computer keyboard shelves.
- H. Hinges: Butt type, BHMA No. A156.9, B04071, steel with polished finish.
  1. 2-3/4-inch, 5-knuckle steel hinges made from 0.095-inch thick metal.
  2. Semi-concealed Hinges for Overlay Doors.
- I. Countertop Support Bracket:
  1. Rakks; EH Counter Supports; EH-1824, for use at typical countertops.
  2. Centerline Brackets; Forward L Hidden Counter Support Bracket, for use at Resin Panel decorative countertops.
- J. Door Casement Adjuster, provide at doors that are in conflict with items that impede 180 degree openings. Ives #71.
- K. Wall Bumper: Provide at cabinet doors that are in conflict with items that impede 180 degree openings. Ives #404.
- L. Grommets for Cable Passage through Countertops: 2-inch OD, molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage, color to be selected.
  1. Location: To be installed minimum of 5-feet on center, locations to be determined after casework installation and coordinated with Owner.
- M. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.
  1. Satin Stainless Steel: BHMA 630.
- N. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in BHMA A156.9.

## **2.06 FABRICATION**

- A. Assembly: Shop assemble cabinets for delivery to site in units easily handled and to permit passage through building openings.
  1. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
  2. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times woodwork fabrication will be complete.
  3. Trial fit assemblies at fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements indicated on Shop Drawings before disassembling for shipment.
- B. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.
  1. Seal edges of openings in countertops with a coat of varnish.
- C. Fabricate woodwork to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:

**06 4100**  
**ARCHITECTURAL WOOD CASEWORK**

1. Corners of Cabinets and Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members 3/4 Inch Thick or Less: 1/16 inch.
2. Edges of Rails and Similar Members More Than 3/4 Inch Thick: 1/8 inch.
3. Corners of Cabinets and Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members and Rails: 1/16 inch.

D. Wood Moisture Content: Comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for wood moisture content in relation to ambient relative humidity during fabrication and in installation areas.

E. Edging: Fit shelves, doors, and exposed edges with specified edging. Do not use more than one piece for any single length.

F. Fitting: When necessary to cut and fit on site, provide materials with ample allowance for cutting. Provide matching trim for scribing and site cutting.

G. Plastic Laminate: Apply plastic laminate finish in full uninterrupted sheets consistent with manufactured sizes. Fit corners and joints hairline; secure with concealed fasteners. Slightly bevel arises. Locate counter butt joints minimum 2 feet from sink cut-outs.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **4.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify adequacy of backing and support framing.
- B. Verify location and sizes of utility rough-in associated with work of this section.

#### **4.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Before installation, condition woodwork to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.
- B. Before installing architectural woodwork, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and backpriming.

#### **4.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Set and secure custom cabinets in place, assuring that they are rigid, plumb, and level.
- B. Use fixture attachments in concealed locations for wall mounted components.
- C. Use concealed joint fasteners to align and secure adjoining cabinet units.
- D. Carefully scribe casework abutting other components, with maximum gaps of 1/32 inch. Do not use additional overlay trim for this purpose.
- E. Secure cabinets to floor using appropriate angles and anchorages.
- F. Countersink anchorage devices at exposed locations. Conceal with solid wood plugs of species to match surrounding wood; finish flush with surrounding surfaces.
- G. Countertops: Anchor securely by screwing through corner blocks of base cabinets or other supports into underside of countertop.
  1. Install countertops with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
  2. Secure backsplashes to walls with adhesive.
  3. Caulk space between backsplash and wall with sealant specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
  4. Grommets: Locate where directed by Owner.
- H. Touch up finishing work specified in this Section after installation of woodwork. Fill nail holes with matching filler where exposed.

#### **4.04 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust installed work.
- B. Adjust moving or operating parts to function smoothly and correctly.

**06 4100**  
**ARCHITECTURAL WOOD CASEWORK**

- C. Repair damaged and defective woodwork, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

**4.05 CLEANING**

- A. Clean casework, counters, shelves, hardware, fittings, and fixtures. Touch up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.
- B. Clean, lubricate and adjust hardware.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 07 2100**  
**THERMAL INSULATION**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Batt insulation and vapor retarder in exterior wall construction.
- B. Vapor Retarders.
- C. Building Insulation for hollow metal frames.
- D. Batt insulation for filling crevices in exterior wall and roof.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Supporting construction for batt insulation.
- B. Section 07 2500 - Weather Barriers: Separate air barrier and vapor retarder materials.
- C. Section 07 5200 - Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing: Insulation specified as part of roofing system.
- D. Section 09 2116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Acoustic insulation inside walls and partitions.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C578 - Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation; 2015a.
- B. ASTM C665 - Standard Specification for Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Light Frame Construction and Manufactured Housing; 2012.
- C. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2015a.
- D. NFPA 285 - Standard Fire Test Method for Evaluation of Fire Propagation Characteristics of Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components; 2012.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on product characteristics, performance criteria, and product limitations for each type of product indicated.

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of building insulation through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide insulation and related materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: ASTM E 84.
  - 2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: ASTM E 119.
  - 3. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E 136.
- C. Recycled Content: Provide glass-fiber insulation with recycled content so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.

**1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install insulation adhesives when temperature or weather conditions are detrimental to successful installation.

**07 2100**  
**THERMAL INSULATION**

**1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Protect plastic insulation as follows:
  - 1. Do not expose to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
  - 2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver plastic insulating materials to Project site before installation time.
  - 3. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
  - 2. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

**2.02 APPLICATIONS**

**2.03 FOAM BOARD INSULATION MATERIALS**

**2.04 BATT INSULATION MATERIALS**

- A. Where batt insulation is indicated, either glass fiber or mineral fiber batt insulation may be used, at Contractor's option.
- B. Glass Fiber Batt Insulation: Flexible preformed batt or blanket, complying with ASTM C665; friction fit.
  - 1. Flame Spread Index: 75 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 2. Smoke Developed Index: 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 3. Combustibility: Non-combustible, when tested in accordance with ASTM E136, except for facing, if any.
  - 4. Formaldehyde Content: Zero.
  - 5. Thermal Resistance:
    - a. Walls: R-19.
  - 6. Manufacturers:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.certainteed.com/#sle](http://www.certainteed.com/#sle).
    - b. Johns Manville; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.jm.com/#sle](http://www.jm.com/#sle).
    - c. Knauf Fiber Glass.
    - d. Owens Corning Corporation; EcoTouch PINK FIBERGLAS Insulation: [www.ocbuildingspec.com/#sle](http://www.ocbuildingspec.com/#sle).
  - 7. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.
- C. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: Mineral Fiber Batt Insulation: Flexible or semi-rigid preformed batt or blanket, complying with ASTM C665; friction fit; unfaced flame spread index of 0 (zero) when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 1. Smoke Developed Index: 0 (zero), when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 2. Thickness: 3 and 6 inch.
  - 3. Extent of work: Provide in all interior walls calling for insulation.
  - 4. Manufacturers:
    - a. Johns Manville; MinWool Sound Attenuation Fire Batts: [www.jm.com/#sle](http://www.jm.com/#sle).
    - b. Thermafiber, Inc; SAFB: [www.thermafiber.com/#sle](http://www.thermafiber.com/#sle).
    - c. ROXUL, Inc; ComfortBatt: [www.roxul.com/#sle](http://www.roxul.com/#sle).

**07 2100**  
**THERMAL INSULATION**

- d. ROXUL, Inc; Roxul AFB: [www.roxul.com/#sle](http://www.roxul.com/#sle).
- e. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

## **2.05 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: ASTM D 4397, 6 mils thick, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm.
  - 1. Location: Cover all exterior wall insulation beneath gypsum board.
- B. Fire-Retardant, Reinforced-Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: 2 outer layers of polyethylene film laminated to an inner reinforcing layer consisting of either nonwoven grid of nylon cord or polyester scrim and weighing not less than 22 lb/1000 sq. ft., with maximum permeance rating of 0.1317 perm and with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of not more than 5 and 60, respectively.
  - 1. Available Products:
    - a. Raven Industries Inc.; DURA-SKRIM 2FR.
    - b. Reef Industries, Inc.; Griffolyne T-55 FR.
  - 2. Location: Cover all insulation on exterior walls exposed to open.
- C. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
- D. Adhesive for Vapor Retarders: Product recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer and with demonstrated capability to bond vapor retarders securely to substrates indicated.
- E. Insulation Fasteners: Provide manufacturer's standard J-Hooks or Drop-Thru Nails capable of attaching wire to hold up floor sound batt insulation.
- F. Acoustical Putty Pads: 1/8 inch x 7-1/4 inch x 7-1/4 inch, malleable, non-hardening, permanently resilient, putty pads. Install at all electrical and low voltage outlets and penetrations in interior walls scheduled to have insulation.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that substrate, adjacent materials, and insulation materials are dry and that substrates are ready to receive insulation.
- B. Verify substrate surfaces are flat, free of honeycomb, fins, irregularities, or materials or substances that may impede adhesive bond.
- C. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements of Sections in which substrates and related work are specified and for other conditions affecting performance.
  - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation or vapor retarders, including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders or of interfering with insulation attachment.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and application indicated.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed at any time to ice, rain, and snow.
- C. Extend insulation in thickness indicated to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Water-Piping Coordination: If water piping is located within insulated exterior walls, coordinate location of piping to ensure that it is placed on warm side of insulation and insulation encapsulates piping.

**07 2100**  
**THERMAL INSULATION**

- E. For preformed insulating units, provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

**3.04 BOARD INSTALLATION AT PERIMETER FOUNDATION WALL**

- A. Place insulation against concrete foundation walls per drawings.
- B. Cut and fit insulation tightly to protrusions or interruptions to the insulation plane.
- C. Prevent insulation from being displaced or damaged while placing fill.

**3.05 INSTALLATION OF GENERAL BUILDING INSULATION**

- A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.
- B. Thermal Insulation and vapor retarder shall form a complete thermal envelope of the building, i.e. walls roofs, soffits, etc.
- C. Seal joints between foam-plastic insulation units by applying adhesive, mastic, or sealant to edges of each unit to form a tight seal as units are shoved into place. Fill voids in completed installation with adhesive, mastic, or sealant as recommended by insulation manufacturer.
- D. Install mineral-fiber insulation in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
  1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill cavity, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
  2. Place insulation in wall cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members. Support blankets mechanically where batts are not inside a sandwiched wall of sheathing.
  3. Roof insulation shall be mechanical supported to structural members complying with manufacturer's written instructions. Provide required air space as indicated.
  4. Maintain 3-inch clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures.
  5. For wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.

**3.06 BATT INSTALLATION**

- A. Install insulation and vapor retarder in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install in exterior wall spaces without gaps or voids. Do not compress insulation.
- C. Trim insulation neatly to fit spaces. Insulate miscellaneous gaps and voids.
- D. Fit insulation tightly in cavities and tightly to exterior side of mechanical and electrical services within the plane of the insulation.

**3.07 SOUND-ATTENUATION INSULATION**

- A. Install sound-attenuation blankets at sound walls and other noted locations.
- B. Blankets in walls shall be installed in continuous manner behind all electrical switches, and conduit, and all mechanical and plumbing pipes. Fill all vacant voids in stud spaces.
- C. Wall blankets shall be friction fit between framing members. If insulation is not tight, mechanically fasten blankets, blankets shall not sag. Support blankets mechanically where batts are not inside a sandwiched wall of sheathing.
  1. Thickness: Sound walls – 3 inches thick.

**07 2100**  
**THERMAL INSULATION**

**3.08 MISCELLANEOUS INSTALLATIONS**

- A. Putty Pad Installation: Provide installation of acoustic Putty Pads around all electrical and low voltage boxes in scheduled Sound Walls prior to installation of drywall. Pads will be hand-formed around boxes, and around the conduit. Fold and press pads into boxes.

**3.09 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDERS**

- A. General: Extend vapor retarder to extremities of areas to be protected from vapor transmission. Secure in place with adhesives or other anchorage system as indicated. Extend vapor retarder to cover miscellaneous voids in insulated substrates, including those filled with loose-fiber insulation.
- B. Seal vertical joints in vapor retarders over framing by lapping not less than two wall studs. Fasten vapor retarders to wood framing at top, end, and bottom edges; at perimeter of wall openings; and at lap joints. Space fasteners 16 inches o.c.
- C. Before installing vapor retarder, apply urethane sealant to flanges of metal framing including runner tracks, metal studs, and framing around door and window openings. Seal overlapping joints in vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape according to vapor-retarder manufacturer's written instructions. Seal butt joints with vapor-retarder tape. Locate all joints over framing members or other solid substrates.
- D. Firmly attach vapor retarders to metal framing and solid substrates with vapor-retarder fasteners as recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.
- E. Seal joints caused by pipes, conduits, electrical boxes, and similar items penetrating vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape to create an airtight seal between penetrating objects and vapor retarder.
- F. At all window and door openings, vapor retarder shall extend over the weather resistive barriers and sealed or taped to the barrier.
- G. Repair tears or punctures in vapor retarders immediately before concealment by other work. Cover with vapor-retarder tape or another layer of vapor retarder.

**3.10 HOLLOW METAL FRAME INSTALLATION**

- A. At all hollow metal frames, fill the void of the frame complete after frame is installed in the wall framing. Door frames are scheduled to have half of the frame filled with drywall setting compound prior to installation. The window/relight frames are not scheduled to receive drywall compound and will require complete insulation fill after installation.

**3.11 PROTECTION**

- A. Do not permit installed insulation to be damaged prior to its concealment.
- B. Protect installed insulation and vapor retarders from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 07 2500**  
**WEATHER BARRIERS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Weather-Resistive Barrier: Under exterior wall cladding, over sheathing or other substrate; not air tight or vapor retardant.
- B. Flexible flashing at openings in sheathing.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Water-resistive barrier under exterior cladding.
- B. Section 07 2100 - Thermal Insulation: Vapor retarder installed in conjunction with batt insulation.
- C. Section 07 6200 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Metal flashings installed in conjunction with weather barriers.
- D. Section 07 9200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing building expansion joints.

**1.04 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Water-Resistive Barrier: Water-shedding barrier made of material that is moisture resistant, to the degree specified, intended to be installed to shed water without sealed seams.

**1.05 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM D1970/D1970M - Standard Specification for Self-Adhering Polymer Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Used as Steep Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection; 2015a.
- B. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2015a.
- C. ASTM E96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials; 2014.
- D. ASTM E2178 - Standard Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials; 2013.
- E. ICC-ES AC38 - Acceptance Criteria for Water-Resistive Barriers; ICC Evaluation Service, Inc; 2013.

**1.06 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on material characteristics.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate preparation.

**1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company accredited and certified under the Air Barrier Association of America (ABAA) Quality Assurance Program (QAP).
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Independent firm specializing in performing testing and inspections of the type specified in this section.

**1.08 MOCK-UP**

- A. Install all components of the weather barrier system on building mock-up per manufacturer's recommendations.

**1.09 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain temperature and humidity recommended by the materials manufacturers before, during and after installation.

**07 2500**  
**WEATHER BARRIERS**

B. Environmental Limitations: Apply air barrier within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by air barrier manufacturer. Protect substrates from environmental conditions that affect performance of air barrier. Do not apply air barrier to a damp or wet substrate or during snow, rain, fog, or mist.

**1.10 WARRANTY**

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer and Applicator agree(s) to repair or replace materials that fail to maintain water intrusion from the window and building wrap.

1. Warranty Period: Ten years from date of Substantial Completion.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 AIR/WEATHER BARRIER MATERIALS (WATER VAPOR PERMEABLE AND WATER-RESISTIVE)**

A. Weather Resistive Barrier Sheet, Mechanically Fastened:

1. Air Permeance: 0.004 cubic feet per minute per square foot, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178.
2. Water Vapor Permeance: 5 perms, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M Procedure A (desiccant procedure).
3. Ultraviolet and Weathering Resistance: Approved in writing by manufacturer for minimum of 180 days weather exposure.
4. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index of 25 or less, and smoke developed index of 50 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
5. Seam and Perimeter Tape: Polyethylene self adhering type, mesh reinforced, 2 inches wide, compatible with sheet material; unless otherwise specified.
6. Products:
  - a. DuPont Building Innovations; Tyvek Commercial Wrap D with FlexWrap NF, StraightFlash, StraightFlash VF, and Tyvek Wrap Caps: [www.dupont.com](http://www.dupont.com).
  - b. Kingspan Insulation LLC; GreenGuard RainDrop Building Wrap: [www.trustgreenguard.com](http://www.trustgreenguard.com).

**2.02 ACCESSORIES**

A. Sealants, Tapes, and Accessories for Sealing Weather Barrier and Sealing Weather Barrier to Adjacent Substrates: As specified or as recommended by weather barrier manufacturer.

B. Flexible Flashing: Self-adhesive sheet flashing complying with ASTM D1970/D1970M, except slip resistance requirement is waived if not installed on a roof.

1. Flexible Fenestration Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film.
2. Products:
  - a. DuPont Building Innovations; FlexWrap NF: [www.dupont.com/#sle](http://www.dupont.com/#sle).
  - b. Pactiv Inc.; GreenGuard Flashing.\_\_\_\_\_.

C. Self-Adhering Membrane Flashing: DuPont Tyvek Flashing Tape.

D. Primer: Liquid waterborne primer recommended for substrate by manufacturer of air barrier material.

E. Counterflashing Strip: Modified bituminous, 40-mil thick, self-adhering sheet consisting of 32 mils of rubberized asphalt laminated to an 8-mil thick, crosslaminated polyethylene film with release liner backing.

F. Joint Reinforcing Strip: Air barrier manufacturer's glass-fiber-mesh tape.

G. Substrate Patching Membrane: Manufacturer's standard trowel-grade substrate filler.

H. Adhesive and Tape: Air barrier manufacturer's standard adhesive and pressure-sensitive adhesive tape.

**07 2500**  
**WEATHER BARRIERS**

- I. Sprayed Polyurethane Foam Sealant: 1- or 2-component, foamed-in-place, polyurethane foam sealant, 1.5 to 2.0 lb/cu. ft density; flame spread index of 25 or less according to ASTM E 162; with primer and noncorrosive substrate cleaner recommended by foam sealant manufacturer.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that surfaces and conditions are ready to accept the work of this section.
- B. A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
  1. Verify that substrates are sound and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar, or other contaminants.
  2. Verify that masonry joints are flush and completely filled with mortar.
  3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

**3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Remove projections, protruding fasteners, and loose or foreign matter that might interfere with proper installation.
- B. Clean and prime substrate surfaces to receive adhesives in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Mask off adjoining surfaces not covered by air barrier to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
- D. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
- E. Remove excess mortar from masonry ties, shelf angles, and other obstructions.
- F. At changes in substrate plane, apply sealant or termination mastic beads at sharp corners and edges to form a smooth transition from one plane to another.

**3.03 JOINT TREATMENT**

- A. Concrete and Masonry: Prepare, treat, rout, and fill joints and cracks in substrate according to ASTM C 1193 and air barrier manufacturer's written instructions. Remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks complying with ASTM D 4258 before coating surfaces.
  1. Prime substrate and apply a single thickness of preparation coat strip extending a minimum of 3 inches along each side of joints and cracks. Apply a double thickness of air barrier membrane and embed a joint reinforcing strip in preparation coat.

**3.04 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Mechanically Fastened Sheets - On Exterior:
  1. Install sheets shingle-fashion to shed water, with seams generally horizontal.
  2. Overlap seams as recommended by manufacturer but at least 6 inches.
  3. Overlap at outside and inside corners as recommended by manufacturer but at least 12 inches.
  4. For applications specified to be air tight, seal seams, laps, penetrations, tears, and cuts with self-adhesive tape; use only large-headed, gasketed fasteners recommended by the manufacturer.
  5. Install air barrier and vapor retarder UNDER jamb flashings.
  6. Install head flashings under weather barrier.
  7. At openings to be filled with frames having nailing flanges, wrap excess sheet into opening; at head, seal sheet over flange and flashing.
- C. Coatings:
  1. Prepare substrate in manner recommended by coating manufacturer; treat joints in substrate and between dissimilar materials as recommended by manufacturer.
  2. Use flashing to seal to adjacent construction and to bridge joints.

**07 2500**  
**WEATHER BARRIERS**

3. Apply air barrier membrane to form a seal with strips and transition strips and to achieve a continuous air barrier according to air barrier manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Apply air barrier membrane within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges.
5. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air barrier sheet in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
6. Apply a continuous unbroken air barrier to substrates according to the following minimum thickness. Apply membrane in full contact around protrusions such as masonry ties.
  - a. Vapor-Retarding Membrane Air Barrier: 40-mil dry film thickness.
7. Do not cover air barrier until it has been tested and inspected by Owner's testing agency.
8. Correct deficiencies in or remove air barrier that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates and reapply air barrier components.

D. Openings and Penetrations in Exterior Weather Barriers:

1. Install flashing over sills, covering entire sill frame member, extending at least 5 inches onto weather barrier and at least 6 inches up jambs; mechanically fasten stretched edges.
2. At openings to be filled with frames having nailing flanges, seal head and jamb flanges using a continuous bead of sealant compressed by flange and cover flanges with at least 4 inches wide; do not seal sill flange.
3. At openings to be filled with non-flanged frames, seal weather barrier to all sides of opening framing, using flashing at least 9 inches wide, covering entire depth of framing.
4. At head of openings, install flashing under weather barrier extending at least 2 inches beyond face of jambs; seal weather barrier to flashing.
5. At interior face of openings, seal gap between window/door frame and rough framing, using joint sealant over backer rod.
6. Service and Other Penetrations: Form flashing around penetrating item and seal to weather barrier surface.

### **3.05 FLEXIBLE FENESTRATION FLASHING INSTALLATION**

- A. Apply flexible flashing where indicated to comply with manufacturers written instructions.
  1. Prime substrates as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
  2. Lap seams and junctures with other materials at least 4 inches, except that at flashing flanges of other construction, laps need not exceed flange width.
  3. Lap flashing over weather-resistant building paper at bottom and sides of openings.
  4. Lap weather-resistant building paper over flashing at heads of openings.
  5. After flashing has been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber or metal roller to ensure that flashing is completely adhered to substrates.
  6. At openings of storefront where end-dams are detailed, provide additional layer of flexible flashing on the jamb wrapped into the dam.
  7. At openings of nail flange windows, add additional layer of flexible flashing to lap up behind window leg.
  8. Apply at all openings.

### **3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. See Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Coordination of ABAA Tests and Inspections:
  1. Provide testing and inspection required by ABAA QAP.
  2. Notify ABAA in writing of schedule for air barrier work, and allow adequate time for testing and inspection.
  3. Cooperate with ABAA testing agency.
  4. Allow access to air barrier work areas and staging.
  5. Do not cover air barrier work until tested, inspected, and accepted.
- C. Do not cover installed weather barriers until required inspections have been completed.

**07 2500**  
**WEATHER BARRIERS**

- D. Obtain approval of installation procedures by the weather barrier manufacturer based on a mock-up installed in place, prior to proceeding with remainder of installation.
- E. Take digital photographs of each portion of the installation prior to covering up.
- F. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- G. Inspections: Air barrier materials and installation are subject to inspection for compliance with requirements. Inspections may include the following:
  - 1. Continuity of air barrier system has been achieved throughout the building envelope with no gaps or holes.
  - 2. Continuous structural support of air barrier system has been provided.
  - 3. Masonry and concrete surfaces are smooth, clean and free of cavities, protrusions, and mortar droppings.
  - 4. Site conditions for application temperature and dryness of substrates have been maintained.
  - 5. Maximum exposure time of materials to UV deterioration has not been exceeded.
  - 6. Surfaces have been primed, if applicable.
  - 7. Laps in strips and transition strips have complied with minimum requirements and have been shingled in the correct direction (or mastic has been applied on exposed edges), with no fishmouths.
  - 8. Termination mastic has been applied on cut edges.
  - 9. Strips and transition strips have been firmly adhered to substrate.
  - 10. Compatible materials have been used.
  - 11. Transitions at changes in direction and structural support at gaps have been provided.
  - 12. Connections between assemblies (membrane and sealants) have complied with requirements for cleanliness, preparation and priming of surfaces, structural support, integrity, and continuity of seal.
  - 13. All penetrations have been sealed.
- H. Tests: Testing to be performed will be determined by Owner's testing agency from among the following tests:
  - 1. Quantitative Air Leakage Testing: Testing not to exceed the test pressure differential, positive and negative, indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article for air barrier assembly air leakage according to ASTM E 283.
  - I. Remove and replace deficient air barrier components and retest as specified above.

### **3.07 PROTECTION**

- A. Do not leave materials exposed to weather longer than recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Protect air barrier system from damage during application and remainder of construction period, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Protect air barrier from exposure to UV light and harmful weather exposure as required by manufacturer. Remove and replace air barrier exposed for more than 60 days.
  - 2. Protect air barrier from contact with creosote, uncured coal-tar products, TPO, EPDM, flexible PVC membranes, and sealants not approved by air barrier manufacturer
- C. Clean spills, stains, and soiling from construction that would be exposed in the completed work using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.
- D. Remove masking materials after installation.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 07 4213**  
**METAL WALL PANELS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Manufactured metal panels for walls, with accessory components.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Wall panel substrate.
- B. Section 07 2100 - Thermal Insulation.
- C. Section 07 2500 - Weather Barriers: Weather barrier under wall panels.
- D. Section 07 6200 - Sheet Metal Flashing & Trim: Flashing & trim that is not part of the metal wall panel assemblies.
- E. Section 07 9200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints between metal wall panel system and adjacent construction.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2015.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of wall panel and accessory.
- C. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of metal wall panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details. Distinguish between factory-, shop- and field-assembled work.
- D. Samples: Submit two samples of wall panel, 12 inch by 12 inch in size illustrating finish color, sheen, and texture.
- E. Maintenance Data: For metal wall panels to include in maintenance manuals.
- F. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of metal wall panel from single source from single manufacturer.
- D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, metal wall panel Installer, metal wall panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal wall panels, including installers of doors, windows, and louvers.
  2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  3. Review methods and procedures related to metal wall panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
  4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
  5. Review flashings, special siding details, wall penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that will affect metal wall panels.

**07 4213**  
**METAL WALL PANELS**

6. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
7. Review temporary protection requirements for metal wall panel assembly during and after installation.
8. Review wall panel observation and repair procedures after metal wall panel installation.

**1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver components, sheets, metal wall panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal wall panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal wall panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal wall panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal wall panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal wall panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Protect panels from accelerated weathering by removing or venting sheet plastic shipping wrap.
- E. Store prefinished material off ground and protected from weather. Prevent twisting, bending, or abrasion, and provide ventilation to stored materials. Slope metal sheets to ensure drainage.
- F. Prevent contact with materials that may cause discoloration or staining of products.
- G. Retain strippable protective covering on metal wall panel for period of metal wall panel installation.

**1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal wall panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify locations of structural members and wall opening dimensions by field measurements before metal wall panel fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

**1.08 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate metal wall panel assemblies with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, and construction of studs, soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

**1.09 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal wall panel assemblies that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
    - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
- C. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal wall panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 PANEL MATERIALS

- A. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Restricted flatness steel sheet metallic coated by the hot-dip process and prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
  - 1. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation; structural quality.
  - 2. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
  - 3. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
    - a. 3-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Panel Sealants:
  - 1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane, polysulfide, or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal wall panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal wall panel manufacturer.
  - 3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C 1311.

### 2.02 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FRAMING

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Framing, General: ASTM C 645, cold-formed metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180) hot-dip galvanized or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners for Miscellaneous Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten miscellaneous metal framing members to substrates.

### 2.03 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws, bolts, nuts, self-locking rivets and bolts, end-welded studs, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal wall panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM, or neoprene sealing washers.

### 2.04 FLUSH PROFILE CONCEALED-FASTENER METAL WALL PANELS

- A. General: Provide factory-formed metal wall panels designed to be field assembled by mechanically attaching through panel to supports using fasteners in side laps and placing subsequent panels into the formed bend and attaching. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
  - 1. Product: Match existing panel and trim, by manufacturer and color. Verify extra stock materials with Owner prior to ordering new material.

### 2.05 ACCESSORIES

- A. Wall Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete metal wall panel assembly including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal wall panels, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and rakes, fabricated of same metal as metal wall panels. Interior sides (non-prepainted) of closures shall be painted with color to match that of metal siding.
  - 2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
  - 3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- thick, flexible closure strips; cut or

**07 4213**  
**METAL WALL PANELS**

premolded to match metal wall panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.

- 4. Furring: 22 gauge 7/8-inch deep, Hat Channels at 2-feet on center and run horizontally, unless noted otherwise. Provide vented furring at walls, where installed horizontally.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Formed from 22 gauge thickness, aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet prepainted with coil coating. Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, endwalls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal wall panels. Interior sides (non-prepainted) of closures shall be painted with color to match that of metal siding.
  - 1. Provide factory drilled, factory finished weep holes for all C-Closeure trim located at the bottoms of walls, etc. where water can collect and drainage is required.

## **2.06 FABRICATION**

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal wall panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. Fabricate metal panels in a manner that eliminates condensation on interior side of panel and with joints between panels designed to form weathertight seals.
- C. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- D. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a tight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that will minimize noise from movements within panel assembly.
- E. Sheet Metal Accessories: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to the design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
  - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - 2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
  - 3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
  - 4. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards.
  - 5. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
    - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

## **2.07 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal wall panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of work.
- B. Verify that building framing members are ready to receive panels.
- C. Examine wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
- D. Verify that weather barrier has been installed over substrate completely and correctly.
- E. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of work.
- F. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal wall panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal wall panels before metal wall panel installation.
- G. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Install subgirts perpendicular to panel length, securely fastened to substrates and shimmed and leveled to uniform plane. Space at intervals indicated.

### 3.03 METAL WALL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal wall panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated on Drawings. Install panels vertical unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal wall panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
  1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal wall panels.
  2. Flash and seal metal wall panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until weather barrier and flashings that will be concealed by metal wall panels are installed.
  3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
  4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
  5. Install flashing and trim as metal wall panel work proceeds.
  6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
  7. Apply elastomeric sealant continuously between metal base channel (sill angle) and concrete and elsewhere as indicated or, if not indicated, as necessary for waterproofing.
  8. Align bottom of metal wall panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
  9. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe and conduit penetrating exterior walls.
- B. Fasteners:
  1. Sheet Metal Wall Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
- D. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weathertight performance of metal wall panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
  1. Seal metal wall panel end laps with double beads of tape or sealant, full width of panel. Seal side joints where recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
  2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

### 3.04 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
  - 1. Install components required for a complete metal wall panel assembly including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
  - 1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
  - 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

### 3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Contractor shall engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. If retaining first paragraph below, indicate test areas on Drawings.
- C. Water Penetration: Test areas of installed system indicated on Drawings for compliance with system performance requirements according to ASTM E 1105 at minimum differential pressure of 20 percent of inward-acting, wind-load design pressure as defined by SEI/ASCE 7, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- D. Retain first paragraph below for less expensive test to check system's resistance to water penetration. Revise indicated test-area requirements to suit Project.
- E. Water-Spray Test: After completing the installation of 75-foot- by-2-story minimum area of metal wall panel assembly, test assembly for water penetration according to AAMA 501.2 in a 2-bay area directed by Architect.
- F. Retain first paragraph below to require a factory-authorized service representative to perform inspections and tests.
- G. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect and test completed metal wall panel installation, including accessories.
- H. Remove and replace metal wall panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- I. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

### 3.06 CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal wall panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal wall panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. Remove site cuttings from finish surfaces.
- C. After metal wall panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- D. Clean and wash prefinished surfaces with mild soap and water; rinse with clean water.

**07 4213  
METAL WALL PANELS**

E. Replace metal wall panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 07 6200**  
**SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Fabricated sheet metal items, including flashings and counterflashings.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Wood nailers for sheet metal work.
- B. Section 07 4213- Metal Wall & Soffit Panels.
- C. Section 07 9200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing non-lap joints between sheet metal fabrications and adjacent construction.
- D. Section 08 4313 - Aluminum Framed Storefronts: Storefront Windows.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AAMA 2605 - Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for Superior Performing Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels; 2013.
- B. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2015.
- C. ASTM A666 - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar; 2015.
- D. ASTM B32 - Standard Specification for Solder Metal; 2008 (Reapproved 2014).
- E. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants; 2014.
- F. CDA A4050 - Copper in Architecture - Handbook; current edition.
- G. SMACNA (ASMM) - Architectural Sheet Metal Manual; 2012.

**1.05 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies as indicated shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
- B. Fabricate and install roof edge flashing and copings capable of resisting the following forces according to recommendations in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49:
  - 1. Wind Zone 2: For velocity pressures of 31 to 45 lbf/sq. ft.: 90-lbf/sq. ft. perimeter uplift force, 120-lbf/sq. ft. corner uplift force, and 45-lbf/sq. ft. outward force.
- C. Thermal Movements: Provide sheet metal flashing and trim that allows for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
  - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

**1.06 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each manufactured product and accessory.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate material profile, jointing pattern, jointing details, fastening methods, flashings, terminations, and installation details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work. Include the following:
  - 1. Identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.

**07 6200**  
**SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM**

2. Details for forming sheet metal flashing and trim, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
3. Details for joining, supporting, and securing sheet metal flashing and trim, including layout of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
4. Details of termination points and assemblies, including fixed points.
5. Details of expansion joints and expansion-joint covers, including showing direction of expansion and contraction.
6. Details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, and counterflashings as applicable.
7. Details of special conditions.
8. Details of connections to adjoining work.
9. Detail formed flashing and trim at a scale of not less than 3 inches per 12 inches.

D. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing, trim, and accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

E. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

**1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Perform work in accordance with SMACNA (ASMM) and CDA A4050 requirements and standard details, except as otherwise indicated.
- B. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- C. If SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" is not standard office practice in the area of Project, substitute another standard in first paragraph below such as "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual."
- D. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
  1. Build mockup of typical roof eave, including fascia, fascia trim, counterflashing, etc. approximately 10 feet long, including supporting construction cleats, seams, attachments and accessories.
  2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
- E. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects sheet metal flashing and trim including installers of roofing materials, roof accessories, unit skylights, and roof-mounted equipment.
  2. Review methods and procedures related to sheet metal flashing and trim.
  3. Examine substrate conditions for compliance with requirements, including flatness and attachment to structural members.
  4. Review special roof details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect sheet metal flashing.
  5. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.
  6. No sheet metal work will begin on the building until Architect and Owner have approved the completed mock-up as detailed.

**1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Stack material to prevent twisting, bending, and abrasion, and to provide ventilation. Slope metal sheets to ensure drainage.
- B. Prevent contact with materials that could cause discoloration or staining.

**07 6200**  
**SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM**

- C. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to the extent necessary for the period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.
- D. Unload, store and install sheet metal flashing materials and fabrications in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting and surface damage.

**1.09 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Finish Warranty Period: Twenty (20) years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Contractor's Quality of Work Warranty: Warrant that all sheet metal flashings are installed in accordance with the Contract Documents and will be free from defective quality of Work and or remain watertight and weatherproof with normal usage for a period of 5 years following Final Acceptance.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 SHEET MATERIALS**

- A. Pre-Finished Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M, with G90/Z275 zinc coating; minimum 24 gage (0.0239) inch thick base metal, shop pre-coated with PVDF coating.
  - 1. PVDF (Polyvinylidene Fluoride) Coating: Superior Performance Organic Finish, AAMA 2605; multiple coat, thermally cured fluoropolymer finish system.
  - 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full colors. Colors may be custom colors. Colors to match background colors of scheduled roof and wall panels. See Finish Colors for trim and background colors of metal panels.
- B. Stainless Steel: ASTM A666, Type 304, soft temper, 28 gage (0.0156 inch) thick; smooth No. 4 finish.

**2.02 ACCESSORIES**

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.
  - 1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
    - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating.
    - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
  - 2. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
  - 3. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
  - 4. Fasteners for Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
  - 5. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329 or Series 300 stainless steel.
- C. Primer: Zinc chromate type.
- D. Protective Backing Paint: Zinc molybdate alkyd.
- E. Sealant to be Concealed in Completed Work: Non-curing butyl sealant.

**07 6200**  
**SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM**

- F. Sealant to be Exposed in Completed Work: ASTM C920; elastomeric sealant, 100 percent silicone with minimum movement capability of plus/minus 25 percent and recommended by manufacturer for substrates to be sealed; clear.
- G. Solder: ASTM B32; Sn50 (50/50) type.

### **2.03 FABRICATION**

- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item indicated. Fabricate items at the shop to greatest extent possible.
- B. Form sections true to shape, accurate in size, square, and free from distortion or defects.
- C. Form pieces in longest possible lengths.
- D. Hem exposed edges on underside 1/2 inch; miter and seam corners.
- E. Form material with flat lock seams, except where otherwise indicated. At moving joints, use sealed lapped, bayonet-type or interlocking hooked seams.
- F. Fabricate corners from one piece with minimum 18 inch long legs; seam for rigidity, seal with sealant.
- G. Fabricate vertical faces with bottom edge formed outward 1/4 inch and hemmed to form drip.
- H. Fabricate flashings to allow toe to extend 2 inches over roofing \_\_\_\_\_. Return and brake edges.
- I. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- J. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.
- K. Expansion Provisions: Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
- L. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

### **2.04 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS**

- A. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Fabricate head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings unless shown otherwise. Form head and sill flashing with 1/2 inch-high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:
  1. Pre-Finished Galvanized Steel: 24-Gauge thick.

### **2.05 MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS**

- A. Equipment Support Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
  1. Pre-Finished Galvanized Steel: 22-Gauge thick.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
  2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- B. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Install starter and edge strips, and cleats before starting installation.

**07 6200**  
**SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM**

B. Back paint concealed metal surfaces with protective backing paint to a minimum dry film thickness of 15 mil.

**3.03 INSTALLATION**

A. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.

1. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line and levels indicated. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and sealant.
2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.
3. Space cleats not more than 12 inches apart. Anchor each cleat with two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
4. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks.
5. Install sealant tape where indicated.
6. Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
7. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

B. Secure flashings in place using concealed fasteners. Use exposed fasteners only where permitted.

C. Apply plastic cement compound between metal flashings and felt flashings.

D. Fit flashings tight in place. Make corners square, surfaces true and straight in planes, and lines accurate to profiles.

E. Solder metal joints for full metal surface contact. After soldering, wash metal clean with neutralizing solution and rinse with water.

1. Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter. Pre-tin edges of sheets to be soldered to a width of 1-1/2 inches, except reduce pre-tinning where pre-tinned surface would show in completed Work.
2. Do not solder metallic-coated steel and aluminum sheet.
3. Do not use torches for soldering. Heat surfaces to receive solder and flow solder into joint. Fill joint completely. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.
4. Stainless-Steel Soldering: Tin edges of uncoated sheets using solder recommended for stainless steel and acid flux. Promptly remove acid flux residue from metal after tinning and soldering. Comply with solder manufacturer's recommended methods for cleaning and neutralization.

F. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by SMACNA.

1. Coat back side of uncoated aluminum and stainless-steel sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim will contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
2. Underlayment: Where installing metal flashing directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip sheet or install a course of polyethylene sheet.

G. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently watertight, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.

H. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that will penetrate metal decking not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.

**07 6200**  
**SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM**

- I. Seal joints as shown and as required for watertight construction.
  1. Where sealant-filled joints are used, embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is moderate, between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F.
  2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

**3.04 WALL FLASHING INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture according to SMACNA recommendations and as indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
- B. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Install continuous head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings.

**3.05 MISCELLANEOUS FLASHING INSTALLATION**

- A. Equipment Support Flashing: Coordinate installation of equipment support flashing with installation of roofing and equipment. Weld or seal flashing with elastomeric sealant to equipment support member.

**3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. See Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements, for field inspection requirements.
- B. Inspection will involve surveillance of work during installation to ascertain compliance with specified requirements.

**3.07 ERECTION TOLERANCES**

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
- B. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerances specified in MCA's "Guide Specification for Residential Metal Roofing."

**3.08 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.
- D. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturers written installation instructions. On completion of installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- E. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 07 8400**  
**FIRESTOPPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Firestopping systems.
- B. Firestopping of all joints and penetrations in fire resistance rated and smoke resistant assemblies, whether indicated on drawings or not, and other openings indicated.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 09 2116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Gypsum wallboard fireproofing.
- B. Division 22 Sections specifying piping penetrations.
- C. Division 23 Sections specifying duct penetrations.
- D. Division 26 Sections specifying cable and conduit penetrations.
- E. Division 28 Sections specifying low voltage penetrations.

**1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. General: For penetrations through fire-resistance-rated constructions, including both empty openings and openings containing penetrating items, provide through-penetration firestop systems that are produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated.
- B. Rated Systems: Provide through-penetration firestop systems with the following ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479:
  1. F-Rated Systems: Provide through-penetration firestop systems with F-ratings indicated, but not less than that equaling or exceeding fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
  2. T-Rated Systems: For the following conditions, provide through-penetration firestop systems with T-ratings indicated, as well as F-ratings, where systems protect penetrating items exposed to potential contact with adjacent materials in occupiable floor areas:
    - a. Penetrations located outside wall cavities.
    - b. Penetrations located outside fire-resistance-rated shaft enclosures.
  3. L-Rated Systems: Where through-penetration firestop systems are indicated in smoke barriers, provide through-penetration firestop systems with L-ratings of not more than 3.0 cfm/sq. ft at both ambient temperatures and 400 deg F.
- C. For through-penetration firestop systems exposed to view, traffic, moisture, and physical damage, provide products that, after curing, do not deteriorate when exposed to these conditions both during and after construction.
  1. For piping penetrations for plumbing and wet-pipe sprinkler systems, provide moisture-resistant through-penetration firestop systems.
  2. For floor penetrations with annular spaces exceeding 4 inches in width and exposed to possible loading and traffic, provide firestop systems capable of supporting floor loads involved, either by installing floor plates or by other means.
  3. For penetrations involving insulated piping, provide through-penetration firestop systems not requiring removal of insulation.
- D. For through-penetration firestop systems exposed to view, provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.

## 1.05 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM E119 - Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials; 2015.
- B. ASTM E814 - Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Fire Stops; 2013a.
- C. ASTM E1966 - Standard Test Method for Fire Resistive Joint Systems; 2007 (Reapproved 2011).
- D. ASTM E2307 - Standard Test Method for Determining Fire Resistance of Perimeter Fire Barriers Using Intermediate-Scale, Multi-story Test Apparatus; 2015a.
- E. ASTM E2837 - Standard Test Method for Determining the Fire Resistance of Continuity Head-of-Wall Joint Systems Installed Between Rated Wall Assemblies and Nonrated Horizontal Assemblies; 2013.
- F. ITS (DIR) - Directory of Listed Products; current edition.
- G. FM (AG) - FM Approval Guide; current edition.
- H. UL 2079 - Standard for Tests for Fire Resistance of Building Joint Systems; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL (FRD) - Fire Resistance Directory; current edition.

## 1.06 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Schedule of Firestopping: List each type of penetration, fire rating of the penetrated assembly, and firestopping test or design number.
- C. Product Data: Provide data on product characteristics, performance ratings, and limitations.
- D. Shop Drawings: For each through-penetration firestop system, show each type of construction condition penetrated, relationships to adjoining construction, and type of penetrating item. Include firestop design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency that evidences compliance with requirements for each condition indicated.
  - 1. Submit documentation, including illustrations, from a qualified testing and inspecting agency that is applicable to each through-penetration firestop system configuration for construction and penetrating items.
  - 2. Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular through-penetration firestop condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly.
- E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate preparation and installation instructions.
- F. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- G. Installer Qualification: Submit qualification statements for installing mechanics.

## 1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire Testing: Provide firestopping assemblies of designs that provide the scheduled fire ratings when tested in accordance with methods indicated.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain through-penetration firestop systems, for each kind of penetration and construction condition indicated, through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section and:
- E. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide through-penetration firestop systems that comply with the following requirements and those specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article:

**07 8400**  
**FIRESTOPPING**

1. Firestopping tests are performed by a qualified testing and inspecting agency. A qualified testing and inspecting agency is UL, or another agency performing testing and follow-up inspection services for firestop systems acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Through-penetration firestop systems are identical to those tested per testing standard referenced in "Part 1 Performance Requirements" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
  - a. Through-penetration firestop system products bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
  - b. Through-penetration firestop systems correspond to those indicated by reference to through-penetration firestop system designations listed by the following:
    - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."
    - 2) OPL in its "Directory of Listed Building Products, Materials, & Assemblies."
    - 3) ITS in its "Directory of Listed Products."

F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

**1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver through-penetration firestop system products to Project site in original, unopened containers or packages with intact and legible manufacturers' labels identifying product and manufacturer, date of manufacture, lot number, shelf life if applicable, qualified testing and inspecting agency's classification marking applicable to Project, curing time, and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.
- B. Store and handle materials for through-penetration firestop systems to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, or other causes.

**1.09 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Comply with firestopping manufacturer's recommendations for temperature and conditions during and after installation. Maintain minimum temperature before, during, and for 3 days after installation of materials.
- B. Provide ventilation in areas where solvent-cured materials are being installed.

**1.10 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that through-penetration firestop systems are installed according to specified requirements.
- B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate through-penetration firestop systems.
- C. Notify Owner's inspecting agency at least seven days in advance of through-penetration firestop system installations; confirm dates and times on days preceding each series of installations.
- D. Do not cover up through-penetration firestop system installations that will become concealed behind other construction until each installation has been examined by building inspector, if required by authorities having jurisdiction.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 FIRESTOPPING - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc.; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.adfire.com](http://www.adfire.com).
  2. 3M Fire Protection Products; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.3m.com/firestop](http://www.3m.com/firestop).
  3. Grace, W. R. & Co. - Conn.
  4. Hilti, Inc: [www.us.hilti.com/#sle](http://www.us.hilti.com/#sle).
  5. Johns Manville.
  6. Nelson Firestop Products.
  7. NUCO Inc.
  8. RectorSeal Corporation (The).
  9. Nelson FireStop Products; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.nelsonfirestop.com](http://www.nelsonfirestop.com).

**07 8400**  
**FIRESTOPPING**

10. Specified Technologies, Inc.; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.stifirestop.com](http://www.stifirestop.com).
11. Tremco; Sealant/Weatherproofing Division.
12. USG Corporation.
13. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

B. Compatibility: Provide through-penetration firestop systems that are compatible with one another; with the substrates forming openings; and with the items, if any, penetrating through-penetration firestop systems, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

C. Accessories: Provide components for each through-penetration firestop system that are needed to install fill materials and to comply with Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article. Use only components specified by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for firestop systems indicated. Accessories include, but are not limited to, the following items:

1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials, including the following:
  - a. Slag-/rock-wool-fiber insulation.
  - b. Sealants used in combination with other forming/damming/backing materials to prevent leakage of fill materials in liquid state.
  - c. Fire-rated form board.
  - d. Fillers for sealants.
2. Temporary forming materials.
3. Substrate primers.
4. Collars.
5. Steel sleeves.

D. Fire Ratings: Refer to drawings for required systems and ratings.

## **2.02 FIRESTOPPING ASSEMBLY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Perimeter Fire Containment Firestopping: Use any system that has been tested according to ASTM E2307 to have fire resistance F Rating equal to required fire rating of the floor assembly.
- B. Head-of-Wall Firestopping at Joints Between Non-Rated Floor and Fire-Rated Wall: Use any system that has been tested according to ASTM E2837 to have fire resistance F Rating equal to required fire rating of floor or wall, whichever is greater.
- C. Floor-to-Floor, Wall-to-Wall, and Wall-to-Floor Joints, Except Perimeter, Where Both Are Fire-Rated: Use any system that has been tested according to ASTM E1966 or UL 2079 to have fire resistance F Rating equal to required fire rating of the assembly in which the joint occurs.
- D. Through Penetration Firestopping: Use any system that has been tested according to ASTM E814 to have fire resistance F Rating equal to required fire rating of penetrated assembly.

## **2.03 FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS**

- A. Firestopping: Any material meeting requirements.
  1. Fire Ratings: Use any system that is listed by FM (AG), ITS (DIR), or UL (FRD) and tested in accordance with ASTM E814 or ASTM E119 with F Rating equal to fire rating of penetrated assembly and minimum T Rating Equal to F Rating and in compliance with other specified requirements.

## **2.04 FILL MATERIALS**

- A. Cast-in-Place Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled devices for use in cast-in-place concrete floors and consisting of an outer metallic sleeve lined with an intumescent strip, a radial extended flange attached to one end of the sleeve for fastening to concrete formwork, and a neoprene gasket.
- B. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that after cure do not re-emulsify during exposure to moisture.

**07 8400**  
**FIRESTOPPING**

- C. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.
- D. Intumescent Composite Sheets: Rigid panels consisting of aluminum-foil-faced elastomeric sheet bonded to galvanized steel sheet.
- E. Intumescent Putties: Nonhardening dielectric, water-resistant putties containing no solvents, inorganic fibers, or silicone compounds.
- F. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component intumescent elastomeric sheets with aluminum foil on one side.
- G. Mortars: Prepackaged dry mixes consisting of a blend of inorganic binders, hydraulic cement, fillers, and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a nonshrinking, homogeneous mortar.
- H. Pillows/Bags: Reusable heat-expanding pillows/bags consisting of glass-fiber cloth cases filled with a combination of mineral-fiber, water-insoluble expansion agents, and fire-retardant additives.
- I. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
- J. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below:
  - 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces, and nonsag formulation for openings in vertical and other surfaces requiring a nonslumping, gunnable sealant, unless indicated firestop system limits use to nonsag grade for both opening conditions.
  - 2. Grade for Horizontal Surfaces: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces.
  - 3. Grade for Vertical Surfaces: Nonsag formulation for openings in vertical and other surfaces.

## **2.05 MIXING**

- A. For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with through-penetration firestop system manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify openings are ready to receive the work of this section.
- B. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of work.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean substrate surfaces of dirt, dust, grease, oil, loose material, or other matter that could adversely affect bond of firestopping material.
- B. Remove incompatible materials that could adversely affect bond.
- C. Install backing materials to arrest liquid material leakage.
- D. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with through-penetration firestop systems. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
- E. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

**07 8400**  
**FIRESTOPPING**

- F. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.
- G. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent through-penetration firestop systems from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove smears from firestop system materials. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing firestop system's seal with substrates.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install materials in manner described in fire test report and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, completely closing openings.
- B. Install forming/damming/backing materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
  - 1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of firestop systems.
- C. Install fill materials for firestop systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
  - 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
  - 2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
  - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.
- D. Do not cover installed firestopping until inspected by authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Install labeling required by code.

### **3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Repair or replace penetration firestopping and joints at locations where inspection results indicate firestopping or joints do not meet specified requirements.
- B. Proceed with enclosing through-penetration firestop systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and firestop installations comply with requirements.

### **3.05 CLEANING**

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces of firestopping materials.
- B. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by through-penetration firestop system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.

### **3.06 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from damage by material installation.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that through-penetration firestop systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated through-penetration firestop systems immediately and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

### **3.07 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEM SCHEDULE**

- A. Firestop Systems with No Penetrating Items:
  - 1. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
    - a. Latex sealant.
    - b. Silicone sealant.
    - c. Intumescent putty.

**07 8400**  
**FIRESTOPPING**

- d. Mortar.
- B. Firestop Systems for Metallic Pipes, Conduit, or Tubing:
  - 1. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
    - a. Latex sealant.
    - b. Silicone sealant.
    - c. Intumescent putty.
    - d. Mortar.
- C. Firestop Systems for Nonmetallic Pipe, Conduit, or Tubing:
  - 1. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
    - a. Latex sealant.
    - b. Silicone sealant.
    - c. Intumescent putty.
    - d. Intumescent wrap strips.
    - e. Firestop device.
- D. Firestop Systems for Electrical Cables:
  - 1. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
    - a. Latex sealant.
    - b. Silicone sealant.
    - c. Intumescent putty.
    - d. Silicone foam.
    - e. Pillows/bags.
- E. Firestop Systems for Cable Trays:
  - 1. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
    - a. Latex sealant.
    - b. Intumescent putty.
    - c. Silicone foam.
    - d. Pillows/bags.
    - e. Mortar.
- F. Firestop Systems for Insulated Pipes:
  - 1. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
    - a. Latex sealant.
    - b. Intumescent putty.
    - c. Silicone foam.
    - d. Intumescent wrap strips.
- G. Firestop Systems for Miscellaneous Electrical Penetrants:
  - 1. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
    - a. Latex sealant.
    - b. Intumescent putty.
    - c. Mortar.
- H. Firestop Systems for Miscellaneous Mechanical Penetrants:
  - 1. Type of Fill Materials: One or both of the following:
    - a. Latex sealant.
    - b. Mortar.
- I. Firestop Systems for Groupings of Penetrants:
  - 1. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
    - a. Latex sealant.
    - b. Mortar.
    - c. Intumescent wrap strips.
    - d. Firestop device.
    - e. Intumescent composite sheet.

**07 8400  
FIRESTOPPING**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 07 9200**  
**JOINT SEALANTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Nonsag gunnable joint sealants.
- B. Joint backings and accessories.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 07 2500 - Weather Barriers: Sealants required in conjunction with air barriers and vapor retarders.
- B. Section 07 8400 - Firestopping: Firestopping sealants.
- C. Section 07 9513 - Expansion Joint Cover Assemblies: Sealants forming part of expansion joint cover assemblies.
- D. Section 08 7100 - Door Hardware: Setting exterior door thresholds in sealant.
- E. Section 08 8000 - Glazing: Glazing sealants and accessories.
- F. Section 09 2116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Sealing acoustical and sound-rated walls and ceilings.
- G. Section 09 2216 - Non-Structural Metal Framing: Sealing between framing and adjacent construction in acoustical and sound-rated walls and ceilings.
- H. Division 9 Section "Acoustical Panel Ceilings for sealing edge moldings at perimeters of acoustical ceilings.
- I. Section 23 3100 - HVAC Ducts and Casings: Duct sealants.
- J. Division 32 Section "Pavement Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in pavements, walkways, and curbing.

**1.04 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes joint sealants for the following applications, including those specified by reference to this Section:
  1. Exterior joints in the following vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces:
    - a. Construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
    - b. Joints between metal panels.
    - c. Joints between different materials listed above.
    - d. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors, windows and louvers.
    - e. Other joints as indicated.
  2. Exterior joints in the following horizontal traffic surfaces:
    - a. Other joints as indicated.
  3. Interior joints in the following vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces:
    - a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
    - b. Perimeter joints of exterior openings where indicated.
    - c. Tile control and expansion joints.
    - d. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of concrete walls.
    - e. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors, windows and elevator entrances.
    - f. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
    - g. Other joints as indicated.
    - h. Joints between flooring and bottoms of interior door frames.

**07 9200**  
**JOINT SEALANTS**

4. Interior joints in the following horizontal traffic surfaces:
  - a. Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
  - b. Interior saw cut joints in concrete slabs.
  - c. Other joints as indicated.

**1.05 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C794 - Standard Test Method for Adhesion-In-Peel of Elastomeric Joint Sealants; 2015.
- B. ASTM C919 - Standard Practice for Use of Sealants in Acoustical Applications; 2012.
- C. ASTM C1087 - Standard Test Method for Determining Compatibility of Liquid-Applied Sealants with Accessories Used in Structural Glazing Systems; 2000 (Reapproved 2011).
- D. ASTM C1193 - Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants; 2016.
- E. ASTM C1521 - Standard Practice for Evaluating Adhesion of Installed Weatherproofing Sealant Joints; 2013.

**1.06 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Provide elastomeric joint sealants that establish and maintain watertight and airtight continuous joint seals without staining or deteriorating joint substrates.
- B. Provide joint sealants for interior applications that establish and maintain airtight and water-resistant continuous joint seals without staining or deteriorating joint substrates.

**1.07 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Product Data for Sealants: Submit manufacturer's technical data sheets for each product to be used, that includes the following:
  1. Physical characteristics, including movement capability, VOC content, hardness, cure time, and color availability.
  2. List of backing materials approved for use with the specific product.
  3. Substrates that product is known to satisfactorily adhere to and with which it is compatible.
  4. Substrates the product should not be used on.
  5. Sample product warranty.
- C. Product Data for Accessory Products: Submit manufacturer's technical data sheet for each product to be used, including physical characteristics, installation instructions, and recommended tools.
- D. Color Cards for Selection: Where sealant color is not specified, submit manufacturer's color cards showing standard colors available for selection.
- E. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
  1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
  2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- F. Sealant Schedule: Contractor shall provide a complete sealant schedule showing types of sealants used at all locations.
- G. Product Certificates: For each type of joint sealant and accessory, signed by product manufacturer.
- H. Preconstruction Laboratory Test Reports: Submit at least four weeks prior to start of installation.
- I. Preinstallation Field Adhesion Test Plan: Submit at least two weeks prior to start of installation.
- J. Preinstallation Field Adhesion Test Reports: Submit filled out Preinstallation Field Adhesion Test Reports log within 10 days after completion of tests; include bagged test samples and photographic records.
- K. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

## 1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized Installer who is approved or licensed for installation of elastomeric sealants required for this Project.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.
  1. Use manufacturer's standard test method to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
- D. Preconstruction Laboratory Testing: Arrange for sealant manufacturer(s) to test each combination of sealant, substrate, backing, and accessories.
  1. Adhesion Testing: In accordance with ASTM C794.
  2. Compatibility Testing: In accordance with ASTM C1087.
  3. Allow sufficient time for testing to avoid delaying the work.
  4. Deliver to manufacturer sufficient samples for testing.
  5. Report manufacturer's recommended corrective measures, if any, including primers or techniques not indicated in product data submittals.
  6. Testing is not required if sealant manufacturer provides data showing previous testing, not older than 24 months, that shows satisfactory adhesion, lack of staining, and compatibility.
- E. Preinstallation Field Adhesion Test Plan: Include destructive field adhesion testing of one sample of each combination of sealant type and substrate, except interior acrylic latex sealants, and include the following for each tested sample.
  1. Identification of testing agency.
  2. Preinstallation Field Adhesion Test Log Form: Include the following data fields, with known information filled out.
    - a. Test date.
    - b. Copy of test method documents.
    - c. Age of sealant upon date of testing.
    - d. Test results, modeled after the sample form in the test method document.
    - e. Indicate use of photographic record of test.
- F. Field Adhesion Test Procedures:
  1. Allow sealants to fully cure as recommended by manufacturer before testing.
  2. Have a copy of the test method document available during tests.
  3. Take photographs or make video records of each test, with joint identification provided in the photos/videos; for example, provide small erasable whiteboard positioned next to joint.
  4. Record the type of failure that occurred, other information required by test method, and the information required on the Field Quality Control Log.
  5. When performing destructive tests, also inspect the opened joint for proper installation characteristics recommended by manufacturer, and report any deficiencies.
  6. Deliver the samples removed during destructive tests in separate sealed plastic bags, identified with project, location, test date, and test results, to Owner.
  7. If any combination of sealant type and substrate does not show evidence of minimum adhesion or shows cohesion failure before minimum adhesion, report results to Architect.
- G. Destructive Field Adhesion Test: Test for adhesion in accordance with ASTM C1521, using Destructive Tail Procedure.
  1. Sample: At least 18 inch long.
  2. Minimum Elongation Without Adhesive Failure: Consider the tail at rest, not under any elongation stress; multiply the stated movement capability of the sealant in percent by two; then multiply 1 inch by that percentage; if adhesion failure occurs before the "1 inch mark" is that distance from the substrate, the test has failed.

**07 9200**  
**JOINT SEALANTS**

3. If either adhesive or cohesive failure occurs prior to minimum elongation, take necessary measures to correct conditions and re-test; record each modification to products or installation procedures.
4. Repair failed portions of joints.

#### **1.09 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
  1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
  2. When joint substrates are wet.
  3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
  4. Contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

#### **1.10 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer's standard form in which Installer agrees to repair or replace elastomeric joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  1. Warranty Period: Two (2) years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which elastomeric sealant manufacturer agrees to furnish elastomeric joint sealants to repair or replace those that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  1. Correct defective work within a five year period after Date of Substantial Completion.
- D. Warranty: Include coverage for installed sealants and accessories that fail to achieve watertight seal, exhibit loss of adhesion or cohesion, or do not cure.
- E. Special warranties specified in this Article exclude deterioration or failure of elastomeric joint sealants from the following:
  1. Movement of the structure resulting in stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression caused by structural settlement or errors attributable to design or construction.
  2. Disintegration of joint substrates from natural causes exceeding design specifications.
  3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
  4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 JOINT SEALANT APPLICATIONS**

- A. Scope:
  1. Exterior Joints: Seal open joints, whether or not the joint is indicated on drawings, unless specifically indicated not to be sealed. Exterior joints to be sealed include, but are not limited to, the following items.
    - a. Wall expansion and control joints.
    - b. Joints between door, window, and other frames and adjacent construction.
    - c. Joints between different exposed materials.
    - d. Other joints indicated below.
  2. Interior Joints: Do not seal interior joints unless specifically indicated to be sealed. Interior joints to be sealed include, but are not limited to, the following items.
    - a. Joints between door, window, and other frames and adjacent construction.
    - b. In sound-rated wall and ceiling assemblies, gaps at electrical outlets, wiring devices, piping, and other openings; between wall/ceiling and other construction; and other flanking sound paths.

**07 9200**  
**JOINT SEALANTS**

- c. Other joints indicated below.
- 3. Do not seal the following types of joints.
  - a. Joints indicated to be treated with manufactured expansion joint cover or some other type of sealing device.
  - b. Joints where sealant is specified to be provided by manufacturer of product to be sealed.
  - c. Joints where installation of sealant is specified in another section.
  - d. Joints between suspended panel ceilings/grid and walls.
- B. Interior Joints: Use non-sag polyurethane sealant, Type \_\_\_\_, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Wall and Ceiling Joints in Non-Wet Areas: Acrylic emulsion latex sealant; Type \_\_\_\_.
  - 2. In Sound-Rated Assemblies: Acrylic emulsion latex sealant; Type \_\_\_\_.
- C. Sound-Rated Assemblies: Walls and ceilings identified as "STC-rated", "sound-rated", or "acoustical".

## **2.02 JOINT SEALANTS - GENERAL**

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. VOC Content of Interior Sealants: Provide sealants and sealant primers for use inside the weatherproofing system that comply with the following limits for VOC content.
- C. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## **2.03 ELASTOMERIC JOINT SEALANTS**

- A. Elastomeric Sealants: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied chemically curing sealant specified, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses related to exposure and joint substrates.
- B. Stain-Test-Response Characteristics: Where elastomeric sealants are specified to be nonstaining to porous substrates, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1248 and have not stained porous joint substrates indicated for Project.
- C. Suitability for Immersion in Liquids. Where elastomeric sealants are indicated for Use I for joints that will be continuously immersed in liquids, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1247 and qualify for the length of exposure indicated by reference to ASTM C 920 for Class 1 or 2. Liquid used for testing sealants is deionized water, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Single-Component Medium-Modules Neutral-Curing Silicone Sealant:
  - 1. Available Products:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 790.
    - b. Tremco; Spectrem 1 (Basic).
    - c. GE Silicones; SilPruf SCS2000.
    - d. Pecora Corporation; 864.
    - e. Pecora Corporation; 890.
    - f. Tremco; Spectrem 3.
    - g. Dow Corning Corporation; 791.
    - h. Dow Corning Corporation; 795
    - i. GE Silicones; SilPruf NB SCS9000.
  - 2. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (nonsag).
  - 3. Class: 25.
  - 4. Use Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic).
  - 5. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
    - a. Use O Joint Substrates: Coated glass, color anodic aluminum, aluminum coated with a high-performance coating, galvanized steel, brick, granite ceramic tile and wood.

**07 9200**  
**JOINT SEALANTS**

6. Stain-Test-Response Characteristics: Nonstaining to porous substrates per ASTM C 1248.
7. Applications: Provide at locations of non-porous to non-porous and non-porous to porous substrates.

E. Single-Component Mildew-Resistant Neutral-Curing Silicone Sealant:

1. Available Products:
  - a. Pecora Corporation; 898.
  - b. Tremco; TremSil 600 White.
2. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (nonsag).
3. Class: 25.
4. Use Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic).
5. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
  - a. Use O Joint Substrates: Coated glass, color anodic aluminum, aluminum coated with a high-performance coating, galvanized steel, and ceramic tile.

F. Multicomponent Nonsag Urethane Sealant:

1. Available Products:
  - a. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol II.
  - b. Tremco; Dymeric 511.
  - c. Tremco; Vulkem 922.
2. Type and Grade: M (multicomponent) and NS (nonsag).
3. Class: 50.
4. Use[s] Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic) and T (traffic).
5. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
  - a. Use O Joint Substrates: Color anodic aluminum, aluminum coated with a high-performance coating, galvanized steel, brick, granite, limestone, marble, ceramic tile and wood.

G. Single-Component Nonsag Urethane Sealant:

1. Available Products:
  - a. Sika Corporation, Inc.; Sikaflex - 1a.
  - b. Sonneborn, Division of ChemRex Inc.; Ultra.
  - c. Sonneborn, Division of ChemRex Inc.; NP 1.
  - d. Tremco; Vulkem 116.
  - e. Termco: Vulkem 230
2. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (nonsag).
3. Class: 25.
4. Uses Related to Exposure: T (traffic) and NT (nontraffic).
5. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
6. Applications: At all exposed locations on the building where porous materials adjoin porous materials.

H. Semirigid Joint filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy joint filler with a Type A Shore durometer range of 90 to 95 per ASTM D2240.

1. Metzger/McGuire; MM-80. Color to be selected.
  - a. Applications: For use at all exposed slabs scheduled to be sealed.

**2.04 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS**

- A. Latex Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 834, Type P, Grade NF.
- B. Available Products:
  1. Bostik Findley; Chem-Calk 600.
  2. Pecora Corporation; AC-20+.
  3. Schnee-Morehead, Inc.; SM 8200.

**07 9200**  
**JOINT SEALANTS**

4. Sonneborn, Division of ChemRex Inc.; Sonolac.
5. Tremco; Tremflex 834.

## **2.05 ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS**

- A. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834 and the following:
  1. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
  2. Available Products:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR Acoustical and Insulation Sealant.
    - b. United States Gypsum Co.; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.
  3. Location: At all areas of sound walls where sealant is called for.

## **2.06 PREFORMED JOINT SEALANTS**

- A. Preformed Silicone-Sealant System: Manufacturer's standard system consisting of precured low-modulus silicone extrusion, in sizes to fit joint widths indicated, combined with a neutral-curing silicone sealant for bonding extrusions to substrates.
  1. Available Products:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 123 Silicone Seal.
    - b. GE Silicones; UltraSpan US1100.
    - c. Pecora Corporation; Sil-Span.
    - d. Tremco; Spectrem Ez Seal.

## **2.07 PREFORMED TAPE SEALANTS**

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Tape Sealant: Preformed, butyl-based elastomeric tape sealant with a solids content of 100 percent; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape manufacturers for application indicated; packaged on rolls with a release paper backing; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
  1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
  2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
  3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.
- B. Expanded Cellular Tape Sealant: Closed-cell, PVC foam tape sealant; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; packaged on rolls with release liner protecting adhesive; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
  1. Type 1, for applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
  2. Type 2, for applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

## **2.08 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING**

- A. General: Provide sealant backings of material and type that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. Elastomeric Tubing Sealant Backings: Neoprene, butyl, EPDM, or silicone tubing complying with ASTM D 1056, nonabsorbent to water and gas, and capable of remaining resilient at temperatures down to minus 26 deg F (minus 32 deg C). Provide products with low compression set and of size and shape to provide a secondary seal, to control sealant depth, and to otherwise contribute to optimum sealant performance.
- D. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint

**07 9200**  
**JOINT SEALANTS**

surfaces at back of joint where such adhesion would result in sealant failure. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

**2.09 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Backing Tape: Self-adhesive polyethylene tape with surface that sealant will not adhere to and recommended by tape and sealant manufacturers for specific application.
- B. Masking Tape: Self-adhesive, nonabsorbent, non-staining, removable without adhesive residue, and compatible with surfaces adjacent to joints and sealants.
- C. Joint Cleaner: Non-corrosive and non-staining type, type recommended by sealant manufacturer; compatible with joint forming materials.
- D. Primers: Type recommended by sealant manufacturer to suit application; non-staining.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that joints are ready to receive work.
- B. Verify that backing materials are compatible with sealants.
- C. Preinstallation Adhesion Testing: Install a sample for each test location shown in the test plan.
  - 1. Test each sample as specified in PART 1 under QUALITY ASSURANCE article.
  - 2. Notify Architect of date and time that tests will be performed, at least 7 days in advance.
  - 3. Record each test on Preinstallation Adhesion Test Log as indicated.
  - 4. If any sample fails, review products and installation procedures, consult manufacturer, or take whatever other measures are necessary to ensure adhesion; re-test in a different location; if unable to obtain satisfactory adhesion, report to Architect.
  - 5. After completion of tests, remove remaining sample material and prepare joint for new sealant installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

**3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Remove loose materials and foreign matter that could impair adhesion of sealant.
- B. Clean joints, and prime as necessary, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, blast cleaning, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
  - 1. Concrete.
  - 2. Masonry.
  - 3. Brick Veneer.
- C. Clean nonporous surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
  - 1. Metal.
  - 2. Glass.
  - 3. Porcelain enamel.
  - 4. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- D. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- E. Perform preparation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and ASTM C1193.
- F. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates, where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

**07 9200**  
**JOINT SEALANTS**

- G. Mask elements and surfaces adjacent to joints from damage and disfigurement due to sealant work; be aware that sealant drips and smears may not be completely removable.
- H. Concrete Floor Joints That Will Be Exposed in Completed Work: Test joint filler in inconspicuous area to verify that it does not stain or discolor slab.

**3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Perform work in accordance with sealant manufacturer's requirements for preparation of surfaces and material installation instructions.
- B. Perform installation in accordance with ASTM C1193.
- C. Perform acoustical sealant application work in accordance with ASTM C919.
- D. Install sealant backings of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
  - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
  - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
  - 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- E. Install bond breaker backing tape where backer rod cannot be used.
- F. Install sealant free of air pockets, foreign embedded matter, ridges, and sags, and without getting sealant on adjacent surfaces.
- G. Do not install sealant when ambient temperature is outside manufacturer's recommended temperature range, or will be outside that range during the entire curing period, unless manufacturer's approval is obtained and instructions are followed.
- H. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
  - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
  - 3. Provide concave joint configuration per Figure 5A in ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Provide flush joint configuration where indicated per Figure 5B in ASTM C 1193.
  - 5. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at locations indicated per Figure 5C in ASTM C 1193.
    - a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.
- I. Masonry expansion joints: Install sealant per manufacturer's recommendations. When installing, provide masonry sand on top of sealant to match grout joints.

**3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform field quality control inspection/testing as specified in PART 1 under QUALITY ASSURANCE article.
- B. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
  - 1. Extent of Testing: Test completed elastomeric sealant joints as follows:
    - a. Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 feet of joint length for each type of elastomeric sealant and joint substrate.
    - b. Perform 1 test for each 1000 feet of joint length thereafter or 1 test per each floor per elevation.
  - 2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab; Method B, Exposed Surface Finish Hand Pull Tab; Method C, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Flap; or Method D, Water Immersion in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193, as appropriate for type of joint-sealant application indicated.

**07 9200**  
**JOINT SEALANTS**

- a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; do this by extending cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
3. Inspect joints for complete fill, for absence of voids, and for joint configuration complying with specified requirements. Record results in a field-adhesion-test log.
4. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
  - a. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each type of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion passes sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
  - b. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
  - c. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
5. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant fill, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.

- C. Remove and replace failed portions of sealants using same materials and procedures as indicated for original installation. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.
- D. Evaluation of Field Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

**3.05 CLEANING**

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

**3.06 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

**3.07 POST-OCCUPANCY**

- A. Post-Occupancy Inspection: Perform visual inspection of entire length of project sealant joints at a time that joints have opened to their greatest width; i.e. at the low temperature in the thermal cycle. Report failures immediately and repair.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 1113**  
**HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Non-fire-rated hollow metal doors and frames.
- B. Fire-rated hollow metal doors and frames.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 07 2100 - Thermal Insulation, for filling of frames with insulation.
- B. Section 08 7100 - Door Hardware.
- C. Section 08 8000 - Glazing: Glass for doors and borrowed lites.
- D. Section 09 2900 - Gypsum Board, for partial filling of door frames.
- E. Section 09 9000 - Painting: Field Painting.
- F. Division 26 and 28 Sections for electrical connections including conduit and wiring for door controls and operators.

**1.04 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS**

- A. ANSI - American National Standards Institute.
- B. ASCE - American Society of Civil Engineers.
- C. HMMA - Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association.
- D. NAAMM - National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers.
- E. NFPA - National Fire Protection Association.
- F. SDI - Steel Door Institute.
- G. UL - Underwriters Laboratories.

**1.05 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ADA Standards - Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Standards for Accessible Design; 2010.
- B. ANSI/SDI A250.8 - Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames (SDI-100); 2014.
- C. ANSI/SDI A250.10 - Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Prime Painted Steel Surfaces for Steel Doors and Frames; 2011.
- D. ASTM A1008/A1008M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable; 2015.
- E. ASTM A1011/A1011M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength; 2014.
- F. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities; 2009.
- G. NAAMM HMMA 840 - Guide Specifications for Installation and Storage of Hollow Metal Doors and Frames; 2007.
- H. NAAMM HMMA 860 - Guide Specifications for Hollow Metal Doors and Frames; 2013.
- I. NAAMM HMMA 865 - Guide Specifications for Sound Control Hollow Metal Doors and Frames; 2013.
- J. NFPA 80 - Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives; 2016.
- K. NFPA 252 - Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies; 2012.

**08 1113**  
**HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES**

L. UL 10C - Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

**1.06 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Product Data: Materials and details of design and construction, hardware locations, reinforcement type and locations, anchorage and fastening methods, and finishes; and one copy of referenced standards/guidelines.
- C. Shop Drawings: Details of each opening, showing elevations, glazing, frame profiles, and any indicated finish requirements.
  - 1. Elevations of each door design.
  - 2. Details of doors, including vertical and horizontal edge details and metal thicknesses.
  - 3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
  - 4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
  - 5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
  - 6. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
  - 7. Details of accessories.
  - 8. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
  - 9. Details of conduit and preparations for power, signal, and control systems.
- D. Samples for Verification:
  - 1. For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of not less than 3 by 5 inches.
  - 2. For the following items, prepared on Samples about 12 by 12 inches to demonstrate compliance with requirements for quality of materials and construction:
    - a. Doors: Show vertical-edge, top, and bottom construction; core construction; and hinge and other applied hardware reinforcement. Include separate section showing glazing if applicable.
    - b. Frames: Show profile, corner joint, floor and wall anchors, and silencers. Include separate section showing fixed hollow metal panels and glazing if applicable.
- E. Other Action Submittals:
  - 1. Schedule: Provide a schedule of hollow metal work prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with door hardware schedule.
- F. Oversize Construction Certification: For assemblies required to be fire rated and exceeding limitations of labeled assemblies.
- G. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each type of hollow metal door and frame assembly.

**1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Copies of Documents at Project Site: Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes installation requirements.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain hollow metal work from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

**1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Comply with NAAMM HMMA 840 or ANSI/SDI A250.8 (SDI-100) in accordance with specified requirements.
- B. Protect with resilient packaging; avoid humidity build-up under coverings; prevent corrosion and adverse effects on factory applied painted finish.
- C. Deliver hollow metal work palletized, wrapped, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
  - 1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to finish of factory-finished units.

**08 1113**  
**HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES**

- D. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- E. Store hollow metal work under cover at Project site. Place in stacks of five units maximum in a vertical position with heads up, spaced by blocking, on minimum 4-inch- high wood blocking. Do not store in a manner that traps excess humidity.
  - 1. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

**1.09 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

**1.10 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for hollow metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Hollow Metal Doors and Frames:
  - 1. Amweld Building Products, LLC.
  - 2. Benchmark; a division of Therma-Tru Corporation.
  - 3. Ceco Door, an Assa Abloy Group company; \_\_\_\_: [www.assaabloydss.com/#sle](http://www.assaabloydss.com/#sle).
  - 4. Curries Company; an Assa Abloy Group company.
  - 5. Fleming Door Products Ltd.; an Assa Abloy Group company.
  - 6. Mesker Door Inc.
  - 7. Steelcraft, an Allegion brand; \_\_\_\_: [www.allegion.com/#sle](http://www.allegion.com/#sle).
  - 8. Stiles Custom Metal

**2.02 DESIGN CRITERIA**

- A. Requirements for Hollow Metal Doors and Frames:
  - 1. Steel used for fabrication of doors and frames shall comply with one or more of the following requirements; Galvannealed steel conforming to ASTM A653/A653M, cold-rolled steel conforming to ASTM A1008/A1008M, or hot-rolled pickled and oiled (HRPO) steel conforming to ASTM A1011/A1011M, Commercial Steel (CS) Type B for each.
  - 2. Accessibility: Comply with ICC A117.1 and ADA Standards.
- B. Combined Requirements: If a particular door and frame unit is indicated to comply with more than one type of requirement, comply with the specified requirements for each type; for instance, an exterior door that is also indicated as being sound-rated must comply with the requirements specified for exterior doors and for sound-rated doors; where two requirements conflict, comply with the most stringent.

**2.03 MATERIALS**

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60 (Z180) metallic coating.
- D. Frame Anchors: ASTM A 591/A 591M, Commercial Steel (CS), 40Z (12G) coating designation; mill phosphatized.
  - 1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M or ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.
- E. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.

**08 1113**  
**HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES**

- F. Powder-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow metal frames of type indicated.
- G. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Division 8 Section "Glazing."

**2.04 HOLLOW METAL DOORS**

- A. General: Provide doors of design indicated, not less than thickness indicated; fabricated with smooth surfaces, without visible joints or seams on exposed faces unless otherwise indicated. Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8.
  - 1. Design: Flush panel.
  - 2. Core Construction: Manufacturer's standard kraft-paper honeycomb, polystyrene, polyurethane, polyisocyanurate, mineral-board, or vertical steel-stiffener core.
    - a. Thermal-Rated (Insulated) Doors: All opaque exterior doors, provide fabricated with U Value performance of 0.37.
      - 1) Locations: Exterior doors.
  - 3. Vertical Edges for Single-Acting Doors: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 4. Vertical Edges for Double-Acting Doors: Round vertical edges with 2-1/8-inch radius.
  - 5. Top and Bottom Edges: Closed with flush or inverted 0.042-inch- thick, end closures or channels of same material as face sheets.
  - 6. Tolerances: Comply with SDI 117, "Manufacturing Tolerances for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
- B. Exterior Doors: Face sheets fabricated from metallic-coated steel sheet. Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI/SDI A250.8 for level and model and ANSI/SDI A250.4 for physical performance level:
  - 1. Level 2 and Physical Performance Level B (Heavy Duty), Model 1 (Full Flush), 16-gauge thick cold rolled steel sheet, Galvanized A60.
- C. Interior Doors: Face sheets fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet unless metallic-coated sheet is indicated. Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI/SDI A250.8 for level and model and ANSI/SDI A250.4 for physical performance level:
  - 1. Level 2 and Physical Performance Level B (Heavy Duty), Model 1 (Full Flush), 16-gauge.
- D. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 with reinforcing plates from same material as door face sheets.
- E. Fabricate concealed stiffeners and hardware reinforcement from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.
- F. Provide high frequency top butt reinforcement at all exterior doors.

**2.05 HOLLOW METAL FRAMES**

- A. Comply with standards and/or custom guidelines as indicated for corresponding door in accordance with applicable door frame requirements.
- B. General: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8 and with details indicated for type and profile.
- C. Frame Finish: Factory primed and field finished.
- D. Exterior Door Frames: Full profile/continuously welded type. Fabricated from metallic-coated steel sheet.
  - 1. Galvanizing: Components hot-dipped zinc-iron alloy-coated (galvannealed) in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M, with A60/ZF180 coating.
  - 2. Frame Metal Thickness: 14 gage, 0.067 inch, minimum.
  - 3. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped corners.
- E. Interior Door Frames, Non-Fire Rated: Full profile/continuously welded type.
  - 1. Frame Metal Thickness: 16 gage, 0.053 inch, minimum.
  - 2. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped corners.
- F. Door Frames, Fire-Rated: Full profile/continuously welded type.
  - 1. Fire Rating: Same as door, labeled.

**08 1113**  
**HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES**

2. Frame Metal Thickness: 16 gage, 0.053 inch, minimum.
- G. Provide mortar guard boxes for hardware cut-outs in frames to be installed in masonry or to be grouted.
- H. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 with reinforcement plates from same material as frames.
- I. Provide high frequency top butt reinforcement at all exterior frames.
- J. Frames Wider than 48 inches: Reinforce with steel channel fitted tightly into frame head, flush with top.

## **2.06 FRAME ANCHORS**

- A. Stud-Wall Type: Designed to engage stud, welded to back of frames; not less than 0.042 inch thick.

## **2.07 STOPS AND MOLDINGS**

- A. Moldings for Glazed Lites in Doors: Minimum 0.032 inch thick, fabricated from same material as door face sheet in which they are installed.
- B. Fixed Frame Moldings: Formed integral with hollow metal frames, a minimum of 5/8 inch high unless otherwise indicated.

## **2.08 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Mullions and Transom Bars: Join to adjacent members by welding or rigid mechanical anchors.

## **2.09 FABRICATION**

- A. Fabricate hollow metal work to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for thickness of metal. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.
- B. Tolerances: Fabricate hollow metal work to tolerances indicated in SDI 117.
- C. Hollow Metal Doors:
  1. Exterior Doors: Provide weep-hole openings in bottom of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape. Seal joints in top edges of doors against water penetration.
  2. Glazed Lites: Factory cut openings in doors.
  3. Astragals: Provide overlapping astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum 3/4 inch beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted.
  4. Provide adequate mounting clearance for scheduled hardware to eliminate projection into glass or louver space.
- D. Hollow Metal Frames: Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.
  1. Welded Frames: Weld flush face joints continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make smooth, flush, and invisible.
  2. Grout Guards: Weld guards to frame at back of hardware mortises in frames to be insulated.
  3. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottom of jambs and mullions with at least four spot welds per anchor.
  4. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:
    - a. Masonry Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c. and as follows:
      - 1) Two anchors per jamb up to 60 inches high.
      - 2) Three anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches high.
      - 3) Four anchors per jamb from 90 to 120 inches high.
      - 4) Four anchors per jamb plus 1 additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches or fraction thereof above 120 inches high.

**08 1113**  
**HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES**

- b. Stud-Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c. and as follows:
  - 1) Three anchors per jamb up to 60 inches high.
  - 2) Four anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches high.
  - 3) Five anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches high.
  - 4) Five anchors per jamb plus 1 additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches or fraction thereof above 96 inches high.
  - 5) Two anchors per head for frames above 42 inches wide and mounted in metal-stud partitions.
- 5. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped doors, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
  - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
  - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
- E. Fabricate concealed stiffeners, edge channels, and hardware reinforcement from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.
- F. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow metal work to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to the Door Hardware Schedule and templates furnished as specified in Division 8 Section "Door Hardware."
  - 1. Locate hardware as indicated, or if not indicated, according to ANSI/SDI A250.8.
  - 2. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised and surface-mounted door hardware.
  - 3. Comply with applicable requirements in ANSI/SDI A250.6 and ANSI/DHI A115 Series specifications for preparation of hollow metal work for hardware.
  - 4. Coordinate locations of conduit, per frame penetrations and wiring boxes for electrical connections with Division 26 Sections.
- G. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints.
  - 1. Single Glazed Lites: Provide fixed stops and moldings welded on secure side of hollow metal work.
  - 2. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.
  - 3. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow metal work.
  - 4. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with type of glazing and type of installation indicated.

## **2.10 FINISHES**

- A. Primer: Rust-inhibiting, complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10, door manufacturer's standard. Apply manufacturer's standard primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
- B. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10 acceptance criteria; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.
- C. Bituminous Coating: Asphalt emulsion or other high-build, water-resistant, resilient coating.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that opening sizes and tolerances are acceptable.
- C. Verify that finished walls are in plane to ensure proper door alignment.
- D. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

**08 1113**  
**HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES**

- E. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations before frame installation.
- F. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- G. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

**3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Coat inside of frames to be installed in masonry or to be grouted, with bituminous coating, prior to installation.
- B. Prior to installation, adjust and securely brace welded hollow metal frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumbness to the following tolerances:
  1. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
  2. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
  3. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
  4. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a perpendicular line from head to floor.
- C. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
- D. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.

**3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install doors and frames in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and related requirements of specified door and frame standards or custom guidelines indicated.
- B. Coordinate frame anchor placement with wall construction.
- C. Coordinate installation of hardware.
- D. Coordinate installation of glazing.
- E. Hollow Metal Frames: Install hollow metal frames of size and profile indicated. Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.11.
  1. Set frames accurately in position, plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
    - a. Where frames are fabricated in sections because of shipping or handling limitations, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
    - b. Install door silencers in frames before installation of insulation.
    - c. Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
    - d. Check plumbness, squareness, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
  2. Stud Partitions: After the door frames are partially filled with drywall setting grout, fill frames completely with batt insulation once the frames are installed. Do not fill fire-rated frames. Window and re-lite frames will be filled entirely with insulation after installed.
  3. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout.
  4. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with post-installed expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.

**08 1113**  
**HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES**

5. In-Place Gypsum Board Partitions: Secure frames in place with post-installed expansion anchors through floor anchors at each jamb. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
6. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow metal door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:
  - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
  - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
  - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
  - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs at floor.
- F. Hollow Metal Doors: Fit hollow metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below. Shim as necessary.
  1. Non-Fire-Rated Standard Steel Doors:
    - a. Jambs and Head: 1/8 inch plus or minus 1/16 inch.
    - b. Between Edges of Pairs of Doors: 1/8 inch plus or minus 1/16 inch.
    - c. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Threshold: Maximum 3/8 inch.
    - d. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Finish Floor (No Threshold): Maximum 3/4 inch.
- G. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Division 8 Section "Glazing" and with hollow metal manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Secure stops with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches o.c. and not more than 2 inches o.c. from each corner.
- H. Coordinate installation of electrical connections to electrical hardware items.

**3.04 TOLERANCES**

- A. Clearances Between Door and Frame: Comply with related requirements of specified door and frame standards or custom guidelines indicated.
- B. Maximum Diagonal Distortion: 1/16 in measured with straight edge, corner to corner.

**3.05 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust for smooth and balanced door movement.
- B. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including hollow metal work that is warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.
- C. Remove grout, insulation, and other bonding material, exposed to view, from hollow metal work immediately after installation.
- D. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 1416**  
**FLUSH WOOD DOORS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Solid-core doors with wood-veneer faces.
- B. Factory finishing flush wood doors.
- C. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 08 1113 - Hollow Metal Doors and Frames.
- B. Section 08 7100 - Door Hardware.
- C. Section 08 8000 - Glazing.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ANSI A135.4 - American National Standard for Basic Hardboard; 2012.
- B. AWI (QCP) - Quality Certification Program; current edition at [www.awiqcp.org](http://www.awiqcp.org).
- C. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards; 2014.
- D. AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) - North American Architectural Woodwork Standards, U.S. Version 3.0; 2016.
- E. ITS (DIR) - Directory of Listed Products; current edition.
- F. NFPA 80 - Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives; 2016.
- G. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory; current listings at [database.ul.com](http://database.ul.com).
- H. UL 10C - Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. WDMA I.S. 1A - Interior Architectural Wood Flush Doors; 2013.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Product Data: Indicate door core materials and construction; veneer species, type and characteristics.
- C. Shop Drawings: Show doors and frames, elevations, sizes, types, swings, undercuts, beveling, blocking for hardware, factory machining, factory finishing, cutouts for glazing and other details.
  - 1. Indicate requirements for veneer matching.
  - 2. Indicate fire-protection ratings for fire-rated doors.
- D. Certificate: Submit labels and certificates required by quality assurance and quality control programs.
- E. Specimen warranty.
- F. Samples: Submit two samples of door veneer, 8 by 10 inch in size illustrating wood grain, stain color, and sheen.
- G. Product Declarations: Provide Environmental (EPD) and Health (HPD) Product Declarations for all materials used in the installation.
- H. Maintenance Data: For inclusion in maintenance manuals required by Section 01 7823.
- I. Warranty, executed in Owner's name.

## 1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors from single manufacturer.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section, with not less than three years of documented experience.
  - 1. Accredited participant in the specified certification program prior to the commencement of fabrication and throughout the duration of the project.
- C. Quality Certification: Comply with AWI (QCP) woodwork association quality certification service/program in accordance with requirements for work specified in this section.
  - 1. Provide labels or certificates indicating that the installed work complies with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) requirements for grade or grades specified.
  - 2. Provide designated labels on shop drawings as required by certification program.
  - 3. Provide designated labels on installed products as required by certification program.
  - 4. Submit certifications upon completion of installation that verifies this work is in compliance with specified requirements.
  - 5. Arrange and pay for inspections required for certification.
  - 6. Replace, repair, or rework all work for which certification is refused.
- D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Package, deliver and store doors in accordance with specified quality standard.
- B. Accept doors on site in manufacturer's packaging. Inspect for damage.
- C. Protect doors with resilient packaging sealed with heat shrunk plastic. Do not store in damp or wet areas; or in areas where sunlight might bleach veneer. Seal top and bottom edges with tinted sealer if stored more than one week. Break seal on site to permit ventilation.
- D. Mark each door on top and bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

## 1.08 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

## 1.09 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Interior Doors: Provide manufacturer's warranty for the life of the installation.
- C. Include coverage for delamination of veneer, warping beyond specified installation tolerances, defective materials, and telegraphing core construction.
- D. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch in a 42-by-84-inch section.
    - b. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch span.
  - 2. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Wood Veneer Faced Doors:
  - 1. Algoma Hardwood, Inc.
  - 2. Eggers Industries; \_\_\_\_: [www.eggersindustries.com/#sle](http://www.eggersindustries.com/#sle).

**08 1416**  
**FLUSH WOOD DOORS**

3. Marshfield DoorSystems, Inc; \_\_\_\_: [www.marshfielddoors.com/#sle](http://www.marshfielddoors.com/#sle).
4. Oregon Door; Architectural Series: [www.oregondoor.com/#sle](http://www.oregondoor.com/#sle).
5. Vancouver Door Company.
6. VT Industries.

B. Basis of Design: VT Industries; Architectural Wood Doors.

## **2.02 DOORS AND PANELS**

- A. Doors: Refer to drawings for locations and additional requirements.
  1. Quality Level: Custom Grade, Heavy Duty performance, in accordance with WDMA I.S. 1A.
  2. Wood Veneer Faced Doors: 5-ply unless otherwise indicated. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit abrasive planed before veneering. Faces are bonded to core using a hot press.
- B. Interior Doors: 1-3/4 inches thick unless otherwise indicated; flush construction.
  1. Provide solid core doors at all locations.
  2. Fire-Rated Doors: Tested to 60 minutes and ratings as indicated on drawings in accordance with UL 10C - Positive Pressure; UL (DIR) or ITS (DIR) labeled without any visible seals when door is open.

## **2.03 DOOR FACINGS**

- A. Veneer Facing for Transparent Finish: As noted on drawings, veneer grade in accordance with quality standard indicated, plain sliced (flat cut), with book match between leaves of veneer, center balance match of spliced veneer leaves assembled on door or panel face.
  1. Vertical Edges: Same species as face veneer.
  2. "Pair Match" each pair of doors; "Set Match" pairs of doors within 10 feet of each other when doors are closed.
  3. Grade: Premium, with Grade A faces.

## **2.04 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Glazing Stops: Wood, of same species as door facing, butted corners; prepared for countersink style tamper proof screws.

## **2.05 DOOR CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Fabricate doors in accordance with door quality standard specified.
- B. Low-Emitting Materials: Provide doors made with adhesives and composite wood products that do not contain urea formaldehyde.
- C. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Heavy Duty.
- D. Particle Board Core Doors:
  1. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-2, made with binder containing no urea-formaldehyde resin.
  2. Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as follows:
    - a. Provide solid blocks at lock edge for hardware reinforcement.
    - b. Provide solid blocking for other throughbolted hardware.
    - c. 5-inch top-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have closers.
    - d. 5-inch bottom-rail blocking, in exterior doors and doors indicated to have kick, mop, or armor plates.
    - e. 5-inch mid-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have exit devices.
- E. Factory machine doors for hardware other than surface-mounted hardware, in accordance with hardware requirements and dimensions.
- F. Factory fit doors for frame opening dimensions identified on shop drawings, with edge clearances in accordance with specified quality standard.
- G. Provide edge clearances in accordance with the quality standard specified.

**08 1416**  
**FLUSH WOOD DOORS**

H. Fire-Protection-Rated Doors: Provide core specified or mineral core as needed to provide fire-protection rating indicated.

**2.06 FACTORY FINISHING - WOOD VENEER DOORS**

A. General: Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.

1. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises. Stains and fillers may be omitted on top and bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.

B. Finish work in accordance with WDMA I.S. 1A for grade specified and as follows:

1. Transparent:
  - a. Grade: Premium.
  - b. System - TR-6, Catalyzed Polyurethane.
  - c. Stain: As selected by Architect.
  - d. Sheen: Satin.

C. Factory finish doors in accordance with approved sample.

D. Seal door top edge with color sealer to match door facing.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that opening sizes and tolerances are acceptable.
- C. Examine doors and installed door frames before hanging doors.
  1. Verify that frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
  2. Reject doors with defects.
- D. Do not install doors in frame openings that are not plumb or are out-of-tolerance for size or alignment.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

**3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install doors in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and specified quality standard.
  1. Install fire-rated doors in accordance with NFPA 80 requirements.
- B. Factory-Finished Doors: Do not field cut or trim; if fit or clearance is not correct, replace door.
- C. Use machine tools to cut or drill for hardware.
- D. Coordinate installation of doors with installation of frames and hardware.
- E. Coordinate installation of glazing.
- F. Job-Fitted Doors: Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below; do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors. Machine doors for hardware. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.
  1. Clearances: Provide 1/8 inch at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors. Provide 1/8 inch from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4 inch from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
  2. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) at lock and hinge edges.
  3. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.
- G. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.

**08 1416**  
**FLUSH WOOD DOORS**

H. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

**3.03 TOLERANCES**

- A. Conform to specified quality standard for fit and clearance tolerances.
- B. Conform to specified quality standard for telegraphing, warp, and squareness.

**3.04 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust doors for smooth and balanced door movement. Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
- B. Adjust closers for full closure.
- C. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 3100**  
**ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Wall access door and frame units.
- B. Ceiling access door and frame units.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 09 2116 - Gypsum Board.
- B. Section 09 9000 - Painting: For Field Finishing.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Product Data: Provide sizes, types, finishes, hardware, scheduled locations, and details of adjoining work.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate exact position of all access door units. Show fabrication and installation details of access doors and frames for each type of substrate. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain access door(s) and frame(s) through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Size Variations: Obtain Architect's acceptance of manufacturer's standard-size units, which may vary slightly from sizes indicated.

**1.06 COORDINATION**

- A. Verification: Determine specific locations and sizes for access doors needed to gain access to concealed plumbing, mechanical, or other concealed work, and indicate in the schedule specified in "Submittals" Article.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 STEEL MATERIALS**

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  - 1. ASTM A 123/A 123M, for galvanizing steel and iron products.
- B. Steel Sheet: Electrolytic zinc-coated, ASTM A 591/A 591M with cold-rolled steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), exposed.
- C. Steel Finishes: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  - 1. Surface Preparation for Steel Sheet: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, or other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
  - 2. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-enamel finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with paint manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.

**2.02 WALL & CEILING-MOUNTED UNITS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

**08 3100**  
**ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS**

1. ACUDOR Products Inc: [www.acudor.com/#sle](http://www.acudor.com/#sle).
2. Dur-Red Products.
3. J. L. Industries, Inc.
4. Karp Associates, Inc; \_\_\_\_: [www.karpinc.com/#sle](http://www.karpinc.com/#sle).
5. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
6. Milcor, Inc; \_\_\_\_: [www.milcorinc.com/#sle](http://www.milcorinc.com/#sle).

B. Flush Access Doors: Factory fabricated door and frame units, fully assembled units with corner joints welded, filled, and ground flush; square and without rack or warp; coordinate requirements with assemblies that units are to be installed in.

1. Door Style: Single thickness with rolled or turned in edges.
2. Frames: 16 gage, 0.0598 inch, minimum. Trimless.
3. Single Steel Sheet Door Panels: 1/16 inch, minimum thickness.
4. Steel Finish: Primed.
5. Size: As required for access to areas..
6. Hardware:
  - a. Hinges for Non-Fire-Rated Units: Continuous piano hinge.
  - b. Latch/Lock: Cylinder lock-operated cam latch, two keys for each unit.

**2.03 FABRICATION**

- A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.
- B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
- C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access panels to types of supports indicated.
  1. Exposed Flanges: Nominal 1 inch wide around perimeter of frame.
  2. Provide mounting holes in frames for attachment of units to metal or wood framing.
  3. Provide mounting holes in frame for attachment of masonry anchors.
- D. Latching Mechanisms: Furnish number required to hold doors in flush, smooth plane when closed.
- E. Extruded Aluminum: After fabrication, apply manufacturer's standard protective coating on aluminum that will come in contact with concrete.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that rough openings are correctly sized and located.

**3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install frames plumb and level in openings. Secure rigidly in place. Assure that plane of face panels aligned with adjacent finish surfaces.
- C. Position units to provide convenient access to concealed equipment when necessary.

**3.03 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Adjust doors and hardware after installation for proper operation.
- B. Remove and replace doors and frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise damaged.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 4313**  
**ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Aluminum-framed storefront, with vision glass.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 07 2500 - Weather Barriers: Sealing framing to weather barrier installed on adjacent construction.
- B. Section 07 9200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints between frames and adjacent construction.
- C. Section 08 8000 - Glazing: Glass and glazing accessories.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AAMA CW-10 - Care and Handling of Architectural Aluminum From Shop to Site; 2015.
- B. AAMA 609 & 610 - Cleaning and Maintenance Guide for Architecturally Finished Aluminum (Combined Document); 2015.
- C. AAMA 611 - Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum; 2012.
- D. ASTM A36/A36M - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel; 2014.
- E. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2015.
- F. ASTM B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes; 2014.
- G. SSPC-Paint 20 - Zinc-Rich Primers (Type I, "Inorganic," and Type II, "Organic"); 2002 (Ed. 2004).

**1.05 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordinate with installation of other components that comprise the exterior enclosure.
- B. Preinstallation Meeting: Conduct a preinstallation meeting one week before starting work of this section; require attendance by all affected installers.

**1.06 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. General Performance: Aluminum-framed systems shall withstand the effects of the following performance requirements without exceeding performance criteria or failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction:
  1. Movements of supporting structure indicated on Drawings including, but not limited to, story drift and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
  2. Dimensional tolerances of building frame and other adjacent construction.
  3. Failure includes the following:
    - a. Deflection exceeding specified limits.
    - b. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
    - c. Framing members transferring stresses, including those caused by thermal and structural movements to glazing.
    - d. Glazing-to-glazing contact.
    - e. Noise or vibration created by wind and by thermal and structural movements.
    - f. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
    - g. Sealant failure.
    - h. Failure of operating units.

**08 4313**  
**ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS**

- B. Delegated Design: Design aluminum-framed systems, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Structural Loads:
  - 1. Wind Loads:
    - a. Maximum Wind Speed Vult: 145 mph.
    - b. Nominal Wind Speed: 130 mph
    - c. Occupancy Category: III
    - d. Exposure Category: B.
  - 2. Seismic Design Category: D.
  - 3. Seismic Importance Factor: 1.25
- D. Deflection of Framing Members:
  - 1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to edge of glass in a direction perpendicular to glass plane shall not exceed L/175 of the glass edge length for each individual glazing lite or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch, whichever is less.
  - 2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to L/360 of clear span or 1/8 inch, whichever is smaller.
- E. Structural-Test Performance: Provide aluminum-framed systems tested according to ASTM E 330 as follows:
  - 1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, systems do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
  - 2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, systems, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, and permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
  - 3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not fewer than 10 seconds.
- F. Air Infiltration: Provide aluminum-framed systems with maximum air leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas of 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. of fixed wall area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.
- G. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Provide aluminum-framed systems that do not evidence water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to ASTM E 331 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.
- H. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: Provide aluminum-framed systems that do not evidence water leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to AAMA 501.1 under dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.
  - 1. Maximum Water Leakage: No uncontrolled water penetrating aluminum-framed systems or water appearing on systems' normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water leakage does not include water controlled by flashing and gutters that is drained to exterior and water that cannot damage adjacent materials or finishes.
- I. Thermal Movements: Provide aluminum-framed systems that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
  - 2. Test Performance: No buckling; stress on glass; sealant failure; excess stress on framing, anchors, and fasteners; or reduction of performance when tested according to AAMA 501.5.
    - a. High Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: That which produces an exterior metal-surface temperature of 180 deg F.
    - b. Low Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: 0 deg F.

**08 4313**  
**ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS**

3. Interior Ambient-Air Temperature: 75 deg F.
- J. Condensation Resistance: Provide aluminum-framed systems with fixed glazing and framing areas having condensation-resistance factor (CRF) of not less than 45 when tested according to AAMA 1503.
- K. Thermal Conductance: Provide aluminum-framed systems with fixed glazing and framing areas having an average U-factor of not more than 0.57 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F when tested according to AAMA 1503.
- L. Sound Transmission: Provide aluminum-framed systems with fixed glazing and framing areas having the following sound-transmission characteristics:
  1. Sound Transmission Class (STC): Minimum 30 STC when tested for laboratory sound transmission loss according to ASTM E 90 and determined by ASTM E 413.

**1.07 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Product Data: Provide component dimensions, describe components within assembly, anchorage and fasteners, glass and infill, internal drainage details .
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate system dimensions, framed opening requirements and tolerances, affected related Work, expansion and contraction joint location and details, and field welding required. Provide plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.
  1. Include details of provisions for system expansion and contraction and for drainage of moisture in the system to the exterior.
  2. For entrance doors, include hardware schedule and indicate operating hardware types, functions, quantities, and locations.
- D. Samples: Submit two samples 12 x 12 inches in size illustrating finished aluminum surface, glass, glazing materials.
- E. Other Action Submittals:
  1. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of entrance door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate final entrance door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of entrance door hardware.
  - F. Delegated-Design Submittal: For aluminum-framed systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
    1. Detail fabrication and assembly of aluminum-framed systems.
    2. Include design calculations.
- G. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- H. Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed systems to include in maintenance manuals.
- I. Design Data: Provide framing member structural and physical characteristics, engineering calculations, and dimensional limitations.
- J. Hardware Schedule: Complete itemization of each item of hardware to be provided for each door, cross-referenced to door identification numbers in Contract Documents.
- K. Warranty: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

**1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Designer Qualifications: Design structural support framing components under direct supervision of a Professional Structural Engineer experienced in design of this Work and licensed in Oregon.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of type specified and with at least three years of documented experience.

**08 4313**  
**ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS**

- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 699 for testing indicated.
- D. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for systems' aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.
  - 1. Do not revise intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If revisions are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- E. Source Limitations for Aluminum-Framed Systems: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.
- F. Structural-Sealant Glazing: Comply with ASTM C 1401, "Guide for Structural Sealant Glazing" for design and installation of structural-sealant-glazed systems.
- G. Structural-Sealant Joints: Design reviewed and approved by structural-sealant manufacturer.
- H. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
- I. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

**1.09 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Handle products of this section in accordance with AAMA CW-10.
- B. Protect finished aluminum surfaces with wrapping. Do not use adhesive papers or sprayed coatings that bond to aluminum when exposed to sunlight or weather.

**1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install sealants when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F. Maintain this minimum temperature during and 48 hours after installation.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of structural supports for aluminum-framed systems by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

**1.11 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Correct defective Work within a five year period after the Date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed systems that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
    - b. Noise or vibration caused by thermal movements.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
    - d. Adhesive or cohesive sealant failures.
    - e. Water leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas.
    - f. Failure of operating components.

**1.12 MAINTENANCE SERVICE**

- A. Entrance Door Hardware:
  - 1. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of entrance door hardware.

**08 4313**  
**ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS**

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 BASIS OF DESIGN -- FRAMING FOR MONOLITHIC GLAZING**

### **2.02 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Aluminum-Framed Storefront and Doors:
  - 1. Oldcastle Building Envelope; [www.obe.com](http://www.obe.com)
  - 2. EFCO Corporation; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.efcocorp.com/#sle](http://www.efcocorp.com/#sle).
  - 3. Kawneer North America; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.kawneer.com/#sle](http://www.kawneer.com/#sle).
  - 4. Vistawall Architectural Products; The Vistawall Group; a Bluescope Steel company.
  - 5. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Oldcastle Building Envelope; FG 3000 Storefront To match existing windows installed in 2018.
  - 1. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

### **2.03 STOREFRONT**

- A. Aluminum-Framed Storefront: Factory fabricated, factory finished aluminum framing members with infill, and related flashings, anchorage and attachment devices.
  - 1. Glazing Position: Centered (front to back).
  - 2. Finish: Class I natural anodized.
    - a. Factory finish all surfaces that will be exposed in completed assemblies.
    - b. Color: #40 Dark Bronze Anodized, see drawings.
  - 3. Fabrication: Joints and corners flush, hairline, and weatherproof, accurately fitted and secured; prepared to receive anchors and hardware; fasteners and attachments concealed from view; reinforced as required for imposed loads.
  - 4. Construction: Eliminate noises caused by wind and thermal movement, prevent vibration harmonics, and prevent "stack effect" in internal spaces.
  - 5. System Internal Drainage: Drain to the exterior by means of a weep drainage network any water entering joints, condensation occurring in glazing channel, and migrating moisture occurring within system.
  - 6. Expansion/Contraction: Provide for expansion and contraction within system components caused by cycling temperature range of 170 degrees F over a 12 hour period without causing detrimental effect to system components, anchorages, and other building elements.
  - 7. Movement: Allow for movement between storefront and adjacent construction, without damage to components or deterioration of seals.
  - 8. Perimeter Clearance: Minimize space between framing members and adjacent construction while allowing expected movement.

### **2.04 COMPONENTS**

- A. Aluminum Framing Members: Tubular aluminum sections, drainage holes and internal weep drainage system.
  - 1. Glazing Stops: Flush.
- B. Glazing: As specified in Section 08 8000.
  - 1. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard compression types; replaceable, molded or extruded, of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal.
  - 2. Spacers and Setting Blocks: Manufacturer's standard elastomeric type.
  - 3. Bond-Breaker Tape: Manufacturer's standard TFE-fluorocarbon or polyethylene material to which sealants will not develop adhesion.
  - 4. Glazing Sealants: At corner locations where shown, provide for structural-sealant-glazed systems, as recommended by manufacturer for joint type, and as follows:
    - a. Structural Sealant: ASTM C 1184, single-component neutral-curing silicone formulation that is compatible with system components with which it comes in contact, specifically formulated and tested for use as structural sealant and approved by a structural-sealant manufacturer for use in aluminum-framed systems indicated.

**08 4313**  
**ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS**

- 1) Provide sealants for use inside of the weatherproofing system that have a VOC content of 100 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- 2) Color: Clear

**2.05 MATERIALS**

- A. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M).
- B. Fasteners: Stainless steel.
- C. Exposed Flashings: Aluminum sheet, 20 gage, 0.032 inch minimum thickness; finish to match framing members.
- D. Concealed Flashings: Stainless steel, 26 gage, 0.0187 inch minimum thickness.
- E. Sill Flashing Sealant: Elastomeric, silicone or polyurethane, compatible with flashing material.
- F. Sealant for Setting Thresholds: Non-curing butyl type.
- G. Glazing Gaskets: Type to suit application to achieve weather, moisture, and air infiltration requirements.
- H. Glazing Accessories: As specified in Section 08 8000.
- I. Touch-Up Primer for Galvanized Steel Surfaces: SSPC-Paint 20, zinc rich.

**2.06 FINISHES**

- A. Class I Color Anodized Finish: AAMA 611 AA-M12C22A42 Integrally colored anodic coating not less than 0.7 mils thick.

**2.07 WINDOW AND STOREFRONT SILL PANS**

- A. Sill pans at all storefronts: Fabricate sill pans at storefront windows and door openings. Form sill flashing with  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch-high end dams. End dams ends and backs shall be folded, riveted, and solder welded to provide a complete seal. Fabricate from the following materials:
  1. Pre-Finished Galvanized Steel: 22-Gauge thick. Prefinished steel to match color of storefront.
  2. The exposed backs of sheet metal pans shall be painted to match the finish of the aluminum storefront.
  3. Not required at interior locations.

**2.08 ACCESSORY MATERIALS**

- A. Joint Sealants: For installation at perimeter of aluminum-framed systems, as specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
  1. Provide sealants for use inside of the weatherproofing system that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied, asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos; formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

**2.09 FABRICATION**

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Framing Members, General: Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
  1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
  2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
  3. Means to drain water passing joints, condensation within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.
  4. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.

**08 4313**  
**ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS**

5. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- E. Structural-Sealant-Glazed Framing Members: Include accommodations for using temporary support device to retain glazing in place while structural sealant cures.
- F. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.
  1. At exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
  2. At interior doors, provide silencers at stops to prevent metal-to-metal contact. Install three silencers on strike jamb of single-door frames and two silencers on head of frames for pairs of doors.
- G. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
  1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.
- H. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.
- I. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify dimensions, tolerances, and method of attachment with other work.
- B. Verify that wall openings and adjoining air and vapor seal materials are ready to receive work of this section.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install wall system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Attach to structure to permit sufficient adjustment to accommodate construction tolerances and other irregularities.
- C. Provide alignment attachments and shims to permanently fasten system to building structure. Shim storefront system as required with plastic U-shaped shim material.
- D. Align assembly plumb and level, free of warp or twist. Maintain assembly dimensional tolerances, aligning with adjacent work.
- E. Metal Protection:
  1. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or applying sealant or tape, or by installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
  2. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- F. Provide thermal isolation where components penetrate or disrupt building insulation.
- G. Install sill flashings with integral end dams. Seal to adjacent work to form water tight dam.
- H. Where fasteners penetrate sill flashings, make watertight by seating and sealing fastener heads to sill flashing.
- I. Pack fibrous insulation in shim spaces at perimeter of assembly to maintain continuity of thermal barrier.

**08 4313**  
**ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS**

- J. Install perimeter joint sealants as specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.
- K. In addition to the perimeter joint sealants provide a continuous sealant bead and backer rod at the heads and jambs centered in the aluminum section. Sealant shall adhere to continuous Snap-In Filler and the metal flashings.
- L. Install glazing as specified in Division 8 Section "Glazing."
  - 1. Structural-Sealant Glazing:
    - a. Prepare surfaces that will contact structural sealant according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to ensure compatibility and adhesion. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.
    - b. Install weatherseal sealant according to Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" and according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to produce weatherproof joints. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- M. Touch-up minor damage to factory applied finish; replace components that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

### **3.03 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 0.06 inches every 3 ft non-cumulative or 1/16 inches per 10 ft, whichever is less.
- B. Maximum Misalignment of Two Adjoining Members Abutting in Plane: 1/32 inch.
- C. Diagonal Measurements: Limit difference between diagonal measurements to 1/8 inch.

### **3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. See Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements, for independent testing and inspection requirements. Inspection will monitor quality of installation and glazing.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections.
- C. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of representative areas to determine compliance of installed systems with specified requirements shall take place as follows and in successive phases as indicated on Drawings. Do not proceed with installation of the next area until test results for previously completed areas show compliance with requirements.
  - 1. Structural-Sealant Compatibility and Adhesion: Structural sealant shall be tested according to recommendations in ASTM C 1401.
    - a. Destructive Test Method A, "Hand Pull Tab (Destructive)," in ASTM C 1401, Appendix X2, shall be used.
      - 1) A minimum of two areas on each building face shall be tested.
      - 2) Repair installation areas damaged by testing.
  - 2. Air Infiltration: Areas shall be tested for air leakage of 1.5 times the rate specified for laboratory testing under "Performance Requirements" Article, but not more than 0.09 cfm/sq. ft. of fixed wall area when tested according to ASTM E 783 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.
  - 3. Water Penetration: Areas shall be tested according to ASTM E 1105 at a minimum uniform static-air-pressure difference of 0.67 times the static-air-pressure difference specified for laboratory testing under "Performance Requirements" Article, but not less than 4.18 lbf/sq. ft., and shall not evidence water penetration.
  - 4. Water Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, a minimum area of 75 feet by 1 story of aluminum-framed systems designated by Architect shall be tested according to AAMA 501.2 and shall not evidence water penetration.
- D. Repair or remove work if test results and inspections indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

**08 4313**  
**ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS**

- F. Aluminum-framed assemblies will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

**3.05 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust operating hardware and sash for smooth operation.
- B. For entrance doors accessible to people with disabilities, adjust closers to provide a 3-second closer sweep period for doors to move from a 70-degree open position to 3 inches from the latch, measured to the leading door edge.

**3.06 CLEANING**

- A. Remove protective material from pre-finished aluminum surfaces.
- B. Wash down surfaces with a solution of mild detergent in warm water, applied with soft, clean wiping cloths. Take care to remove dirt from corners. Wipe surfaces clean.
- C. Upon completion of installation, thoroughly clean aluminum surfaces in accordance with AAMA 609 & 610.

**3.07 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed products from damage until Date of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 7100**  
**DOOR HARDWARE**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Hardware for wood and hollow metal doors.
- B. Hardware for fire-rated doors.
- C. Electrically operated and controlled hardware.
- D. Lock cylinders for doors that hardware is specified in other sections.
- E. Thresholds.
- F. Seals and door gaskets.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 08 1113 - Hollow Metal Doors and Frames.
- B. Section 08 1416 - Flush Wood Doors.
- C. Division 26 Sections for connections to electrical power system and for low-voltage wiring work.
- D. Section 28 1300 - Access Control : Electronic access control devices.
- E. Section 28 3100 - Fire Detection and Alarm: Electrical connection to activate door closers and release magnetic holders.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. 36 CFR 1191 - Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines; current edition.
- B. ADA Standards - Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Standards for Accessible Design; 2010.
- C. BHMA A156.1 - American National Standard for Butts and Hinges; 2013.
- D. BHMA A156.6 - American National Standard for Architectural Door Trim; 2010.
- E. BHMA A156.7 - American National Standard for Template Hinge Dimensions; 2014.
- F. BHMA A156.8 - American National Standard for Door Controls - Overhead Stops and Holders; 2010.
- G. BHMA A156.15 - American National Standard for Release Devices - Closer Holder, Electromagnetic and Electromechanical; 2011.
- H. BHMA A156.17 - American National Standard for Self Closing Hinges & Pivots; 2014.
- I. BHMA A156.21 - American National Standard for Thresholds; 2014.
- J. BHMA A156.22 - American National Standard for Door Gasketing and Edge Seal Systems, Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association; 2012.
- K. BHMA A156.23 - American National Standard for Electromagnetic Locks; 2010.
- L. BHMA A156.31 - American National Standard for Electric Strikes and Frame Mounted Actuators; 2013.
- M. BHMA A156.115 - American National Standard for Hardware Preparation in Steel Doors and Steel Frames; 2014.
- N. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities; 2009.
- O. NFPA 80 - Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives; 2016.
- P. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code; 2015.
- Q. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory; current listings at database.ul.com.

**08 7100  
DOOR HARDWARE**

R. UL 10C - Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

**1.05 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordinate the manufacture, fabrication, and installation of products that door hardware will be installed upon.
- B. Furnish templates for door and frame preparation to manufacturers and fabricators of products requiring internal reinforcement for door hardware.
- C. Convey Owner's keying requirements to manufacturers.
- D. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene a preinstallation meeting one week prior to commencing work of this section; require attendance by all affected installers.
- E. Sequence installation to ensure utility connections are achieved in an orderly and expeditious manner.

**1.06 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's catalog literature for each type of hardware, marked to clearly show products to be furnished for this project.
- C. Hardware Schedule: Detailed listing of each item of hardware to be installed on each door. Use door numbering scheme as included in the Contract Documents. Identify electrically operated items and include power requirements.
- D. Shop Drawings: Details of electrified door hardware, indicating the following:
  1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring. By Access Control Provider.
  2. Detail interface between electrified door hardware and access control, security, building control system.
  3. Operation Narrative: Describe the operation of doors controlled by electrified door hardware.
- E. Samples: Provide the following prior to preparation of hardware schedule:
  1. Submit one (1) sample of hinge, latchset, lockset, and closer illustrating style, color, and finish.
  2. Samples will be returned to supplier.
- F. Maintenance Data: Include data on operating hardware, lubrication requirements, and inspection procedures related to preventative maintenance.
  1. Submit manufacturer's parts lists and templates.
  2. Bitting List: List of combinations as furnished.
- G. Warranty: Submit manufacturer's warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- H. Other Action Submittals:
  1. Door Hardware Sets: Prepared by or under the supervision of Hardware Supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate the final door hardware sets with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.
    - a. Format: Comply with scheduling sequence and vertical format in DHI's "Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule." Double space entries, and number and date each page.
    - b. Format: Use same scheduling sequence and format and use same door numbers as in the Contract Documents.
    - c. Content: Include the following information:
      - 1) Identification number, location, hand, fire rating, and material of each door and frame.
      - 2) Type, style, function, size, quantity, and finish of each door hardware item. Include description and function of each lockset and exit device.

**08 7100**  
**DOOR HARDWARE**

- 3) Complete designations of every item required for each door or opening including name and manufacturer.
- 4) Fastenings and other pertinent information.
- 5) Location of each door hardware set, cross-referenced to Drawings, both on floor plans and in door and frame schedule.
- 6) Explanation of abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
- 7) Mounting locations for door hardware.
- 8) Door and frame sizes and materials.
- 9) Description of each electrified door hardware function, including location, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems.
  - (a) Sequence of Operation: Include description of component functions that occur in the following situations: authorized person wants to enter; authorized person wants to exit; unauthorized person wants to enter; unauthorized person wants to exit.
- 10) List of related door devices specified in other Sections for each door and frame.

d. Submittal Sequence: Submit the final door hardware sets at earliest possible date, particularly where approval of the door hardware sets must precede fabrication of other work that is critical in Project construction schedule. Include Product Data, Samples, Shop Drawings of other work affected by door hardware, and other information essential to the coordinated review of the door hardware sets.

2. Keying Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Hardware Supplier, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key set to unique door designations.

I. Maintenance Materials and Tools: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.

1. See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
2. Extra Lock Cylinders: Ten for each master keyed group.
3. Tools: One set of all special wrenches or tools applicable to each different or special hardware component, whether supplied by the hardware component manufacturer or not.

#### **1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by lock manufacturer.
  1. Installer's responsibilities include supplying and installing door hardware and providing a qualified Architectural Hardware Consultant available during the course of the Work to consult with Contractor, Architect, and Owner about door hardware and keying.
  2. Installer shall have warehousing facilities in Project's vicinity.
  3. Scheduling Responsibility: Preparation of door hardware and keying schedules.
  4. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for electrified door hardware, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.
- B. Architectural Hardware Supplier Qualifications: A person who is currently certified by DHI as an Architectural Hardware Supplier and who is experienced in providing consulting services for door hardware installations that are comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project.
  1. Electrified Door Hardware Supplier Qualifications: A qualified Architectural Hardware Consultant who is experienced in providing consulting services for electrified door hardware installations.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type and variety of door hardware from a single manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Provide electrified door hardware from same manufacturer as mechanical door hardware, unless otherwise indicated. Manufacturers that perform electrical modifications and that are listed by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction are acceptable.

**08 7100  
DOOR HARDWARE**

- D. Electrified Door Hardware: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- E. Keying Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination." In addition to Owner, Contractor, and Architect, conference participants shall also include Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant. Incorporate keying conference decisions into final keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Function of building, flow of traffic, purpose of each area, degree of security required, and plans for future expansion.
  - 2. Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
  - 3. Requirements for key control system.
  - 4. Address for delivery of keys.
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to electrified door hardware including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Inspect and discuss electrical roughing-in and other preparatory work performed by other trades.
  - 2. Review sequence of operation for each type of electrified door hardware.
  - 3. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 4. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.

**1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project site.
- B. Package hardware items individually; label and identify each package with door opening code to match hardware schedule.
- C. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to Owner.
- D. Deliver keys and permanent cores to Owner by registered mail or overnight package service.

**1.09 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.
    - b. Faulty operation of operators and door hardware.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion, except as follows:
    - a. Exit Devices: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
    - b. Manual Closers: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

**1.10 MAINTENANCE SERVICE**

- A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.
- B. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide six months' full maintenance by skilled employees of door hardware Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper door hardware operation. Provide parts and supplies same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original products.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 DOOR HARDWARE - GENERAL

- A. Provide hardware specified or required to make doors fully functional, compliant with applicable codes, and secure to the extent indicated.
- B. Provide items of a single type of the same model by the same manufacturer.
- C. Provide products that comply with the following:
  1. Applicable provisions of federal, state, and local codes.
  2. Accessibility: ADA Standards and ICC A117.1.
  3. Applicable provisions of NFPA 101, Life Safety Code.
  4. Hardware Preparation for Steel Doors and Steel Frames: BHMA A156.115.
  5. Products Requiring Electrical Connection: Listed and classified by UL (DIR) as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.
- D. Electrically Operated and/or Controlled Hardware: Provide all power supplies, power transfer hinges, relays, and interfaces required for proper operation; provide wiring between hardware and control components and to building power connection.
- E. Finishes: Identified in schedule.

### 2.02 LOCKS AND LATCHES

- A. Accessibility Requirements: Where indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply ANSI A117.1.
  1. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than 5 lbf.
- B. Latches and Locks for Means of Egress Doors: Comply with NFPA 101. Latches shall not require more than 15 lbf to release the latch. Locks shall not require use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.
- C. Locks: Provide a lock for every door, unless specifically indicated as not requiring locking.
  1. Trim: Provide lever handle or pull trim on outside of all locks unless specifically stated to have no outside trim.
  2. Lock Cylinders: Provide key access on outside of all locks unless specifically stated to have no locking or no outside trim.
  3. Backset: 2-3/4 inches, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Electrically Operated Locks: Fail secure unless otherwise indicated. BHMA A156.25.
- E. Lock Cylinders: Manufacturer's standard tumbler type, six-pin standard core.
  1. Provide cams and/or tailpieces as required for locking devices required.
- F. Keying: Grand master keyed.
  1. Key to existing keying system.
- G. Latches: Provide a latch for every door that is not required to lock, unless specifically indicated "push/pull" or "not required to latch".
- H. Strikes: Manufacturer's standard strike with strike box for each latchbolt or lock bolt, with curved lip extended to protect frame.
  1. Extra-Long-Lip Strikes: For locks used on frames with applied wood casing trim.

### 2.03 HINGES

- A. Hinges: Provide hinges on every swinging door.
  1. Provide five-knuckle full mortise butt hinges unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Provide hinges in the quantities indicated.
  3. Provide non-removable pins on exterior outswinging doors.
  4. Where electrified hardware is mounted in door leaf, provide power transfer hinges.
- B. Butt Hinges: Comply with BHMA A156.1 and A156.7; heavy weight, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Provide hinge width required to clear surrounding trim.

**08 7100**  
**DOOR HARDWARE**

C. Quantity of Hinges Per Door:

1. Doors up to 60 inches High: Two hinges.
2. Doors From 60 inches High up to 90 inches High: Three hinges.
3. Doors 90 inches High up to 120 inches High: Four hinges.
4. Doors over 120 inches High: One additional hinge per each additional 30 inches in height.
5. Dutch Doors: Two hinges each leaf.

**2.04 PIVOTS**

A. Pivots: Comply with BHMA A156.4 and BHMA A156.17.

**2.05 PUSH/PULLS**

A. Push/Pulls: Comply with BHMA A156.6.

1. Provide push and pull on doors not specified to have lockset, latchset, exit device, or auxiliary lock.
2. On solid doors, provide matching push plate and pull plate on opposite faces.

**2.06 CYLINDRICAL LOCKSETS**

A. Cylinders: Manufacturer's standard tumbler type, constructed from brass or bronze, stainless steel, or nickel silver.

B. Permanent Cores: Manufacturer's standard; finish face to match lockset; complying with the following:

1. Removable Cores: Core insert, removable by use of a special key; for use only with core manufacturer's cylinder and door hardware.

C. Construction Keying: Comply with the following:

1. Construction Master Keys: Provide cylinders with feature that permits voiding of construction keys without cylinder removal. Provide 10 construction master keys.
2. Construction Cores: Provide construction cores that are replaceable by permanent cores. Provide 10 construction master keys.
  - a. Replace construction cores with permanent cores as indicated in keying schedule.

D. Manufacturer: Same manufacturer as for locks and latches.

**2.07 MAGNETIC LOCKS**

A. Magnetic Locks: Complying with BHMA A156.23 - Grade 1, and UL 10C listed for fire doors.

**2.08 ELECTRIC STRIKES**

A. Electric Strikes: Complying with BHMA A156.31 and UL (DIR) listed as a Burglary-Resistant Electric Door Strike; style to suit locks.

B. General: Use fail-secure electric strikes with fire-rated devices.

C. Manufacturers - Electric Strikes:

1. Assa Abloy Brands; HES: [www.assaabloydss.com](http://www.assaabloydss.com).
2. Von Duprin.

**2.09 EXIT DEVICES**

A. Exit Devices: BHMA A156.3

B. Accessibility Requirements: Where handles, pulls, latches, locks, and other operating devices are indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with ANSI A117.1.

1. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than 5 lbf.

C. Exit Devices for Means of Egress Doors: Comply with NFPA 101. Exit devices shall not require more than 15 lbf to release the latch. Locks shall not require use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.

D. Panic Exit Devices: Listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305.

**08 7100**  
**DOOR HARDWARE**

- E. Fire Exit Devices: Devices complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire and panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305 and NFPA 252.
- F. Removable Mullions: BHMA A156.3.
- G. Fire-Exit Removable Mullions: Provide removable mullions for use with fire exit devices complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire and panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305 and NFPA 252. Mullions shall be used only with exit devices for which they have been tested.
- H. Dummy Push Bar: Nonfunctioning push bar matching functional push bar.
  - 1. Operation: Rigid.
- I. Outside Trim: Pull with cylinder; material and finish to match locksets, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Match design for locksets and latchsets, unless otherwise indicated.

**2.10 OPERATING TRIM**

- A. Standard: BHMA A156.6.

**2.11 CLOSERS**

- A. Accessibility Requirements: Where handles, pulls, latches, locks, and other operating devices are indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply ANSI A117.1.
  - 1. Comply with the following maximum opening-force requirements:
    - a. Interior, Non-Fire-Rated Hinged Doors: 5 lbf applied perpendicular to door.
    - b. Fire Doors: Minimum opening force allowable by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Door Closers for Means of Egress Doors: Comply with NFPA 101. Door closers shall not require more than 30 lbf to set door in motion and not more than 15 lbf to open door to minimum required width.
- C. Hold-Open Closers/Detectors: Coordinate and interface integral smoke detector and closer device with fire alarm system.
- D. Power-Assist Closers: As specified in "Door Hardware Schedule."
- E. Size of Units: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for size of door closers depending on size of door, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use. Provide factory-sized closers, adjustable to meet field conditions and requirements for opening force.
- F. Surface Closers: BHMA A156.4. Provide type of arm required for closer to be located on non-public side of door, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Manufacturers - Surface Mounted Closers:
  - 1. LCN, an Allegion brand; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.allegion.com/us/#sle](http://www.allegion.com/us/#sle).

**2.12 STOPS AND HOLDERS**

- A. Stops: Complying with BHMA A156.8; provide a stop for every swinging door, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide wall stops, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. If wall stops are not practical, due to configuration of room or furnishings, provide overhead stop.
  - 3. Stop is not required if positive stop feature is specified for door closer; positive stop feature of door closer is not an acceptable substitute for a stop unless specifically so stated.
- B. Overhead Holders/Stops: BHMA A156.8.
- C. Magnetic Holder/Releases: Complying with BHMA A156.15; fail safe; doors release to close automatically when electrical current is interrupted; holding force: 25 to 40 pounds-force.
- D. Silencers for Metal Door Frames: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1; neoprene or rubber, minimum diameter 1/2 inch; fabricated for drilled-in application to frame.

**08 7100  
DOOR HARDWARE**

**2.13 GASKETING AND THRESHOLDS**

- A. Gaskets: Complying with BHMA A156.22.
  - 1. On each door in smoke partition, provide smoke gaskets; top, sides, and meeting stile of pairs. If fire/smoke partitions are not indicated on drawings, provide smoke gaskets on each door identified as a "smoke door" and 20-minute rated fire doors.
  - 2. On each exterior door, provide weatherstripping gaskets, unless otherwise indicated; top, sides, and meeting stiles of pairs.
    - a. Where exterior door is also required to have fire or smoke rating, provide gaskets functioning as both smoke and weather seals.
    - b. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.
    - c. Door Bottoms: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.
  - 3. On each exterior door, provide door bottom sweep, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. On doors indicated as "sound-rated", "acoustical", or with an STC rating, provide sound-rated gaskets and automatic door bottom; make gaskets completely continuous, do not cut or notch gaskets for installation.
- B. Air Leakage: Not to exceed 0.50 cfm per foot of crack length for gasketing other than for smoke control, as tested according to ASTM E 283.
- C. Fire-Labeled Gasketing: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252.
  - 1. Test Pressure: Test at atmospheric pressure.
- D. Sound-Rated Gasketing: Assemblies that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency, for sound ratings indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 1408.
- E. Replaceable Seal Strips: Provide only those units where resilient or flexible seal strips are easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by manufacturer.
- F. Gasketing Materials: ASTM D 2000 and AAMA 701/702.
- G. Thresholds: Complying with BHMA A156.21.
  - 1. At each exterior door, provide a threshold unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Field cut threshold to frame for tight fit.
- H. Fasteners At Exterior Locations: Non-corroding.
- I. Accessibility Requirements: Where thresholds are indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with ANSI A117.1.
  - 1. Bevel raised thresholds with a slope of not more than 1:2. Provide thresholds not more than 1/2 inch high.
- J. Thresholds for Means of Egress Doors: Comply with NFPA 101. Maximum 1/2 inch high.

**2.14 FABRICATION**

- A. Manufacturer's Nameplate: Do not provide products that have manufacturer's name or trade name displayed in a visible location except in conjunction with required fire-rated labels and as otherwise approved by Architect.
  - 1. Manufacturer's identification is permitted on rim of lock cylinders only.
- B. Base Metals: Produce door hardware units of base metal, fabricated by forming method indicated, using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper, and hardness. Furnish metals of a quality equal to or greater than that of specified door hardware units and BHMA A156.18. Do not furnish manufacturer's standard materials or forming methods if different from specified standard.
- C. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates generally prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws according to commercially recognized industry standards for application intended, except aluminum

**08 7100  
DOOR HARDWARE**

fasteners are not permitted. Provide Phillips flat-head screws with finished heads to match surface of door hardware, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Concealed Fasteners: For door hardware units that are exposed when door is closed, except for units already specified with concealed fasteners. Do not use through bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed unless it is the only means of securely attaching the door hardware. Where through bolts are used on hollow door and frame construction, provide sleeves for each through bolt.
2. Steel Machine or Wood Screws: For the following fire-rated applications:
  - a. Mortise hinges to doors.
  - b. Strike plates to frames.
  - c. Closers to doors and frames.
3. Steel Through Bolts: For the following fire-rated applications unless door blocking is provided:
  - a. Surface hinges to doors.
  - b. Closers to doors and frames.
  - c. Surface-mounted exit devices.
4. Spacers or Sex Bolts: For through bolting of hollow-metal doors.
5. Fasteners for Wood Doors: Comply with requirements in DHI WDHS.2, "Recommended Fasteners for Wood Doors."

## **2.15 FINISHES**

- A. Standard: BHMA A156.18, as indicated in door hardware sets.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that doors and frames are ready to receive work; labeled, fire-rated doors and frames are present and properly installed, and dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings.
- B. Verify that electric power is available to power operated devices and of the correct characteristics.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Steel Doors and Frames: Comply with DHI A115 Series.
  1. Surface-Applied Door Hardware: Drill and tap doors and frames according to ANSI A250.6.
- B. Wood Doors: Comply with DHI A115-W Series.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install hardware in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and applicable codes.
- B. Use templates provided by hardware item manufacturer.
- C. Do not install surface mounted items until finishes applied to substrate are complete.
- D. Install hardware on fire-rated doors and frames in accordance with code and NFPA 80.
- E. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights indicated as follows unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.
  1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: DHI's "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."

**08 7100  
DOOR HARDWARE**

2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: DHI's "Recommended Locations for Builders' Hardware for Custom Steel Doors and Frames."
3. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.3, "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."
- F. Install each door hardware item to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work specified in Division 9 Sections. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.
  1. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation.
  2. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.
- G. Boxed Power Supplies: Locate power supplies as indicated or, if not indicated, above accessible ceilings. Verify location with Architect.
  1. Configuration: Provide one power supply for each door opening.
  2. Configuration: Provide the least number of power supplies required to adequately serve doors with electrified door hardware.
- H. Set exterior door thresholds with full-width bead of elastomeric sealant on each point of contact with floor providing a continuous weather seal; anchor thresholds with stainless steel countersunk screws.

**3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Field inspection and testing will be performed under provisions of Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements.
- B. Provide an Architectural Hardware Consultant to inspect installation and certify that hardware and installation has been furnished and installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and as specified.

**3.05 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust work under provisions of Section 01 7000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements.
- B. Adjust hardware for smooth operation.
- C. Adjust gasketing for complete, continuous seal; replace if unable to make complete seal.
- D. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.
  1. Spring Hinges: Adjust to achieve positive latching when door is allowed to close freely from an open position of 30 degrees.
  2. Electric Strikes: Adjust horizontal and vertical alignment of keeper to properly engage lock bolt.
  3. Door Closers: Unless otherwise required by authorities having jurisdiction, adjust sweep period so that, from an open position of 70 degrees, the door will take at least 3 seconds to move to a point 3 inches from the latch, measured to the leading edge of the door.
- E. Occupancy Adjustment: Approximately six months after date of Substantial Completion, Installer shall examine and readjust, including adjusting operating forces, each item of door hardware as necessary to ensure function of doors, door hardware, and electrified door hardware.

**3.06 CLEANING**

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by hardware installation. Clean finished hardware per manufacturer's instructions after final adjustments has been made. Replace items that cannot be cleaned to manufacturer's level of finish quality at no additional cost.

**08 7100  
DOOR HARDWARE**

- B. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish.

**3.07 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect finished Work under provisions of Section 01 7000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements.
- B. Do not permit adjacent work to damage hardware or finish.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure that door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

**3.08 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain door hardware and door hardware finishes. Refer to Division 1 Section "Demonstration and Training."

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 8000**  
**GLAZING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Insulating glass units.
- B. Glazing units.
- C. Glazing compounds and accessories.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 07 2500 - Weather Barriers.
- B. Section 07 9200 - Joint Sealants: Sealants for other than glazing purposes.
- C. Section 08 1113 - Hollow Metal Doors and Frames: Glazed lites in doors and borrowed lites.
- D. Section 08 1416 - Flush Wood Doors: Glazed lites in doors.
- E. Section 08 4313 - Aluminum-Framed Storefronts: Glazing furnished as part of storefront assembly.
- F. Section 08 8300 - Mirrors.
- G. Section 10 2800 - TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES: Mirrors.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. 16 CFR 1201 - Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials; current edition.
- B. ANSI Z97.1 - American National Standard for Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings, Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Test; 2010.
- C. ASCE 7 - Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures; 2010, with 2013 Supplements and Errata.
- D. ASTM C864 - Standard Specification for Dense Elastomeric Compression Seal Gaskets, Setting Blocks, and Spacers; 2005 (Reapproved 2011).
- E. ASTM C1036 - Standard Specification for Flat Glass; 2011.
- F. ASTM C1048 - Standard Specification for Heat-Strengthened and Fully Tempered Flat Glass; 2012.
- G. ASTM C1172 - Standard Specification for Laminated Architectural Flat Glass; 2014.
- H. ASTM C1193 - Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants; 2016.
- I. ASTM E2190 - Standard Specification for Insulating Glass Unit Performance and Evaluation; 2010.
- J. GANA (SM) - GANA Sealant Manual; 2008.

**1.05 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Manufacturers of Glass Products: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.
- C. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit that contains dehydrated air or a specified gas.
- D. Deterioration of Coated Glass: Defects developed from normal use that are attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for

maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in metallic coating.

E. Deterioration of Insulating Glass: Failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.

## **1.06 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

A. General: Provide glazing systems capable of withstanding normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, and installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.

B. Glass Design: Glass thickness designations indicated are minimums and are for detailing only. Confirm glass thicknesses by analyzing Project loads and in-service conditions. Provide glass lites in the thickness designations indicated for various size openings, but not less than thicknesses and in strengths (annealed or heat treated) required to meet or exceed the following criteria:

1. Glass Thicknesses: Select minimum glass thicknesses to comply with ASTM E 1300, according to the following requirements:
  - a. Design Wind Loads: Determine design wind loads applicable to Project from basic wind speed indicated in miles per hour at 33 feet above grade, according to ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures": Section 6.5, "Method 2-Analytical Procedure," based on mean roof heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
    - 1) Maximum Wind Speed Vult: 145 mph.
    - 2) Nominal Wind Speed: 130 mph.
    - 3) Importance Factor: 1.25
    - 4) Exposure Category: B.
  - b. Probability of Breakage for Vertical Glazing: 8 lites per 1000 for lites set vertically or not more than 15 degrees off vertical and under wind action.
    - 1) Load Duration: 60 seconds or less.
  - c. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For the following types of glass supported on all 4 edges, provide thickness required that limits center deflection at design wind pressure to 1/50 times the short side length or 3/4 inch, whichever is less.
    - 1) For monolithic-glass lites heat treated to resist wind loads.
    - 2) For insulating glass.
    - 3) For laminated-glass lites.
  - d. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: Not less than 1/4 inch.
  - e. Thickness of Tinted and Heat-Absorbing Glass: Provide the same thickness for each tint color indicated throughout Project.
- C. Thermal Movements: Provide glazing that allows for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures acting on glass framing members and glazing components. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- D. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified based on manufacturer's published test data, as determined according to procedures indicated below:
  1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 1/4 inch.
  2. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
  3. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.

**08 8000  
GLAZING**

4. Center-of-Glass Values: Based on using LBL-44789 WINDOW 5.0 computer program for the following methodologies:
  - a. U-Factors: NFRC 100 expressed as Btu/ sq. ft. x h x deg F.
  - b. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: NFRC 200.
  - c. Solar Optical Properties: NFRC 300.

**1.07 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Product Data on Insulating Glass Unit, Glazing Unit, and Plastic Sheet Glazing Unit Glazing Types: Provide structural, physical and environmental characteristics, size limitations, special handling and installation requirements.
- C. Product Data on Glazing Compounds and Accessories: Provide chemical, functional, and environmental characteristics, limitations, special application requirements. Identify available colors.
- D. Samples: Submit two samples 12 by 12 inch in size of glass units.
  1. Each color of tinted float glass.
  2. Coated vision glass.
  3. Insulating glass for each designation indicated.
  4. For each color (except black) of exposed glazing sealant indicated.
- E. Glazing Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings for glazed openings in preparing a schedule listing glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location.
- F. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that glass and glazing products meets or exceeds specified requirements.
- G. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of glass and glazing products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
  1. For solar-control low-e-coated glass, provide documentation demonstrating that manufacturer of coated glass is certified by coating manufacturer.
- H. Product Test Reports: For each of the following types of glazing products:
  1. Tinted float glass.
  2. Coated float glass.
  3. Insulating glass.
  4. Glazing sealants.
  5. Glazing gaskets.
- I. Warranty Documentation: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- J. Qualification Data: For installers.
- K. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.

**1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed glazing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project; whose work has resulted in glass installations with a record of successful in-service performance; and who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.
- B. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain the following through one source from a single manufacturer for each glass type.
- C. Source Limitations for Glass Sputter-Coated with Solar-Control Low-E Coatings: Where solar-control low-e coatings of a primary glass manufacturer that has established a certified fabricator program is specified, obtain sputter-coated solar-control low-e-coated glass in fabricated units from a manufacturer that is certified by coated-glass manufacturer.
- D. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain glazing accessories through one source from a single manufacturer for each product and installation method indicated.

- E. Glass Product Testing: Obtain glass test results for product test reports in "Submittals" Article from a qualified testing agency based on testing glass products.
  - 1. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
  - 2. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.
- F. Elastomeric Glazing Sealant Product Testing: Obtain sealant test results for product test reports in "Submittals" Article from a qualified testing agency based on testing current sealant formulations within a 36-month period.
  - 1. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
  - 2. Test elastomeric glazing sealants for compliance with requirements specified by reference to ASTM C 920, and where applicable, to other standard test methods.
- G. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Submit to elastomeric glazing sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of each glazing material type, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member that will contact or affect elastomeric glazing sealants:
  - 1. Use ASTM C 1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of glazing sealants to glass, tape sealants, gaskets, and glazing channel substrates.
  - 2. Submit not fewer than eight pieces of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, joint-sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
  - 3. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
  - 4. For materials failing tests, obtain sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures, including the use of specially formulated primers.
  - 5. Testing will not be required if elastomeric glazing sealant manufacturers submit data based on previous testing of current sealant products for adhesion to, and compatibility with, glazing materials matching those submitted.
- H. Safety Glazing Products: Comply with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201.
  - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, obtain safety glazing products permanently marked with certification label of the Safety Glazing Certification Council or another certification agency or manufacturer acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- I. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
  - 1. GANA Publications: GANA Laminated Division's "Laminated Glass Design Guide" and GANA's "Glazing Manual."
  - 2. IGMA Publication for Sloped Glazing: IGMA TB-3001, "Sloped Glazing Guidelines."
  - 3. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units."
- J. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of the following testing and inspecting agency:
  - 1. Insulating Glass Certification Council.
  - 2. Associated Laboratories, Inc.
- K. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

#### 1.09 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install glazing when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F.
- B. Maintain minimum ambient temperature before, during and 24 hours after installation of glazing compounds.

## 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions and as needed to prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. For insulating-glass units that will be exposed to substantial altitude changes, comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written recommendations for venting and sealing to avoid hermetic seal ruptures.

## 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Insulating Glass Units: Provide a ten (10) year manufacturer warranty to include coverage for seal failure, interpane dusting or misting, including replacement of failed units.
- C. Laminated Glass: Provide a ten (10) year manufacturer warranty to include coverage for delamination, including replacement of failed units.

# PART 2 PRODUCTS

## 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Float Glass Manufacturers:
  1. Cardinal Glass Industries; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.cardinalcorp.com/#sle](http://www.cardinalcorp.com/#sle).
  2. AFG Industries Inc.
  3. Pilkington North America Inc; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.pilkington.com/na](http://www.pilkington.com/na).
  4. PPG Industries, Inc: [www.ppgideascapes.com](http://www.ppgideascapes.com).
- B. Laminated Glass Manufacturers:
  1. AFG Industries Inc.
  2. Cardinal Glass Industries; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.cardinalcorp.com/#sle](http://www.cardinalcorp.com/#sle).
  3. Pilkington North America Inc: [www.pilkington.com/na](http://www.pilkington.com/na).
  4. PPG Industries, Inc: [www.ppgideascapes.com](http://www.ppgideascapes.com).

## 2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS - EXTERIOR GLAZING ASSEMBLIES

- A. Provide type and thickness of exterior glazing assemblies to support assembly dead loads, and to withstand live loads caused by positive and negative wind pressure acting normal to plane of glass.
  1. Comply with ASTM E1300 for design load resistance of glass type, thickness, dimensions, and maximum lateral deflection of supported glass.
  2. Seismic Loads: Design and size glazing components to withstand seismic loads and sway displacement in accordance with the requirements of ASCE 7.
  3. Provide glass edge support system sufficiently stiff to limit the lateral deflection of supported glass edges to less than 1/175 of their lengths under specified design load.
  4. Glass thicknesses listed are minimum.
- B. Vapor Retarder and Air Barrier Seals: Provide completed assemblies that maintain continuity of building enclosure vapor retarder and air barrier.
  1. In conjunction with vapor retarder and joint sealer materials described in other sections.
- C. Thermal and Optical Performance: Provide glass products with performance properties as indicated. Performance properties are in accordance with manufacturer's published data as determined with the following procedures and/or test methods:
  1. Center of Glass U-Value: Comply with NFRC 100 using Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory (LBNL) WINDOW 6.3 computer program.
  2. Center of Glass Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC): Comply with NFRC 200 using Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory (LBNL) WINDOW 6.3 computer program.
  3. Solar Optical Properties: Comply with NFRC 300 test method.

## 2.03 GLASS MATERIALS

- A. Float Glass: Provide float glass based glazing unless noted otherwise.

**08 8000  
GLAZING**

1. Annealed Type: ASTM C1036, Type I - Transparent Flat, Class 1 - Clear, Quality-Q3.
2. Heat-Strengthened and Fully Tempered Types: ASTM C1048, Kind HS and FT.
  - a. Provide Kind HS (heat-strengthened) float glass in place of annealed float glass where needed to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading of individual glass lites and to comply with glass design requirements specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
  - b. Provide Kind FT (fully tempered) float glass in place of annealed or Kind HS (heat-strengthened) float glass where safety glass is indicated.
3. Fully Tempered Safety Glass: Complies with ANSI Z97.1 and 16 CFR 1201 criteria.
4. Impact Resistant Safety Glass: Complies with ANSI Z97.1 and 16 CFR 1201 criteria; Class B/Category I.
5. Tinted Type: ASTM C1036, Class 2 - Tinted, Quality-Q3, color and performance characteristics as indicated.
6. Thicknesses: As indicated; provide greater thickness as required for exterior glazing wind load design.

B. Laminated Glass: Float glass laminated in accordance with ASTM C1172.

1. Laminated Safety Glass: Complies with ANSI Z97.1 and 16 CFR 1201 test requirements for Category II.
2. Polyvinyl Butyral (PVB) Interlayer: 0.030 inch thick, minimum.
3. Laminating Process: Fabricate laminated glass to produce glass free of foreign substances and air or glass pockets.

**2.04 INSULATING GLASS UNITS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Any of the manufacturers specified for float glass.
- B. Insulating Glass Units: Types as indicated. Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, and complying with ASTM E 774 for Class CBA units and with requirements specified in this Article and in Part 2 "Insulating-Glass Units" Article.
  1. Durability: Certified by an independent testing agency to comply with ASTM E2190.
  2. Coated Glass: Comply with requirements of ASTM C1376 for pyrolytic (hard-coat) or magnetic sputter vapor deposition (soft-coat) type coatings on flat glass; coated vision glass, Kind CV; coated overhead glass, Kind CO; or coated spandrel glass, Kind CS.
  3. Provide Kind HS (heat-strengthened) float glass in place of annealed glass where needed to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading of individual glass lites and to comply with glass design requirements specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
  4. Provide Kind FT (fully tempered) glass lites where safety glass is required by code or indicated.
  5. Provide Kind FT (fully tempered) glass lites where safety glass is required by code or indicated.
  6. Overall Unit Thickness and Thickness of Each Lite: Dimensions indicated for insulating-glass units are nominal and the overall thicknesses of units are measured perpendicularly from outer surfaces of glass lites at unit's edge.
  7. Spacer: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction.
    - a. Spacer Color: Black.
  8. Edge Seal:
    - a. Dual-Sealed System: Provide polyisobutylene sealant as primary seal applied between spacer and glass panes, and silicone, polysulfide, or polyurethane sealant as secondary seal applied around perimeter.
    - b. Color: Black.
  9. Purge interpane space with dry air, hermetically sealed.
- C. Type IG-1 - Insulating Glass Units: Vision glass, double glazed. Solar Control Low-E Insulated Glazing Units.
  1. Applications: Exterior glazing unless otherwise indicated.

**08 8000  
GLAZING**

2. Basis of Design: PPG, Solarban 70XL, or comparable product by one of the manufacturer's listed above.
3. Space between lites filled with argon.
4. Outboard Lite: Annealed float glass, 1/4 inch thick, minimum.
  - a. Tint: Gray.
  - b. Coating: Low-E (passive type), on #2 surface.
5. Inboard Lite: Annealed float glass, 1/4 inch thick, minimum.
  - a. Tint: Clear.
6. Total Thickness: 1 inch.
7. Tempered where required.
8. Thermal Transmittance (U-Value), Summer - Center of Glass: 0.26, nominal.
9. Visible Light Transmittance (VLT): 38 percent, nominal.
10. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC): 24 percent, nominal.
11. Visible Light Reflectance, Outside: 8 percent, nominal.
12. Glazing Method: Dry glazing method, gasket glazing.

D. Type IG-3 - Insulating Glass Units: Safety glazing.

1. Applications:
  - a. Glazed lites in exterior doors.
  - b. Glazed sidelights and panels next to doors.
  - c. Other locations required by applicable federal, state, and local codes and regulations.
2. Space between lites filled with argon.
3. Glass Type: Same as Type IG-1 except use fully tempered float glass for both outboard and inboard lites.
4. Tint: Gray.
5. Total Thickness: 1 inch.
6. Thermal Transmittance (U-Value), Summer - Center of Glass: 0.26, nominal.
7. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC): 24 percent, nominal.
8. Visible Light Reflectance, Outside: 8 percent, nominal.
9. Glazing Method: Dry glazing method, gasket glazing.

**2.05 GLAZING UNITS**

A. Type G-1 - Monolithic Exterior Vision Glazing:

1. Applications: Interior vision glazing in doors.
2. Glass Type: Fully tempered float glass.
3. Tint: Clear.
4. Thickness: 1/4 inch, nominal.

B. Type G-2 - Monolithic Safety Glazing: Non-fire-rated.

1. Applications:
  - a. Glazed lites in doors.
  - b. Glazed sidelights to doors, except in fire-rated walls and partitions.
  - c. Glazed view windows and panels in partitions enclosing teaching rooms.
  - d. Other locations required by applicable federal, state, and local codes and regulations.
  - e. Other locations indicated on drawings.
2. Glass Type: Fully tempered safety glass as specified.
3. Tint: Clear.
4. Thickness: 3/8 inch, nominal.

C. Type G-3 - Monolithic Safety Glazing: Laminated glass, 2-Ply.

1. Applications: Locations as indicated on drawings.
2. Tint: Clear.
3. Thickness: 1/4 inch each ply, for overall thickness of 1/2-inch.
4. Outer Lite: Annealed glass.
5. Interlayer: Polyvinyl butyral (PVB), thickness as required to meet performance criteria.
6. Inside Lite: Annealed glass.

7. Glazing Method: As indicated on the drawings.

## **2.06 GLAZING GASKETS**

- A. Dense Compression Gaskets: Molded or extruded gaskets of material indicated below, complying with standards referenced with name of elastomer indicated below, and of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal:
  1. Neoprene, ASTM C 864.
  2. EPDM, ASTM C 864.
  3. Silicone, ASTM C 1115.
  4. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber, ASTM C 1115.
- B. Lock-Strip Gaskets: Neoprene extrusions in size and shape indicated, fabricated into frames with molded corner units and zipper lock-strips, complying with ASTM C 542, black.

## **2.07 GLAZING SEALANTS**

- A. General: Provide products of type indicated, complying with the following requirements:
  1. Compatibility: Select glazing sealants that are compatible with one another and with other materials they will contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
  2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
  3. VOC Content: For sealants used inside of the weatherproofing system, not more than 250 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  4. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## **2.08 ACCESSORIES**

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Setting Blocks: Silicone, with 80 to 90 Shore A durometer hardness; ASTM C864 Option II. Length of 0.1 inch for each square foot of glazing or minimum 4 inch x width of glazing rabbet space minus 1/16 inch x height to suit glazing method and pane weight and area.
- C. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).
- D. Spacer Shims: Neoprene, 50 to 60 Shore A durometer hardness; ASTM C864 Option II. Continuous x one half the height of the glazing stop x thickness to suit application, self adhesive on one face.
- E. Glazing Tape, Back Bedding Mastic Type: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids compound with integral resilient spacer rod applicable to application indicated; 5 to 30 cured Shore A durometer hardness; coiled on release paper; black color.
  1. Width: As required for application.
  2. Thickness: As required for application.
  3. Spacer Rod Diameter: As required for application.
- F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.
- G. Perimeter Insulation for Fire-Resistive Glazing: Identical to product used in test assembly to obtain fire-resistance rating.
- H. Glazing Splines: Resilient silicone extruded shape to suit glazing channel retaining slot; ASTM C864 Option II; color black.
- I. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.

## 2.09 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to glaze openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
- B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites in a manner that produces square edges with slight kerfs at junctions with outdoor and indoor faces.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 VERIFICATION OF CONDITIONS

- A. Verify that openings for glazing are correctly sized and within tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
- B. Verify that the minimum required face and edge clearances are being provided.
- C. Verify that surfaces of glazing channels or recesses are clean, free of obstructions that may impede moisture movement, weeps are clear, and support framing is ready to receive glazing system.
- D. Verify that sealing between joints of glass framing members has been completed effectively.
- E. Proceed with glazing system installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean contact surfaces with appropriate solvent and wipe dry within maximum of 24 hours before glazing. Remove coatings that are not tightly bonded to substrates.
- B. Seal porous glazing channels or recesses with substrate compatible primer or sealer.
- C. Prime surfaces scheduled to receive sealant where required for proper sealant adhesion.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install glazing in compliance with written instructions of glass, gaskets, and other glazing material manufacturers, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in glazing referenced standards.
- B. Install glazing sealants in accordance with ASTM C1193, GANA (SM), and manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Do not exceed edge pressures around perimeter of glass lites as stipulated by glass manufacturer.
- D. Glazing channel dimensions, as indicated on Drawings, provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances. Adjust as required by Project conditions during installation.
- E. Set glass lites of system with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- F. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.
- G. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction sealant-substrate testing.
- H. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- I. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches as follows:
  1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and

**08 8000  
GLAZING**

glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.

- 2. Provide 1/8-inch minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- J. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- K. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
- L. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- M. Set glass lites in proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as indicated.
- N. Prevent glass from contact with any contaminating substances that may be the result of construction operations such as, and not limited to the following; weld splatter, fire-safing, plastering, mortar droppings, etc.

**3.04 INSTALLATION - DRY GLAZING METHOD (GASKET GLAZING)**

- A. Application - Exterior and/or Interior Glazed: Set glazing infills from either the exterior or the interior of the building.
- B. Fabricate compression gaskets in lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
- C. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- D. Place setting blocks at 1/4 points with edge block no more than 6 inch from corners.
- E. Rest glazing on setting blocks and push against fixed stop with sufficient pressure on gasket to attain full contact.
- F. Install removable stops without displacing glazing gasket; exert pressure for full continuous contact.
- G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- H. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

**3.05 INSTALLATION - DRY GLAZING METHOD (TAPE AND TAPE)**

- A. Application - Interior Glazed: Set glazing infills from the interior of the building.
- B. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- C. Cut glazing tape to length and set against permanent stops, projecting 1/16 inch above sight line.
- D. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- E. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first and then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs and then to heads and sills.
- F. Place setting blocks at 1/4 points with edge block no more than 6 inch from corners.
- G. Rest glazing on setting blocks and push against tape for full contact at perimeter of pane or unit.

**08 8000  
GLAZING**

- H. Place glazing tape on free perimeter of glazing in same manner described above.
- I. Do not remove release paper from tape until just before each glazing unit is installed.
- J. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
- K. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- L. Install removable stop without displacement of tape. Exert pressure on tape for full continuous contact.
- M. Carefully trim protruding tape with knife.
- N. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- O. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

**3.06 INSTALLATION - WET GLAZING METHOD (SEALANT AND SEALANT)**

- A. Application - Exterior Glazed: Set glazing infills from the exterior of the building.
- B. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
- C. Place setting blocks at 1/4 points and install glazing pane or unit.
- D. Install removable stops with glazing centered in space by inserting spacer shims both sides at 24 inch intervals, 1/4 inch below sight line.
- E. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
- F. Apply sealant to uniform line, flush with sight line. Tool or wipe sealant surface smooth.

**3.07 CLEANING**

- A. Remove excess glazing materials from finish surfaces immediately after application using solvents or cleaners recommended by manufacturers.
- B. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains; remove as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.
- C. Remove non-permanent labels immediately after glazing installation is complete.
- D. Clean glass and adjacent surfaces after sealants are fully cured.
- E. Clean glass on both exposed surfaces not more than 4 days prior to Date of Substantial Completion in accordance with glass manufacturer's written recommendations.

**3.08 PROTECTION**

- A. After installation, mark pane with an 'X' by using removable plastic tape or paste; do not mark heat absorbing or reflective glass units.
- B. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove nonpermanent labels, and clean surfaces.
- C. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations, including weld splatter. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended by glass manufacturer.

**08 8000  
GLAZING**

D. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period prior to Date of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 8300**  
**MIRRORS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Glass mirrors.
  - 1. Tempered safety glass.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 10 2800 - TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES: Metal mirror frames.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C1048 - Standard Specification for Heat-Strengthened and Fully Tempered Flat Glass; 2012.
- B. ASTM C1193 - Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants; 2016.
- C. ASTM C1503 - Standard Specification for Silvered Flat Glass Mirror; 2008 (Reapproved 2013).
- D. GANA (GM) - GANA Glazing Manual; 2009.
- E. GANA (SM) - GANA Sealant Manual; 2008.
- F. GANA (TIPS) - Mirrors: Handle with Extreme Care (Tips for the Professional on the Care and Handling of Mirrors); 2011.

**1.05 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Deterioration of Mirrors: Defects developed from normal use that are attributable to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning mirrors contrary to mirror manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include discoloration, black spots, and clouding of the silver film.

**1.06 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Product Data on Mirror Types: Submit structural, physical and environmental characteristics, size limitations, special handling and installation requirements, including mastics and mounting hardware.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include mirror elevations, edge details, mirror hardware, and attachments to other work.
- D. Samples: Submit two samples, 12x12 inch in size, illustrating mirrors edging, coloration, and attachment.
- E. Product Certificates: For each type of mirror, signed by product manufacturer.
- F. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- G. Mirror Mastic Compatibility Test Reports: From mirror manufacturer indicating that mirror mastic was tested for compatibility and adhesion with mirror backing [paint] [film] and substrates on which mirrors are installed.
- H. Maintenance Data: For inclusion in maintenance manual required in Section 01 7823.
- I. Warranty: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- J. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.

**1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Perform Work in accordance with GANA (GM) and GANA (SM) for glazing installation methods.

**08 8300  
MIRRORS**

- B. Fabricate, store, transport, receive, install, and clean mirrors in accordance with recommendations of GANA (TIPS).
- C. Provide mirrors that will not fail under normal usage. Failure includes glass breakage and deterioration attributable to defective manufacture, fabrication, and installation.
- D. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed mirror glazing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project; whose work has resulted in mirror installations with a record of successful in-service performance; and who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under NGA's Glazier Certification Program as Level 2 (Senior Glaziers) or Level 3 (Master Glaziers).
- E. Source Limitations for Mirrors: Obtain mirrors from one source for each type of mirror indicated.
- F. Source Limitations for Mirror Glazing Accessories: Obtain mirror glazing accessories from one source for each type of accessory indicated.
- G. Glazing Publications: Comply with the following published recommendations:
  - 1. GANA's "Glazing Manual" unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to this publication for definitions of glass and glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
  - 2. GANA Mirror Division's "Mirrors, Handle with Extreme Care: Tips for the Professional on the Care and Handling of Mirrors."
- H. Preconstruction Mirror Mastic Compatibility Test: Submit mirror mastic products to mirror manufacturer for testing to determine compatibility of mastic with mirror backing and substrates on which mirrors are installed.

**1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect mirrors according to mirror manufacturer's written instructions and as needed to prevent damage to mirrors from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. Comply with mirror manufacturer's written instructions for shipping, storing, and handling mirrors as needed to prevent deterioration of silvering, damage to edges, and abrasion of glass surfaces and applied coatings. Store indoors, protected from moisture including condensation.

**1.09 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install mirrors when ambient temperature is less than 50 degrees F.
- B. Maintain minimum ambient temperature before, during and 24 hours after installation of glazing compounds.
- C. Environmental Limitations: Do not install mirrors until ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at levels indicated for final occupancy.

**1.10 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide 10 year manufacturer warranty for reflective coating on mirrors and replacement of same.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Mirrors:
  - 1. Arch Aluminum & Glass Co., Inc.
  - 2. Gardner Glass Products.
  - 3. Gilded Mirrors, Inc.
  - 4. Guardian Industries Corp.
  - 5. Independent Mirror Industries, Inc.
  - 6. Lenoir Mirror Co; \_\_\_\_: [www.lenoirmirror.com/#sle](http://www.lenoirmirror.com/#sle).
  - 7. Messer Industries, Inc.
  - 8. Stroupe Mirror Co., Inc.

**08 8300  
MIRRORS**

9. Sunshine Mirror.
10. Virginia Mirror Company, Inc.
11. VVP America, Inc.; Binswanger Mirror Products.
12. Walker Glass Co., Ltd.

**2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. Mirror Design Criteria: Select materials and/or provide supports as required to limit mirror material deflection to 1/200, or to the flexure limit of glass, with full recovery of glazing materials, whichever is less.
- B. Mirror Glass; Type 1: Clear, tempered safety glass; ASTM C1048, with copper and silver coatings, and protective overcoating.
  1. Thickness: 1/4 inch.
  2. Edges: Bevelled.
  3. Size: As noted on drawings.

**2.03 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Setting Blocks: Neoprene, 80 to 90 Shore A durometer hardness.
- B. Edge Sealer: Coating compatible with glass coating and approved by mirror manufacturer for use in protecting against silver deterioration at mirrored glass edges.
- C. Mirror Mastic: An adhesive setting compound, produced specifically for setting mirrors and certified by both mirror manufacturer and mastic manufacturer as compatible with glass coating and substrates on which mirrors will be installed.
  1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Gunther Mirror Mastics.
    - b. Palmer Products Corporation.
  2. VOC Content: Not more than 70 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

**2.04 MIRROR HARDWARE**

- A. Top and Bottom Aluminum J-Channels: Aluminum extrusions with a return deep enough to produce a glazing channel to accommodate mirrors of thickness indicated and in lengths required to cover bottom and top edges of each mirror in a single piece.
  1. Bottom Trim: J-channels formed with front leg and back leg not less than 3/8 and 7/8 inch in height, respectively, and a thickness of not less than 0.04 inch 0.05 inch .
  2. Top Trim: J-channels formed with front leg and back leg not less than 5/8 and 1 inch in height, respectively, and a thickness of not less than 0.04 inch.
  3. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    4. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - a. Bottom Trim:
        - 1) Laurence, C. R. Co., Inc.; CRL Standard "J" Channel.
        - 2) Sommer & Maca Industries, Inc.; Medium Gauge Aluminum Shallow Nose "J" Moulding Lower Bar.
        - 3) Sommer & Maca Industries, Inc.; Heavy Gauge Aluminum Shallow Nose "J" Moulding Lower Bar.
      - b. Top Trim:
        - 1) Laurence, C. R. Co., Inc.; CRL Deep "J" Channel.
        - 2) Sommer & Maca Industries, Inc.; Medium Gauge Aluminum Deep Nose "J" Moulding Upper Bar.
        - 3) Sommer & Maca Industries, Inc.; Heavy Gauge Aluminum Deep Nose "J" Moulding Lower Bar.
- B. Fasteners: Fabricated of same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal and matching it in finished color and texture where fasteners are exposed.

- C. Anchors and Inserts: Provide devices as required for mirror hardware installation. Provide toothed or lead-shield expansion-bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors. Provide galvanized anchors and inserts for applications on inside face of exterior walls and where indicated.

## **2.05 FABRICATION**

- A. Mirror Sizes: To suit Project conditions, cut mirrors to final sizes and shapes.
- B. Cutouts: Fabricate cutouts for notches and holes in mirrors without marring visible surfaces. Locate and size cutouts so they fit closely around penetrations in mirrors.
- C. Mirror Edge Treatment: Flat polished edge.
  - 1. Seal edges of mirrors after edge treatment to prevent chemical or atmospheric penetration of glass coating.
  - 2. Require mirror manufacturer to perform edge treatment and sealing in factory immediately after cutting to final sizes.
- D. Film-Backed Safety Mirrors: Apply film backing with pressure-sensitive adhesive coating over mirror backing paint as recommended in writing by film-backing manufacturer to produce a surface free of bubbles, blisters, and other imperfections. Use adhesives and film backing compatible with mirror backing paint as certified by mirror manufacturer.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, over which mirrors are to be mounted, with Installer present, for compliance with installation tolerances, substrate preparation, and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Verify that openings for mirrored glazing are correctly sized and within tolerance.
- C. Verify that surfaces of mirror frames or recesses are clean, free of obstructions, and ready for installation of mirrors.
- D. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility of mirror mastic with existing finishes or primers.
- E. Proceed with mirror installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Comply with mastic manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparation of substrates, including coating surfaces with mastic manufacturer's special bond coating where applicable.
- B. Clean contact surfaces with solvent and wipe dry.
- C. Seal porous mirror frames or recesses with substrate compatible primer or sealer. Prime surfaces scheduled to receive sealant.
- D. Prepare installation in accordance with ASTM C1193 for solvent release sealants, and install sealant in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install mirrors to comply with mirror manufacturer's written instructions and with referenced GANA publications. Mount mirrors accurately in place in a manner that avoids distorting reflected images.
- B. Install mirrors in accordance with GANA (TIPS) and manufacturers recommendations.
- C. Provide a minimum air space of 1/8 inch between back of mirrors and mounting surface for air circulation between back of mirrors and face of mounting surface.
- D. Set mirrors plumb and level, and free of optical distortion.
- E. Set mirrors with edge clearance free of surrounding construction including countertops or backsplashes.
- F. For wall-mounted mirrors, install mirrors with mirror hardware.

**08 8300  
MIRRORS**

1. Attach mirror hardware securely to mounting surfaces with mechanical fasteners installed with anchors or inserts as applicable. Install fasteners so heads do not impose point loads on backs of mirrors.
2. For mirror hardware in the form of a continuous J-channel at bottom and continuous top trim at top, fasten J-channel directly to wall and attach top trim to continuous cleat fastened directly to wall.
3. Where indicated, install mirror hardware in the form of J-channels that are fabricated in single lengths to fit and cover top and bottom edges of mirrors.

**3.04 CLEANING**

- A. Remove wet glazing materials from finish surfaces.
- B. Remove labels after work is complete.
- C. Clean mirrors and adjacent surfaces.

**3.05 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect mirrors from breakage and contaminating substances resulting from construction operations.
- B. Do not permit edges of mirrors to be exposed to standing water.
- C. Maintain environmental conditions that will prevent mirrors from being exposed to moisture from condensation or other sources for continuous periods of time.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 2116**  
**GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Performance criteria for gypsum board assemblies.
- B. Gypsum wallboard.
- C. Joint treatment and accessories.
- D. Gypsum setting compound for filling of hollow metal door frames.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Building framing .
- B. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Wood blocking product and execution requirements.
- C. Section 07 2100 - Thermal Insulation: Acoustic insulation.
- D. Section 07 8400 - Firestopping: Top-of-wall assemblies at fire rated walls.
- E. Section 07 9200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing acoustical gaps in construction other than gypsum board or plaster work.
- F. Section 09 2216 - Non-Structural Metal Framing.
- G. Section 09 3000 - Tiling: Tile backing board.(Alternate 1)

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ANSI A108.11-SystemDeleted - American National Standard for Interior Installation of Cementitious Backer Units; 2010 (Revised).
- B. ANSI A118.9-SystemDeleted - American National Standard Specifications for Test Methods and Specifications for Cementitious Backer Units; 1999 (Reaffirmed 2010).
- C. ASTM C475/C475M - Standard Specification for Joint Compound and Joint Tape for Finishing Gypsum Board; 2015.
- D. ASTM C840 - Standard Specification for Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board; 2013.
- E. ASTM C1002 - Standard Specification for Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs; 2014.
- F. ASTM C1047 - Standard Specification for Accessories For Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base; 2014a.
- G. ASTM C1396/C1396M - Standard Specification for Gypsum Board; 2014.
- H. ASTM D3273 - Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber; 2012.
- I. GA-216 - Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board; 2013.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on gypsum board, accessories, and joint finishing system.
- C. Samples: Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in 12-inch- long length for each trim accessory indicated.

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing gypsum board application and finishing, with minimum 5 years of documented experience.

**09 2116**  
**GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES**

B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

#### **1.07 STORAGE AND HANDLING**

A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other causes. Stack panels flat to prevent sagging.

#### **1.08 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations, whichever are more stringent.

B. Do not install interior products until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.

C. Do not install panels that are wet, those that are moisture damaged, and those that are mold damaged.

1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES**

A. Provide completed assemblies complying with ASTM C840 and GA-216.

B. Recycled Content: Provide gypsum panel products with recycled content such that postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content constitutes a minimum of 29 percent by weight.

C. Size: Provide in maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

D. Fire Rated Assemblies: Provide completed assemblies as indicated on the drawings per the referenced assembly.

#### **2.02 METAL FRAMING MATERIALS**

A. Steel Resilient Furring Channels (RC-1): Manufacturer's standard product designed to reduce sound transmission, fabricated from steel sheet complying with ASTM A653 or ASTM A568 to form 1/2 inch deep channel of the following configuration:

1. Single-Leg Configuration: Asymmetric-shaped channel with face connected to a single flange by a single-slotted leg (web).
2. Locations: As noted on drawings.

#### **2.03 BOARD MATERIALS**

A. Manufacturers - Gypsum-Based Board:

1. American Gypsum Company; \_\_\_\_: [www.americangypsum.com/#sle](http://www.americangypsum.com/#sle).
2. CertainTeed Corporation; \_\_\_\_: [www.certainteed.com/#sle](http://www.certainteed.com/#sle).
3. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum; \_\_\_\_: [www.gpgypsum.com/#sle](http://www.gpgypsum.com/#sle).
4. National Gypsum Company; \_\_\_\_: [www.nationalgypsum.com/#sle](http://www.nationalgypsum.com/#sle).
5. USG Corporation; \_\_\_\_: [www.usg.com/#sle](http://www.usg.com/#sle).

B. Gypsum Wallboard: Paper-faced gypsum panels as defined in ASTM C1396/C1396M; sizes to minimize joints in place; ends square cut.

1. Application: Use for vertical surfaces and ceilings, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Core Type: Type X.
3. Long Edges: Tapered.
4. Thickness:
  - a. Vertical Surfaces: 5/8 inch.
  - b. Ceilings: 5/8 inch.

**09 2116**  
**GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES**

c. Multi-Layer Assemblies: Thicknesses as indicated on drawings.

**2.04 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Acoustic Insulation: ASTM C665; preformed glass fiber, friction fit type, unfaced. Thickness: \_\_\_\_\_ inch.
- B. General: Provide accessory materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written recommendations.
- C. Acoustic Insulation: 1; preformed glass fiber, friction fit type, unfaced. Thickness: \_\_\_\_\_ inch.
- D. Acoustic Sealant: Acrylic emulsion latex or water-based elastomeric sealant; do not use solvent-based non-curing butyl sealant.
- E. Finishing Accessories: ASTM C1047, galvanized steel or rolled zinc, unless noted otherwise.
  - 1. Types: As detailed or required for finished appearance.
    - a. Cornerbead.
    - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - c. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - d. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
    - e. Control (expansion) joint.
    - f. "F" Reveal Molding; Fry Reglet DRMF-625-V-50.
    - g. "Z" Reveal Molding; Fry Reglet DRMZ-625-50.
  - 2. Special Shapes: In addition to conventional corner bead and control joints, provide U-bead and L-bead at exposed panel edges.
  - 3. Installations at Floor: Stop Mouldings, Trims and accessories, on vertical edges and faces, short of the floor to allow base trim to run continuous with solid gypsum board backing. Coordinate dimension with base trim height.
  - 4. Interior Trim at Windows:
    - a. Material: Rigid Polyvinyl Chloride.
    - b. Product: Tear away L bead with 5/16 inch tear away leg.
    - c. Manufacture and Model Number: Trim-Tex Drywall Products, Model #9010.
    - d. Locations: Provide trim piece where gypsum board abuts all windows and door systems at return surrounds.
- F. Joint Materials: ASTM C475/C475M and as recommended by gypsum board manufacturer for project conditions.
- G. Joint Tape:
  - 1. Interior Gypsum Wallboard: Paper.
  - 2. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Paper.
  - 3. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
  - 4. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
- H. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Wallboard: For each coat use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
  - 1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
  - 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use setting-type taping compound.
    - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
  - 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  - 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound
- I. Joint Compound for filling Hollow Metal Door Frames:
  - 1. Fill Coat: Use setting-type compound for filling of interior hollow metal door frames. Provide a minimum of 1 inch thickness in frame.
- J. Screws for Fastening of Gypsum Panel Products to Cold-Formed Steel Studs Less than 0.033 inch in Thickness and Wood Members: ASTM C1002; self-piercing tapping screws, corrosion resistant.

**09 2116**  
**GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES**

- K. Screws for Fastening of Gypsum Panel Products to Steel Members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch in Thickness: ASTM C954; steel drill screws, corrosion resistant.
- L. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
  - 1. Use adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- M. Acoustical Sealant: As specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
  - 1. Provide sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that project conditions are appropriate for work of this section to commence.
- B. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames and framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
- C. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.02 ACOUSTIC ACCESSORIES INSTALLATION**

- A. Acoustic Insulation: Place tightly within spaces, around cut openings, behind and around electrical and mechanical items within partitions, and tight to items passing through partitions.
- B. Acoustic Sealant: Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - 1. Place one bead continuously on substrate before installation of perimeter framing members.
  - 2. Place continuous bead at perimeter of each layer of gypsum board.
  - 3. Seal around all penetrations by conduit, pipe, ducts, and rough-in boxes, except where firestopping is provided.

#### **3.03 BOARD INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with ASTM C840, GA-216, and manufacturer's instructions. Install to minimize butt end joints, especially in highly visible locations.
  - 1. Type X: At all locations unless indicated otherwise.
  - 2. Ceiling Type: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Moisture- and Mold-Resistant Type: At all wet walls.
- B. Single-Layer Non-Rated: Install gypsum board in most economical direction, with ends and edges occurring over firm bearing.
  - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels horizontally, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
    - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
    - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
  - 3. On Z-furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
  - 4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel screws, nailing wallboard is not allowed.
- C. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

**09 2116**  
**GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES**

D. Cementitious Backing Board: Install over wood framing members and plywood substrate where indicated, in accordance with ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's instructions.

**3.04 INSTALLATION OF TRIM AND ACCESSORIES**

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Place control joints consistent with lines of building spaces and as indicated.
- C. Install control joints according to ASTM C 840. Install Control Joints in placement as shown on drawings. If Control Joints are not shown on drawings (elevations or reflected ceiling plans), or shown with maximum distances greater than recommended by ASTM C 840, Contractor shall place Control Joints in drywall with a maximum of 30 feet on center. Review placement with Architect prior to installation.
- D. Corner Beads: Install at external corners, using longest practical lengths.
- E. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
- F. L-Bead: Use where indicated.
- G. F-Reveal Molding: At CMU to gypsum board transitions and where indicated.
- H. Z-Reveal Molding: At CMU to gypsum board transitions and where indicated.
- I. Edge Trim: Install at locations where gypsum board abuts dissimilar materials.

**3.05 JOINT TREATMENT**

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Finish gypsum board in accordance with levels defined in ASTM C840, as follows:
  1. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in other Division 9 Sections.
  2. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
  3. Level 1: Fire rated wall areas above finished ceilings, whether or not accessible in the completed construction.
- C. Prefill open joints beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- D. Tape, fill, and sand exposed joints, edges, and corners to produce smooth surface ready to receive finishes.
  1. Feather coats of joint compound so that camber is maximum 1/32 inch.

**3.06 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- B. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

**3.07 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation of Finished Gypsum Board Surface from True Flatness: 1/8 inch in 10 feet in any direction.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 2216**  
**NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Metal partition, ceiling, and soffit framing.
- B. Framing accessories.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 05 5000 - Metal Fabrications: Execution requirements for anchors for attaching work of this section.
- B. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Wood blocking within stud framing.
- C. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Wall sheathing.
- D. Section 07 2100 - Thermal Insulation: Acoustic insulation.
- E. Section 07 2500 - Weather Barriers.
- F. Section 07 6200 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Head and sill flashings
- G. Section 07 9200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing acoustical gaps in construction other than gypsum board or plaster work.
- H. Section 08 3100 - Access Doors and Panels.
- I. Section 09 2116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Execution requirements for anchors for attaching work of this section.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AISI S100-12 - North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members; American Iron and Steel Institute; 2012.
- B. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2015.
- C. ASTM C645 - Standard Specification for Nonstructural Steel Framing Members; 2014.
- D. ASTM C754 - Standard Specification for Installation of Steel Framing Members to Receive Screw-Attached Gypsum Panel Products; 2015.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Product Data: Provide data describing framing member materials and finish, product criteria, load charts, and limitations.
- C. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's data on partition head to structure connectors, showing compliance with requirements.

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

**1.07 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Contractor shall provide designs and detailing of all suspended and self-supporting systems capable of resisting all dead, live, seismic, wind, etc. loads on supported structure.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 FRAMING MATERIALS

- A. Non-Loadbearing Framing System Components: ASTM C645; galvanized sheet steel, of size and properties necessary to comply with ASTM C754 for the spacing indicated, with maximum deflection of wall framing of L/240 at 5 psf.
  - 1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with average recycled content of steel products such that postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
- B. Partition Head to Structure Connections: Provide mechanical anchorage devices that accommodate deflection using slotted holes, screws and anti-friction bushings, preventing rotation of studs while maintaining structural performance of partition.
  - 1. Structural Performance: Maintain lateral load resistance and vertical movement capacity required by applicable code, when evaluated in accordance with AISI S100-12.
  - 2. Material: ASTM A653/A653M steel sheet, SS Grade 50, with G60/Z180 hot dipped galvanized coating.

### 2.02 SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. General: Contractor to design, detail, and provide suspension systems for all ceiling and soffit systems (exterior and interior) shown as suspended or self-supported independent from building structure.
- B. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.0625-inch- diameter wire, or double strand of 0.0475-inch- diameter wire.
- C. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.162-inch diameter.
- D. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet, in size indicated on Drawings.
- E. Carrying Channels: Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-metal thickness of 0.0538 inch and minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges.
- F. Furring Channels (Furring Members):
  - 1. Cold-Rolled Channels: 0.0538-inch bare-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges, 3/4 inch deep.
  - 2. Steel Studs: ASTM C 645.
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 20 gauge.
    - b. Depth: As required.
  - 3. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645, as indicated on the drawings.
    - a. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: 24 gauge.
    - b. Depth: 7/8-inch minimum.
- G. Manufactured Suspension System:
  - 1. Provide pre-engineered, flat ceiling suspension system. System shall be G40 hot dipped galvanized components.
  - 2. Profiles: Heavy Duty, 1 1/2 inch wide, 1 5/8 inch high main tees and manufacturer's standard cross tees.

### 2.03 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.
  - 1. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.

### 2.04 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate assemblies of framed sections to sizes and profiles required.
- B. Fit, reinforce, and brace framing members to suit design requirements.
- C. Fit and assemble in largest practical sections for delivery to site, ready for installation.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that rough-in utilities are in proper location.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.

### 3.03

### 3.04 INSTALLATION OF STUD FRAMING

- A. Extend partition framing to structure where indicated and to ceiling in other locations.
- B. Partitions Terminating at Ceiling: Attach ceiling runner securely to ceiling track in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Align and secure top and bottom runners at 24 inches on center.
- D. Fit runners under and above openings; secure intermediate studs to same spacing as wall studs.
- E. Align stud web openings horizontally.
- F. Secure studs to tracks using crimping method. Do not weld.
- G. Fabricate corners using a minimum of three studs.
- H. Double stud at wall openings, door and window jambs, not more than 2 inches from each side of openings.
- I. Coordinate installation of bucks, anchors, and blocking with electrical, mechanical, and other work to be placed within or behind stud framing.

### 3.05 CEILING AND SOFFIT FRAMING

- A. Install furring after work above ceiling or soffit is complete. Coordinate the location of hangers with other work.
- B. Install furring independent of walls, columns, and above-ceiling work.
- C. Securely anchor hangers to structural members or embed in structural slab. Space hangers as required to limit deflection to criteria indicated. Use rigid hangers at exterior soffits.
- D. Space main carrying channels at maximum 72 inch on center, and not more than 6 inches from wall surfaces. Lap splice securely.
- E. Securely fix carrying channels to hangers to prevent turning or twisting and to transmit full load to hangers.
- F. Place furring channels perpendicular to carrying channels, not more than 2 inches from perimeter walls, and rigidly secure. Lap splices securely.
- G. Laterally brace suspension system.
- H. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

### 3.06 INSTALLING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Install suspension system components as required to provide support necessary, but not less than those required by referenced installation standards for assembly types and other assembly components indicated.

**09 2216**  
**NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING**

- B. Installation of all suspension systems shall maintain a minimum of 36 inch clearance in front of all electrical and control equipment (HVAC) to allow doors to open a minimum of 90 degrees for maintenance.
- C. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
- D. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
    - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  - 2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
    - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
  - 3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
  - 4. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
  - 5. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
  - 6. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
  - 7. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
  - 8. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.
- F. Seismic Bracing: Sway-brace suspension systems with hangers used for support.
- G. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

**3.07 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation From True Position: 1/8 inch in 10 feet.
- B. Maximum Variation From Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 5100**  
**SUSPENDED ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Suspended metal grid ceiling system.
- B. Acoustical units.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 21 1300 - Fire-Suppression Sprinkler Systems: Sprinkler heads in ceiling system.
- B. Section 23 3700 - Air Outlets and Inlets: Air diffusion devices in ceiling.
- C. Section 26 5100 - Interior Lighting: Light fixtures in ceiling system.
- D. Section 28 3100 - Fire Detection and Alarm: Fire alarm components in ceiling system.

**1.04 DEFINITIONS**

- A. AC: Articulation Class.
- B. CAC: Ceiling Attenuation Class.
- C. LR: Light Reflectance coefficient.
- D. NRC: Noise Reduction Coefficient.

**1.05 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C635/C635M - Standard Specification for the Manufacture, Performance, and Testing of Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings; 2013a.
- B. ASTM E1264 - Standard Classification for Acoustical Ceiling Products; 2014.
- C. CAL (CHPS LEM) - Low-Emitting Materials Product List; California Collaborative for High Performance Schools (CHPS); current edition at [www.chps.net/](http://www.chps.net/).

**1.06 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Sequence work to ensure acoustical ceilings are not installed until building is enclosed, sufficient heat is provided, dust generating activities have terminated, and overhead work is completed, tested, and approved.
- B. Do not install acoustical units until after interior wet work is dry.

**1.07 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on suspension system components and acoustical units.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
  1. Ceiling suspension system members.
  2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
    - a. Furnish layouts for cast-in-place anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices whose installation is specified in other Sections.
  3. Ceiling-mounted items may include lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, mechanical units, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
  4. Minimum Drawing Scale: 1/8 inch = 1 foot.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures.
- E. Product Declarations: Provide Environmental (EPD) and Health (HPD) Product Declarations for all materials used in installation process.

**09 5100**  
**SUSPENDED ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS**

F. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.

1. Extra Acoustical Units: Quantity equal to 5 percent of total installed at the time of Substantial Completion.

**1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Acoustical Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing laboratory, or an NVLAP-accredited laboratory, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated. NVLAP-accredited laboratories must document accreditation, based on a "Certificate of Accreditation" and a "Scope of Accreditation" listing the test methods specified.
- B. Suspension System Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum 5 years documented experience.
- C. Source Limitations:
  1. Acoustical Ceiling Panel: Obtain each type through one source from a single manufacturer.
  2. Suspension System: Obtain each type through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling panel and supporting suspension system through one source from a single manufacturer.
- E. Seismic Standard: Provide acoustical panel ceilings designed and installed to withstand the effects of earthquake motions according to the following:
  1. Standard for Ceiling Suspension Systems Requiring Seismic Restraint: Comply with ASTM C 636 and seismic design requirements indicated, per manufacturer's written instructions and CISCA's "Ceiling Systems Handbook."
  2. Contractor shall verify seismic design zone on structural drawings.
- F. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  1. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

**1.09 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension system components, and accessories to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.
- C. Handle acoustical panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

**1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain uniform temperature of minimum 60 degrees F, and maximum humidity of 40 percent prior to, during, and after acoustical unit installation.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

**1.11 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of acoustical panels and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

**09 5100**  
**SUSPENDED ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS**

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Acoustic Tiles/Panels:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc; \_\_\_\_: [www.armstrong.com/#sle](http://www.armstrong.com/#sle).
  - 2. CertainTeed Corporation; \_\_\_\_: [www.certainteed.com/#sle](http://www.certainteed.com/#sle).
  - 3. USG; \_\_\_\_: [www.usg.com/#sle](http://www.usg.com/#sle).
- B. Suspension Systems:
  - 1. Same as for acoustical units.

**2.02 ACOUSTICAL UNITS**

- A. Recycled Content: Provide acoustical panels with recycled content such that Post-industrial is greater than 25%.
- B. Acoustical Units - General: ASTM E1264, Class A.
  - 1. Mounting Method for Measuring NRC: Type E-400; plenum mounting in which face of test specimen is 15-3/4 inches away from test surface per ASTM E 795.
- C. Acoustical Panel Colors and Patterns: Match appearance characteristics indicated for each product type.
  - 1. Where appearance characteristics of acoustical panels are indicated by referencing pattern designations in ASTM E 1264 and not manufacturers' proprietary product designations, provide products selected by Architect from each manufacturer's full range that comply with requirements indicated for type, pattern, color, light reflectance, acoustical performance, edge detail, and size.
- D. Acoustical Tile Type ACT-1: Painted mineral fiber, ASTM E1264 Type III, with the following characteristics:
  - 1. Basis of Design: Armstrong Optima.
  - 2. VOC Content: Certified as Low Emission by one of the following :
    - a. Product listing in the CHPS Low-Emitting Materials Product List at; [www.chps.net/manual/lem\\_table.htm](http://www.chps.net/manual/lem_table.htm).
  - 3. Size: 24 by 24 inches.
  - 4. Thickness: 3/4 inches.
  - 5. Fire Class: A.
  - 6. Light Reflectance: 84 percent, determined in accordance with ASTM E1264.
  - 7. NRC: 0.95, determined in accordance with ASTM E1264.
  - 8. Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC): 35, determined in accordance with ASTM E1264.
  - 9. Edge: Square Tegular.
  - 10. Surface Color: White.
- E. Acoustical Tile Type ACT-2: Painted faced mineral fiber , ASTM E1264 Type III, with the following characteristics:
  - 1. Basis of Design: Armstrong Cirrus, Second Look II
  - 2. VOC Content: Certified as Low Emission by one of the following :
    - a. Product listing in the CHPS Low-Emitting Materials Product List at; [www.chps.net/manual/lem\\_table.htm](http://www.chps.net/manual/lem_table.htm).
  - 3. Size: 24 by 48 inches.
  - 4. Thickness: 1 inches.
  - 5. Fire Class: A.
  - 6. Light Reflectance: 84 percent, determined in accordance with ASTM E1264.
  - 7. NRC: Not Applicable.
  - 8. Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC): 40, determined in accordance with ASTM E1264.
  - 9. Edge: Square tegular.
  - 10. Surface Color: White.

**09 5100**  
**SUSPENDED ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS**

**2.03 SUSPENSION SYSTEM(S)**

- A. Recycled Content: Provide products made from steel sheet with average recycled content such that postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
- B. Metal Suspension System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard direct-hung metal suspension systems of types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with applicable requirements in ASTM C 635.
- C. Suspension Systems - General: Complying with ASTM C635/C635M; die cut and interlocking components, with stabilizer bars, clips, splices, perimeter moldings, and hold down clips as required.
- D. Finishes and Colors, General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes. Provide manufacturer's standard factory-applied finish for type of system indicated.
  - 1. High-Humidity Finish: Comply with ASTM C 635 requirements for "Coating Classification for Severe Environment Performance" where high-humidity finishes are indicated.
- E. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
- F. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
  - 2. Stainless-Steel Wire: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Type 304, nonmagnetic.
  - 3. Nickel-Copper-Alloy Wire: ASTM B 164, nickel-copper-alloy UNS No. N04400.
  - 4. Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at 3 times hanger design load (ASTM C 635, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.135-inch-diameter wire.
- G. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 7/8 inch wide; formed with 0.04-inch- thick, galvanized steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation; with bolted connections and 5/16-inch- diameter bolts.
- H. Seismic Stabilizer Bars: Manufacturer's standard perimeter stabilizers designed to accommodate seismic forces.
- I. Seismic Struts: Manufacturer's standard compression struts designed to accommodate seismic forces.

**2.04 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM FOR ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILING**

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Ecophon CertainTeed, Inc.
  - 3. USG Interiors, Inc.
- B. Wide-Face, Capped, Double-Web, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet, prepainted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 653/A 653M, not less than G30 coating designation, with prefinished 15/16-inch- wide metal caps on flanges.
  - 1. Structural Classification: Intermediate-duty system.
  - 2. End Condition of Cross Runners: Override (stepped) or butt-edge type.
  - 3. Face Design: Flat, flush.
  - 4. Cap Material: Steel or aluminum cold-rolled sheet.
  - 5. Cap Finish: Painted in color as selected from manufacturer's full range
  - 6. Location: To be used with all tiles.

**2.05 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM**

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

**09 5100**  
**SUSPENDED ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS**

1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
2. Chicago Metallic Corporation
3. Fry Reglet Corporation
4. USG Interiors, Inc.

B. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that comply with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension system runners.

1. Provide manufacturer's standard edge moldings that fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and that match width and configuration of exposed runners, unless otherwise indicated.
2. For lay-in panels with reveal edge details, provide stepped edge molding that forms reveal of same depth and width as that formed between edge of panel and flange at exposed suspension member.
3. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.
4. For glue-up acoustic tile, trim all edges with same standard suspended ceiling edge molding.

C. Extruded-Aluminum Edge Moldings and Trim: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's extruded-aluminum edge moldings and trim of profile indicated or referenced by manufacturer's designations, including splice plates, corner pieces, and attachment and other clips, complying with seismic design requirements and the following:

1. Aluminum Alloy: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with not less than the strength and durability properties of aluminum extrusions complying with ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M) for Alloy and Temper 6063-T5.
2. Baked-Enamel Finish: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; organic coating: as specified below). Apply baked enamel complying with paint manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and painting.

## **2.06 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Support Channels and Hangers: Galvanized steel; size and type to suit application, seismic requirements, and ceiling system flatness requirement specified.
- B. Perimeter Moldings: Same material and finish as grid.
- C. Touch-up Paint: Type and color to match acoustical and grid units.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that layout of hangers will not interfere with other work.
- C. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

**09 5100**  
**SUSPENDED ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS**

**3.03 INSTALLATION - SUSPENSION SYSTEM**

- A. General: Install acoustical panel ceilings to comply with ASTM C 636 and seismic design requirements indicated, per manufacturer's written instructions and CISCA's "Ceiling Systems Handbook." Note that a number of ceilings are hung sloping. Installer shall install sloping ceiling with additional bracing per manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Rigidly secure system, including integral mechanical and electrical components, for maximum deflection of 1:360.
- C. Installation of all suspension systems shall maintain a minimum of 36 inch clearance in front of all electrical and control equipment (HVAC) to allow doors to open a minimum of 90 degrees for maintenance.
- D. Install after major above-ceiling work is complete. Coordinate the location of hangers with other work.
- E. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
- F. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
- G. Splay hangers only where required and, if permitted with fire-resistance-rated ceilings, to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
- H. Hang suspension system independent of walls, columns, ducts, pipes and conduit. Where carrying members are spliced, avoid visible displacement of face plane of adjacent members.
- I. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
- J. Secure wire hangers to ceiling suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly either to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
- K. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both structure to which hangers are attached and type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
- L. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, postinstalled mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
- M. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
- N. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
- O. Do not support components on main runners or cross runners if weight causes total dead load to exceed deflection capability.
- P. Support fixture loads using supplementary hangers located within 6 inches of each corner, or support components independently.
- Q. Space hangers not more than 48 inches o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers, unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
- R. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.

**09 5100**  
**SUSPENDED ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS**

- S. Do not eccentrically load system or induce rotation of runners.
- T. Perimeter Molding: Install at intersection of ceiling and vertical surfaces and at junctions with other interruptions.
  - 1. Use longest practical lengths.
  - 2. Overlap and rivet corners.
- U. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors.
- V. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
  - 1. At scheduled sound walls, apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
  - 2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
  - 3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- W. Install suspension system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.

**3.04 INSTALLATION - ACOUSTICAL UNITS**

- A. Install acoustical units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Fit acoustical units in place, free from damaged edges or other defects detrimental to appearance and function.
- C. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical tiles as follows:
  - 1. As indicated on reflected ceiling plans.
- D. Fit border trim neatly against abutting surfaces.
- E. Install units after above-ceiling work is complete.
- F. Install acoustical units level, in uniform plane, and free from twist, warp, and dents.
- G. Cutting Acoustical Units:
  - 1. Cut to fit irregular grid and perimeter edge trim.
  - 2. Make field cut edges of same profile as factory edges.
  - 3. Double cut and field paint exposed reveal edges.
- H. Where round obstructions occur, provide preformed closures to match perimeter molding.
- I. Install hold-down clips on panels within 20 ft of an exterior door. Install hold-down clips in areas indicated, in areas required by authorities having jurisdiction, and for fire-resistance ratings; space as recommended by panel manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.

**3.05 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation from Flat and Level Surface: 1/8 inch in 10 feet.
- B. Maximum Variation from Plumb of Grid Members Caused by Eccentric Loads: 2 degrees.

**3.06 CLEANING**

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 6429**  
**WOOD STRIP AND PLANK FLOORING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Wood strip and plank flooring, nailed.
- B. Secondary subflooring.
- C. Sleepers on cushion blocks.
- D. Sheet vapor retarder.
- E. Surface finishing and game markings.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Concrete subfloor surface; recessed.
- B. Section 26 0533 - Raceways & Boxes for Electrical Systems: for Conduits installed below wood flooring.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. MFMA (SPEC) - Guide Specifications for Maple Flooring Systems; current edition.
- B. NWFA (IG) - Installation Guidelines; current edition located at [www.nwfa.org](http://www.nwfa.org).

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Product Data: Provide data for flooring.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate floor joint pattern and termination details.
  - 1. Indicate provisions for expansion and contraction.
  - 2. Indicate location, size, design, and color of game markings.
- D. Samples: Submit two samples 12 by 12 inch in size illustrating floor finish, color, and sheen.
- E. Installation Instructions: Indicate standard and special installation procedures.
- F. Maintenance Data: Include maintenance procedures and recommended maintenance materials.
- G. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. Extra Flooring Material: 3 square yards matching installed flooring.

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Perform work of this section in accordance with MFMA (SPEC) and NWFA (IG).
- B. Source Limitations: For field-finished wood flooring, obtain each species, grade, and cut of wood from one source with resources to provide materials and products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.
- C. Hardwood Flooring: Comply with NOFMA's "Official Flooring Grading Rules" for species, grade, and cut.
  - 1. Certification: Provide flooring that carries NOFMA grade stamp on each bundle or piece.
- D. Maple Flooring: Comply with applicable MFMA grading rules for species, grade, and cut.
  - 1. Certification: Provide flooring that carries MFMA mark on each bundle or piece.
- E. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum five years documented experience.
- F. Installer Qualifications: installer approved by Manufacturer.

**09 6429**  
**WOOD STRIP AND PLANK FLOORING**

G. Mockups: Install mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. To set quality standards for installation, install mockup of floor area as shown on Drawings.
2. To set quality standards for sanding and application of field finishes, prepare finish mockup of floor area as shown on Drawings.
3. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

### **1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Conditioning period begins not less than seven days before wood flooring installation, is continuous through installation, and continues not less than seven days after wood flooring installation.
  1. Environmental Conditioning: Maintain an ambient temperature between 65 and 75 deg F and relative humidity planned for building occupants in spaces to receive wood flooring during the conditioning period.
  2. Wood Flooring Conditioning: Move wood flooring into spaces where it will be installed, no later than the beginning of the conditioning period.
    - a. Do not install flooring until it adjusts to relative humidity of, and is at same temperature as, space where it is to be installed.
    - b. Open sealed packages to allow wood flooring to acclimate immediately on moving flooring into spaces in which it will be installed.
- B. Provide heat, light, and ventilation prior to installation.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Hardwood Strip and Plank Flooring:
  1. Acer Flooring, LLC; Product Power Play TP.
  2. Action Floor Systems; Concord II.
  3. Conner Sports Flooring; Product Alliance System.
  4. Robbins, Inc.; Product Air Channel Star DIN.
  5. Substitutions: Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

### **2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. Wood Strip Flooring: Solid-Wood, Strip Flooring with backs channelled (kerfed) for stress relief.
  1. Species: White Hard Maple.
  2. Grade: MFMA-RL First.
  3. Moisture Content: 5 to 5.5 percent.
  4. Actual Thickness: 25/32 inch.
  5. Actual Width: 2-1/4 inches.
  6. Edge: Tongue and Groove.
  7. End: End matched.
  8. Length: Random, minimum of 18 inches.
  9. Preservative Treatment: Clear, penetrating, water-repellent wood preservative that protects against mold, mildew, staining, and decay fungi; complying with MFMA's written recommendations and applied by immersion.
- B. Plywood Nailers and Sleepers: Manufacturer's Standard.
- C. Resilient Pads: With air voids for resiliency and installed at manufacturer's standard spacing for product designation indicated above.
  1. Material: Manufacturer's Standard.
  2. Thickness: 3/4 inch or as standard with Manufacturer.
- D. Vapor Retarder: ASTM D4397, Black polyethylene sheet, 8 mil thick; 2 inch wide tape for joint sealing.
- E. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compound: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation approved by wood flooring manufacturer.

**09 6429**  
**WOOD STRIP AND PLANK FLOORING**

F. Fasteners: As recommended by manufacturer, but not less than that recommended in NWFA's "Installation Guidelines: Wood Flooring."

### **2.03 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Vented transition: Extruded aluminum flat floor transition, vented for the sports floor perimeter.
- B. Cushion Blocks: Resilient pads, rubber material, sealed air channels for resiliency; compressible to 1/16 inch under a 40 psi load with full and immediate recovery.
- C. Floor-Finish System: System of compatible components recommended in writing by flooring manufacturer and MFMA approved.
  1. Sealer: Provide 2 coats of Bona Sport Sealer
  2. Game-Line and Marker Paint: Industrial enamel compatible with finish coats and recommended in writing by manufacturers of finish coats, and paint for this use.
  3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  4. Floor Finish: Provide 2 coats of Bona Sport Poly Oil-Modified Finishing System
  5. Floor Finish: Pliable, penetrating type.
  6. Available Floor Finish Products:
    - a. Bona Sport
- D. Game Socket Devices: Stainless Steel type, with anchors for casting into concrete subfloor.

### **2.04 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Inspect and stamp species and grade on underside of each piece of wood flooring at factory.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting this work.
- B. Examine substrates, areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of wood flooring.
  1. Verify that substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections.
  2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- C. Verify that concrete subfloor surface is smooth and flat to tolerances set forth by flooring manufacturer.
- D. Verify that required floor-mounted utilities are in correct location.
- E. Substrate Moisture and PH Testing, General: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer.
  1. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Prepare substrate to receive wood flooring in accordance with manufacturer's, MFMA, and NWFA instructions.
- B. Grind high spots and fill low spots on concrete substrates to produce a maximum 1/8-inch deviation in any direction when checked with a 10-foot straight edge.
  1. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates.
- C. Broom or vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before product installation. After cleaning, examine substrates for moisture, alkaline salts, carbonation, or dust. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with flooring manufacturer's written installation instructions, but not less than applicable recommendations in NWFA's "Installation Guidelines: Wood Flooring."
- B. Provide expansion space at walls and other obstructions and terminations of flooring of not less than 1 1/2 inches. Cover space with vented base.

**09 6429**  
**WOOD STRIP AND PLANK FLOORING**

- C. Vapor Retarder:
  - 1. Install on top of concrete slab with joints lapped a minimum of 6 inches and sealed.
- D. Lay out subfloor assembly with sleepers at right angle to finish flooring. Place subfloor panels to maintain spacing between panel edges as provided between pre-assembled sleepers.
- E. Shim and level sleepers and install anchors at spacing recommended by manufacturer.
- F. Lap panel nailer ends onto cross struts, providing  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch end joint spacing, and secure with nails or staples and construction adhesive.
- G. Align subfloor panels to provide correct stagger of concrete anchors in adjacent rows.
- H. Install solid blocking at doorways and under bleachers in the stacked position and extended position.
- I. Secure sleeper struts to concrete with steel anchors inserted into anchor packets provided. Maintain proper anchor penetration in accordance with flooring manufacturer's recommendation.
- J. Wood Flooring:
  - 1. Install in accordance with manufacturer's, MFMA, and NWFA instructions; predrill and blind nail to sleepers.
  - 2. Lay flooring parallel to length of room areas. Verify alignment as work progresses.
  - 3. Arrange flooring with end matched grain set flush and tight.
  - 4. Terminate flooring at centerline of door openings where adjacent floor finish is dissimilar; provide divider strips and transition strips in accordance with flooring manufacturer's recommendations and as indicated.
  - 5. Install edge strips at unprotected or exposed edges, and where flooring terminates.
  - 6. Secure edge strips before installation of flooring with stainless steel screws.
  - 7. Install flooring tight to floor access covers.
- K. Install base at floor perimeter to cover expansion space in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Miter inside and outside corners.
- L. Install floor sockets and inserts to a depth sufficient to ensure flush top surface with floor surface.
- M. Installation Tolerances: 1/8 inch in 10 feet of variance from level.

#### **3.04 FIELD FINISHING**

- A. Mask off adjacent surfaces before beginning sanding.
- B. Machine-sand flooring to with course, medium, and fine grades of sandpaper to remove offsets, ridges, cups, and sanding-machine marks that would be noticeable after finishing. Take precautions to contain dust by using vacuum during sanding. Vacuum and tack with a clean cloth immediately before applying finish.
  - 1. Comply with applicable recommendations in NWFA's "Industry Recommendations for Sanding, Sealing, Court Lining, Finishing, and Resurfacing of Maple Gym Floors."
- C. Apply two coats of floor-seal in steps recommended by finish manufacturer for application indicated.
  - 1. Apply stains to achieve an even color distribution matching approved Samples.
  - 2. Apply first coat, allow to dry, then buff lightly to remove irregularities. Vacuum clean and wipe with damp cloth before applying succeeding coat.
- D. Game Lines and Markers: Apply game-line and marker paint between final seal coat and first finish coat according to paint manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Mask flooring at game lines and markers, and apply paint to produce lines and markers with sharp edges.
  - 2. Width: 2 inches, or as noted on drawings.
  - 3. Where game lines cross, break minor game line at intersection; do not overlap lines.
  - 4. Apply game lines and markers in widths and colors according to requirements of the Owner.

**09 6429**  
**WOOD STRIP AND PLANK FLOORING**

5. Apply finish coats after game-line and marker paint is fully cured (minimum of 24 hours).
- E. Apply two coats finish material in steps recommended by finish manufacturer for application indicated.
  1. Lightly abrade surface, vacuum clean and wipe dry prior to application of first coat.
  2. Apply first coat, allow to dry, then buff lightly to remove irregularities. Vacuum clean and wipe with damp cloth before applying succeeding coat.
- F. Do not cover wood flooring after finishing until finish reaches full cure, and not before seven days after applying last finish coat.

**3.05 CLEANING**

- A. Clean and polish floor surfaces in accordance with floor finish manufacturer's instructions.

**3.06 PROTECTION**

- A. Prohibit traffic on floor finish for 48 hours after installation.
- B. Place protective coverings over finished floors; do not remove coverings until Date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Protect installed wood flooring during remainder of construction period with covering of heavy kraft paper or other suitable material. Do not use plastic sheet or film that might cause condensation.
  1. Do not move heavy and sharp objects directly over kraft-paper-covered wood flooring. Protect flooring with plywood or hardboard panels to prevent damage from storing or moving objects over flooring.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 6500**  
**RESILIENT FLOORING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Static control resilient tile flooring (Alternate 1).
- B. Resilient base.
- C. Installation accessories.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Restrictions on curing compounds for concrete slabs and floors.
- B. Section 26 0526 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems: Grounding and bonding of static control flooring to building grounding system.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM F150 - Standard Test Method for Electrical Resistance of Conductive and Static Dissipative Resilient Flooring; 2006 (Reapproved 2013).
- B. ASTM F710 - Standard Practice for Preparing Concrete Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring; 2011.
- C. ASTM F1066 - Standard Specification for Vinyl Composition Floor Tile; 2004 (Reapproved 2014).
- D. ASTM F1861 - Standard Specification for Resilient Wall Base; 2008 (Reapproved 2012).
- E. ASTM F2034 - Standard Specification for Sheet Linoleum Floor Covering; 2008 (Reapproved 2013).
- F. ASTM F2169 - Standard Specification for Resilient Stair Treads; 2015.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on specified products, describing physical and performance characteristics; including sizes, patterns and colors available; and installation instructions.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate seaming plan.
- D. Selection Samples: Submit manufacturer's complete set of color samples for Architect's initial selection.
- E. Certification: Prior to installation of flooring, submit written certification by flooring manufacturer and adhesive manufacturer that condition of sub-floor is acceptable.
- F. Maintenance Data: Include maintenance procedures, recommended maintenance materials, and suggested schedule for cleaning, stripping, and re-waxing.
- G. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. Extra Wall Base: 10 linear feet of each type and color for each 500 lineal feet or fraction thereof.

**1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Upon receipt, immediately remove any shrink-wrap and check materials for damage and the correct style, color, quantity and run numbers.
- B. Store all materials off of the floor in an acclimatized, weather-tight space.
- C. Maintain temperature in storage area between 55 degrees F and 90 degrees F.

**09 6500**  
**RESILIENT FLOORING**

- D. Protect roll materials from damage by storing on end.
- E. Do not double stack pallets.

**1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Store materials for not less than 48 hours prior to installation in area of installation at a temperature of 70 degrees F to achieve temperature stability. Thereafter, maintain conditions above 55 degrees F.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 RESILIENT BASE**

- A. Resilient Base: ASTM F1861, Type TS rubber, vulcanized thermoset; top set Style B, Cove.
  - 1. Height: 4 inch.
  - 2. Thickness: 0.125 inch thick.
  - 3. Finish: Satin.
  - 4. Length: Roll.
  - 5. Color: Color as selected from manufacturer's standards.
  - 6. Accessories: Premolded external corners and internal corners.
  - 7. Manufacturers:
    - a. Burke Flooring; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.burkemercer.com](http://www.burkemercer.com).
    - b. Johnsonite, a Tarkett Company; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.johnsonite.com](http://www.johnsonite.com).
    - c. Roppe Corp; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.roppe.com](http://www.roppe.com).

**2.02 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Subfloor Filler: White premix latex; type recommended by adhesive material manufacturer.
- B. Primers, Adhesives, and Seam Sealer: Waterproof; types recommended by flooring manufacturer.
- C. Moldings, Transition and Edge Strips: Same material as flooring.
  - 1. Description: Carpet edge for glue-down applications, Nosing for carpet, Nosing for resilient floor covering, Reducer strip for resilient floor covering, Joiner for tile and carpet, and Transition strips.
- D. Concrete Sealer: Provide concrete sealer that prevents the transfer of high PH and excessive moisture from concrete slabs into flooring adhesives. Sealer shall be brand and type recommended by flooring manufacturer.
- E. Copper Grounding Strips: Type and size as recommended by static control flooring manufacturer.
- F. Floor Polish: Provide protective liquid floor polish products as recommended by resilient stair tread manufacturer.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that surfaces are flat to tolerances acceptable to flooring manufacturer, free of cracks that might telegraph through flooring, clean, dry, and free of curing compounds, surface hardeners, and other chemicals that might interfere with bonding of flooring to substrate.
- C. Cementitious Sub-floor Surfaces: Verify that substrates are dry enough and ready for resilient flooring installation by testing for moisture and pH.
  - 1. Obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by resilient flooring manufacturer and adhesive materials manufacturer.
- D. Verify that required floor-mounted utilities are in correct location.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Adjacent Surfaces Protection: Protect adjacent work areas and finish surfaces from damage during product installation.
- B. Concrete Moisture Testing: Conduct moisture tests on all concrete floors regardless of the age, grade level or the presence of existing flooring. Conduct calcium chloride tests in accordance with ASTM F1869. Measure the internal relative humidity of the concrete slab in accordance with ASTM F2170. One test of each type should be conducted for every 1,000 sq. ft. of flooring. For projects less than 3,000 sq. ft., a minimum of three tests of each type should be conducted. The tests should be conducted around the perimeter of the room, at columns, and where moisture may be evident. Concrete moisture vapor emissions must not exceed 5.0 lbs. per 1,000 sq. ft. in 24 hrs. Concrete internal relative humidity must not exceed 75%. A diagram of the area showing the location and results of each test should be submitted to the Architect, General Contractor or End User. If any test result exceeds these limitations, the installation must not proceed until the problem has been corrected.
- C. Concrete pH Test: Perform pH tests on concrete floors regardless of the age or grade level. If the pH is greater than 10, it must be neutralized prior to beginning the installation.
- D. Concrete Sealer: At areas scheduled to receive Linoleum Flooring over concrete slabs. If concrete moisture and PH testing concludes that the amounts are in excess of manufacturer's recommendations, contractor shall bead blast concrete slab and provide sealer as specified.
- E. Prepare floor substrates as recommended by flooring and adhesive manufacturers.
- F. Remove sub-floor ridges and bumps. Fill minor low spots, cracks, joints, holes, and other defects with sub-floor filler to achieve smooth, flat, hard surface.
- G. Prohibit traffic until filler is fully cured.
- H. Clean substrate. Sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products immediately before installation.
- I. Apply primer as required to prevent "bleed-through" or interference with adhesion by substances that cannot be removed.
- J. Do not install resilient products until they are same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.
  - 1. Move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed at least 96 hours in advance of installation.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Starting installation constitutes acceptance of sub-floor conditions.
- B. Install in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Spread only enough adhesive to permit installation of materials before initial set.
- D. Place copper grounding strip in conductive adhesive and apply additional adhesive to top side of strip before installing static control flooring. Allow strip to extend beyond flooring in accordance with static control flooring manufacturer's instructions. Refer to Section 26 0526 for grounding and bonding to building grounding system.
- E. Fit joints and butt seams tightly.
- F. Set flooring in place, press with heavy roller to attain full adhesion.
- G. Where type of floor finish, pattern, or color are different on opposite sides of door, terminate flooring under centerline of door.
- H. Install edge strips at unprotected or exposed edges, where flooring terminates, and where indicated.
  - 1. Resilient Strips: Attach to substrate using adhesive.
- I. Scribe flooring to walls, columns, cabinets, floor outlets, and other appurtenances to produce tight joints.

**09 6500**  
**RESILIENT FLOORING**

**3.04 TILE FLOORING**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.
- B. Mix tile from container to ensure shade variations are consistent when tile is placed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's installation instructions.
- C. Lay out floor tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so flooring at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.
- D. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.
- E. Scribe, cut, and fit flooring to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
- F. Extend flooring into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.
- G. Adhere floor tiles to flooring substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.

**3.05 RESILIENT BASE**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Fit joints tightly and make vertical. Maintain minimum dimension of 18 inches between joints. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practicable without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Miter internal corners. At external corners, use premolded units. At exposed ends, use premolded units.
- E. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- F. Install base on solid backing. Bond tightly to wall and floor surfaces.
- G. Scribe and fit to door frames and other interruptions.
- H. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
- I. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.

**3.06 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.
- B. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of carpet and resilient floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.

**3.07 CLEANING**

- A. Cleaning: Remove temporary coverings and protection of adjacent work areas. Repair or replace damaged installed products. Clean installed products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions prior to owner's acceptance. Remove construction debris from project site and legally dispose of debris.
- B. Remove excess adhesive from floor, base, and wall surfaces without damage.
- C. Clean in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

**3.08 PROTECTION**

- A. Prohibit traffic on resilient flooring for 48 hours after installation.

**09 6500  
RESILIENT FLOORING**

- B. Protection: Protect installed product and finish surfaces from damage during construction. Remove and legally dispose of protective covering at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Floor Polish: Remove soil, visible adhesive, and surface blemishes from floor tile surfaces before applying liquid floor polish.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 6566**  
**RESILIENT ATHLETIC FLOORING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Interlocking, loose-laid rubber tile.
- B. Accessories.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Restrictions on curing compounds for concrete slabs and floors.
- B. Section 03 5400 - Cast Underlayment.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM D412 - Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers--Tension; 2006a (Reapproved 2013).
- B. ASTM F2772 - Standard Specification for Athletic Performance Properties of Indoor Sports Floor Systems; 2011.
- C. ASTM F710 - Standard Practice for Preparing Concrete Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring; 2011.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's printed data sheets for products specified.
- C. Shop Drawings: Fabrication and installation details, and layout, colors, and widths of game lines and equipment locations.
- D. Selection Samples: Manufacturer's color charts for flooring materials specified , indicating full range of colors and textures available.

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer certified in writing by the flooring manufacturer to be qualified for installation of specified flooring system.

**1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver materials to project site in unopened containers clearly labeled with manufacturer's name and identification of contents.
- B. Store materials in dry and clean location until needed for installation. During installation, handle in a manner that will prevent marring and soiling of finished surfaces.
- C. Store floor coverings and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F Store rolls upright.

**1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain temperature in spaces to receive adhesively installed resilient flooring within range of 70-95 degrees F for not less than 48 hours before the beginning of installation and for not less than 48 hours after installation has been completed. Subsequently, do not allow temperature in installed spaces to drop below 50 degrees F or to go above 100 degrees F.
- B. Close spaces to traffic during floor covering installation.
- C. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor covering installation.

**09 6566**  
**RESILIENT ATHLETIC FLOORING**

D. Install floor coverings after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

**1.09 EXTRA MATERIALS**

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Floor Covering: Furnish quantity not less than 10 linear feet for every 500 linear feet or fraction thereof, in roll form and in full roll width for each color, pattern, and type of floor covering installed.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 PREFORMED ATHLETIC FLOORING**

A. Manufacturers:

1. Dinoflex - Sportmat: RAF-1 (8mm), RAF-2 (12mm).
2. Mono Flooring: Armour, 6mm (RAF-3A, RAF-3B)
3. Ecore - Bounce 2, 7mm (RAF-4)
4. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

B. Rubber Sheet Flooring: (RAF-4) Rubber roll goods comprising rubber granules encapsulated in a zero-mercury polyurethane binder, lengths to avoid transverse seams.

1. Thickness: Minimum 7mm
2. Tensile Strength: Minimum 150 psi, per ASTM D412.
3. Color: As scheduled.
4. Manufacturers:
  - a. Ecore, Bounce 2.

C. Rubber Tile Flooring: Recycled rubber tires and colored EPDM granules with urethane binder, formed into square tiles. RAF-1 (8mm); RAF-2, (12mm)

1. Thickness: Minimum 8 and 12 mm
2. Size: Nominal 37 inch square.
3. Tensile Strength: Minimum 150 psi, per ASTM D412.
4. Surface Texture: Smooth.
5. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standards.
6. Manufacturers:
  - a. Dinoflex; Sportmat.

D. Rubber Tile Flooring: Recycled rubber tires and colored EPDM granules with urethane binder, formed into square tiles. (RAF-3A, RAF-3B)

1. Thickness: Minimum 6mm
2. Size: Nominal 36 inch square.
3. Tensile Strength: Minimum 150 psi, per ASTM D412.
4. Surface Texture: Smooth.
5. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standards.
6. Manufacturers:
  - a. Mondo Flooring; Armour.

**2.02 ACCESSORIES**

A. Leveling Compound: Latex-modified cement formulation as recommended by flooring manufacturer for substrate conditions.

B. Flooring Adhesive: Waterproof; types recommended by flooring manufacturer.

C. Seamless-Installation Accessories:

1. Chemical-Bonding Compound: Manufacturer's product for chemically bonding seams.

D. Concrete Sealer: Provide concrete sealer that prevents the transfer of high PH and excessive moisture from concrete slabs into flooring adhesives. Sealer shall be brand and type recommended by flooring manufacturer.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates for conditions detrimental to installation of athletic flooring. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Verify that surfaces are flat to tolerances acceptable to flooring manufacturer, free of cracks that might telegraph through flooring, clean, dry, and free of curing compounds, surface hardeners, and other chemicals that might interfere with bonding of athletic flooring to substrate.
- C. Cementitious Sub-floor Surfaces: Verify that substrates are dry enough and ready for resilient flooring installation by testing for moisture and pH.
  1. Obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by resilient flooring manufacturer and adhesive materials manufacturer.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Prepare floor substrates as recommended by flooring and adhesive manufacturers.
- B. Concrete: Use leveling compound as necessary to achieve substrate flatness of plus or minus 1/8 inch within 10 ft radius.
- C. Remove coatings that are incompatible with flooring adhesives, using methods recommended by flooring manufacturer.
- D. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound and remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- E. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
  1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
  3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
  4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
- F. Do not install floor coverings until they are same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
  1. Move floor coverings and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed at least 48 hours in advance of installation.
- G. Broom clean areas to receive athletic flooring immediately before beginning installation.
- H. Concrete Sealer: At areas scheduled to receive Resilient Athletic Flooring over concrete slabs. If concrete moisture and PH testing concludes that the amounts are in excess of manufacturer's recommendations, contractor shall bead blast concrete slab and provide sealer as specified.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Starting installation constitutes acceptance of sub-floor conditions.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations.
- C. Resilient Sheet Flooring:
  1. Unroll flooring and allow to relax before beginning installation.
  2. Mix adhesive thoroughly and apply to substrate with notched trowel. Roll flooring into fresh adhesive, overlapping end seams and double cutting, butting factory edges and compression fitting.
  3. Roll entire flooring surface with steel roller to assure adhesion to substrate and eliminate air bubbles.
  4. Immediately remove any adhesive from flooring surface, using chemical recommended by flooring manufacturer.
  5. Weld seams using techniques and equipment recommended by manufacturer.

**09 6566**  
**RESILIENT ATHLETIC FLOORING**

6. Scribe and cut floor coverings to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
7. Extend floor coverings into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings.

D. Rubber Tile Flooring:

1. Lay out center lines in spaces to receive tile flooring, based on location of principal walls. Start tile installation from center, and adjust as necessary to avoid tiles less than one-half width at perimeter.
2. Lay tiles square with room axis, matching for color and pattern by selecting from cartons and mixing as recommended by manufacturer.

**3.04 CLEANING**

- A. Clean flooring using methods recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing floor covering installation:
  1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from floor covering surfaces.
  2. Sweep and vacuum floor coverings thoroughly.
  3. Damp-mop floor coverings to remove marks and soil.

**3.05 PROTECTION**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for protection of floor coverings.
- B. Protect finished athletic flooring from construction traffic to ensure that it is without damage upon Date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Protect floor coverings from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 6723**  
**RESINOUS FLOORING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes one resinous flooring system, one with epoxy body.
  - 1. Application Method: Metal, power or hand troweled.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include manufacturer's technical data, application instructions, and recommendations for each resinous flooring component required.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each resinous flooring system required, 6 inches (150 mm) square, applied to a rigid backing by Installer for this Project.
- C. Product Schedule: Use resinous flooring designations indicated in Part 2 and room designations indicated on Drawings in product schedule.
- D. Installer Certificates: Signed by manufacturer certifying that installers comply with specified requirements.
- E. Maintenance Data: For resinous flooring to include in maintenance manuals.

**1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. No request for substitution shall be considered that would change the generic type of floor system specified (i.e. epoxy mortar based system with decorative quartz topping). Equivalent materials of other manufactures may be substituted only on approval of Architect or Owner. Request will be subject to specification requirements described in this section.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer (applicator) who is experienced in applying resinous flooring systems similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance, and who is acceptable to resinous flooring manufacturer.
  - 1. Engage an installer who is certified in writing by resinous flooring manufacturer as qualified to apply resinous flooring systems indicated.
  - 2. Contractor shall have completed at least 10 projects of similar size and complexity.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain primary resinous flooring materials, including primers, resins, hardening agents, grouting coats, and topcoats, through one source from a single manufacturer, with not less than ten years of successful experience in manufacturing and installing principal materials described in this section. Provide secondary materials, including patching and fill material, joint sealant, and repair materials, of type and from source recommended by manufacturer of primary materials.
- D. Manufacturer Field Technical Service Representatives: Resinous flooring manufacture shall retain the services of Field Technical Service Representatives who are trained specifically on installing the system to be used on the project.
  - 1. Field Technical Services Representatives shall be employed by the system manufacture to assist in the quality assurance and quality control process of the installation and shall be available to perform field problem solving issues with the installer.
- E. Mockups: Apply mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Apply full-thickness mockups on 48-inch- (1200-mm-) square floor area selected by Architect.
    - a. Include 48-inch (1200-mm) length of integral cove base.

**09 6723**  
**RESINOUS FLOORING**

2. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- F. Pre-installation Conference:
  1. General contractor shall arrange a meeting not less than thirty days prior to starting work.
  2. Attendance:
    - a. General Contractor
    - b. Architect/Owner's Representative.
    - c. Manufacturer/Installer's Representative.

#### **1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver materials in original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating brand name and directions for storage and mixing with other components.
- B. Store materials to prevent deterioration from moisture, heat, cold, direct sunlight, or other detrimental effects.
- C. All materials used shall be factory pre-weighed and pre-packaged in single, easy to manage batches to eliminate on site mixing errors. No on site weighing or volumetric measurements allowed.

#### **1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature, ambient temperature, moisture, ventilation, and other conditions affecting resinous flooring application.
  1. Maintain material and substrate temperature between 65 and 85 deg F (18 and 30 deg C) during resinous flooring application and for not less than 24 hours after application.
- B. Lighting: Provide permanent lighting or, if permanent lighting is not in place, simulate permanent lighting conditions during resinous flooring application.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during resinous flooring application and for not less than 24 hours after application, unless manufacturer recommends a longer period.
- D. Concrete substrate shall be properly cured for a minimum of 30 days. A vapor barrier must be present for concrete subfloors on or below grade. Otherwise, an osmotic pressure resistant grout must be installed prior to the resinous flooring.

#### **1.07 WARRANTY**

- A. Manufacturer shall furnish a single, written warranty covering both material and workmanship for a period of (1) full years from date of installation, or provide a joint and several warranty signed on a single document by material manufacturer and applicator jointly and severally warranting the materials and workmanship for a period of (1) full year from date of installation. A sample warranty letter must be included with bid package or bid may be disqualified.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 RESINOUS FLOORING**

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include,
  1. Must comply with troweled mortar base with broadcast topping. Liquid rich, slurry type systems will not be accepted, and will result in a disqualification from bid.
- B. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  1. Crossfield Products Corp.; Dex-O-Tex Décor-Flor.
  2. The Stonhard Group.
- C. Products: Basis of Design and subject to compliance with requirements:
  1. Stonhard, Inc.; Stonshield HRI®.
- D. System Characteristics:
  1. Color and Pattern: Choose from Mfg. Standards

**09 6723**  
**RESINOUS FLOORING**

2. Wearing Surface: Standard or medium.
3. Integral Cove Base: TBD inches.
4. Overall System Thickness: nominal 1/4"

E. System Components: Manufacturer's standard components that are compatible with each other and as follows:

1. Primer:
  - a. Material Basis: Stonhard Standard Primer
  - b. Resin: Epoxy
  - c. Formulation Description: (2) two component, 100 percent solids.
  - d. Application Method: Squeegee and roller.
  - e. Number of Coats: (1) one.
2. Mortar Base:
  - a. Material design basis: Stonclad GS
  - b. Resin: Epoxy.
  - c. Formulation Description: (3) three component, 100 percent solids.
  - d. Application Method: Metal Trowel.
    - 1) Thickness of Coats: nominal 3/16" (inch).
    - 2) Number of Coats: One.
  - e. Aggregates: Pigmented Blended aggregate.
3. Undercoat:
  - a. Material Basis: Stonshield undercoat.
  - b. Resin: Epoxy
  - c. Formulation Description: (2) two-component, 100% solids, UV Stable.
  - d. Type: Clear.
  - e. Finish: Gloss.
  - f. Number of Coats: one.
4. Broadcast Media:
  - a. Material Basis: Stonshield quartz aggregate
  - b. Type: pigmented.
  - c. Finish: standard.
  - d. Number of Coats: one.
  - e. Pattern: Tweed.
5. Sealer:
  - a. Material Basis: Stonshield Sealer.
  - b. Resin: Epoxy
  - c. Formulation Description: (2) two-component, 100% solids, UV Stable.
  - d. Type: Clear.
  - e. Finish: Gloss.
  - f. Number of Coats: one.
  - g. Texture level: Standard or medium.

**2.02 NOTE: COMPONENTS LISTED ABOVE ARE THE BASIS OF DESIGN INTENT; ALL BIDS WILL BE COMPARED TO THIS STANDARD INCLUDING RESIN CHEMISTRY, COLOR, WEARING SURFACE, THICKNESS, AND INSTALLATION PROCEDURES, INCLUDING NUMBER OF COATS. CONTRACTOR SHALL BE REQUIRED TO COMPLY WITH ALL THE REQUIREMENTS OF THE SPECIFICATIONS AND ALL OF THE COMPONENTS REQUIRED BY THE SPECIFICATIONS, WHETHER OR NOT SUCH PRODUCTS ARE SPECIFICALLY LISTED ABOVE.**

A. System Physical Properties: Provide resinous flooring system with the following minimum physical property requirements when tested according to test methods indicated:

1. Compressive Strength: 10,000 psi after 7 days per ASTM C 579.
2. Tensile Strength: 2,000 psi per ASTM C 307.
3. Flexural Strength: 4,300 psi per ASTM C 580.
4. Water Absorption: < 1% per ASTM C 413.

**09 6723**  
**RESINOUS FLOORING**

5. Impact Resistance: > 160 in. lbs. per ASTM D 2794.
6. Flammability: Class 1 per ASTM E-648.
7. Hardness: 85 to 90, Shore D per ASTM D 2240.

### **2.03 ACCESSORY MATERIALS**

- A. Patching and Fill Material: Resinous product of or approved by resinous flooring manufacturer and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.
- B. Joint Sealant: Type recommended or produced by resinous flooring manufacturer for type of service and joint condition indicated. Allowances should be included for Stonflex MP7 joint fill material, and CT5 concrete crack treatment.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. General: Prepare and clean substrates according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate indicated. Provide clean, dry, and neutral Ph substrate for resinous flooring application.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Provide sound concrete surfaces free of laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, form-release agents, dust, dirt, grease, oil, and other contaminants incompatible with resinous flooring.
  1. Mechanically prepare substrates as follows:
    - a. Shot-blast surfaces with an apparatus that abrades the concrete surface, contains the dispensed shot within the apparatus, and recirculates the shot by vacuum pickup.
    - b. Comply with ASTM C 811 requirements, unless manufacturer's written instructions are more stringent.
  2. Repair damaged and deteriorated concrete according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written recommendations.
  3. Verify that concrete substrates are dry.
    - a. Perform in situ probe test, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with application only after substrates do not exceed a maximum potential equilibrium relative humidity of 75 percent.
    - b. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with application only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 5 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. of slab in 24 hours.
    - c. Perform additional moisture tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with application only after substrates pass testing.
  4. Verify that concrete substrates have neutral Ph and that resinous flooring will adhere to them. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with application only after substrates pass testing.
- C. Resinous Materials: Mix components and prepare materials according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Use patching and fill material to fill holes and depressions in substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Treat control joints and other nonmoving substrate cracks to prevent cracks from reflecting through resinous flooring according to manufacturer's written recommendations. Allowances should be included for Stonflex MP7 joint fill material, and CT5 concrete crack treatment.

### **3.02 APPLICATION**

- A. General: Apply components of resinous flooring system according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a uniform, monolithic wearing surface of thickness indicated.
  1. Coordinate application of components to provide optimum adhesion of resinous flooring system to substrate, and optimum intercoat adhesion.
  2. Cure resinous flooring components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent contamination during application and curing processes.

**09 6723**  
**RESINOUS FLOORING**

3. At substrate expansion and isolation joints, provide joint in resinous flooring to comply with resinous flooring manufacturer's written recommendations.
  - a. Apply joint sealant to comply with manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Apply primer where required by resinous system, over prepared substrate at manufacturer's recommended spreading rate.
- C. Integral Cove Base: Stonshield cove mortar, apply cove base mix to wall surfaces before applying flooring. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions and details including those for taping, mixing, priming, troweling, sanding, of cove base. Round internal and external corners.
  1. Integral Cove Base: <TBD> inches high.
- D. Apply metal trowel single mortar coat in thickness indicated for flooring system. Hand or power trowel and grout to fill voids. When cured, sand to remove trowel marks and roughness.
- E. Undercoat: Remove any surface irregularities by lightly abrading and vacuuming the floor surface. Mix and apply undercoat with strict adherence to manufacturer's installation procedures and coverage rates.
- F. Broadcast: Immediately broadcast quartz silica aggregate into the undercoat using manufacturer's specially designed spray caster. Strict adherence to manufacturer's installation procedures and coverage rates is imperative.
- G. Apply topcoat(s) in number of coats indicated for flooring system and at spreading rates recommended in writing by manufacturer.

### **3.03 TERMINATIONS**

- A. Chase edges to "lock" the flooring system into the concrete substrate along lines of termination.
- B. Penetration Treatment: Lap and seal resinous system onto the perimeter of the penetrating item by bridging over compatible elastomer at the interface to compensate for possible movement.
- C. Trenches: Continue flooring system into trenches to maintain monolithic protection. Treat cold joints to assure bridging of potential cracks.
- D. Treat floor drains by chasing the flooring system to lock in place at point of termination.

### **3.04 JOINTS AND CRACKS**

- A. Treat control joints to bridge potential cracks and to maintain monolithic protection.
- B. Treat cold joints and construction joints to bridge potential cracks and to maintain monolithic protection on horizontal and vertical surfaces as well as horizontal and vertical interfaces.
- C. Discontinue floor coating system at vertical and horizontal contraction and expansion joints by installing backer rod and compatible sealant after coating installation is completed. Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer for traffic conditions and chemical exposures to be encountered.

### **3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Material Sampling: Owner may at any time and any numbers of times during resinous flooring application require material samples for testing for compliance with requirements.
  1. Owner will engage an independent testing agency to take samples of materials being used. Material samples will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
  2. Testing agency will test samples for compliance with requirements, using applicable referenced testing procedures or, if not referenced, using testing procedures listed in manufacturer's product data.
  3. If test results show applied materials do not comply with specified requirements, pay for testing, remove noncomplying materials, prepare surfaces coated with unacceptable materials, and reapply flooring materials to comply with requirements.

**09 6723**  
**RESINOUS FLOORING**

**3.06 CLEANING, PROTECTING, AND CURING**

- A. Cure resinous flooring materials in compliance with manufacturer's directions, taking care to prevent contamination during stages of application and prior to completion of curing process. Close area of application for a minimum of 18 hours.
- B. Protect resinous flooring materials from damage and wear during construction operation. Where temporary covering is required for this purpose, comply with manufacturer's recommendations for protective materials and method of application. General Contractor is responsible for protection and cleaning of surfaces after final coats.
- C. Cleaning: Remove temporary covering and clean resinous flooring just prior to final inspection. Use cleaning materials and procedures recommended by resinous flooring manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 6813**  
**TILE CARPETING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Carpet tile, fully adhered.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 7419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal: Reclamation/Recycling of new carpet tile scrap, removed carpet tile, and \_\_\_\_\_.
- B. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Restrictions on curing compounds for concrete slabs and floors.
- C. Section 03 5400 - Cast Underlayment.
- D. Section 09 6500 - Resilient Flooring: For resilient wall base and transition strip accessories installed with Carpet Tiles.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on specified products, describing physical and performance characteristics; sizes, patterns, colors available, and method of installation.
- C. Product Declarations: Provide Environmental (EPD) and Health (HPD) Product Declarations for all materials used in installation process.
- D. Shop Drawings: Show the following:
  1. Columns, doorways, enclosing walls or partitions, built-in cabinets, and locations where cutouts are required in carpet tiles.
  2. Carpet tile type, color, and dye lot.
  3. Type of subfloor.
  4. Type of installation.
  5. Pattern type, location, and direction.
  6. Type, color, and location of edge, transition, and other accessory strips.
  7. Transition details to other flooring materials.
- E. Samples: Submit two carpet tiles illustrating color and pattern design for each carpet color selected.
- F. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures, perimeter conditions requiring special attention, and \_\_\_\_\_.
- G. Maintenance Data: Include maintenance procedures, recommended maintenance materials, and suggested schedule for cleaning.
- H. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  1. Extra Carpet Tiles: Quantity equal to 5 percent of total installed, but not less than 10 sq. yds., of each color and pattern installed.
- I. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing specified carpet tile with minimum five years documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in installing carpet tile with minimum five years documented experience and approved by carpet tile manufacturer.

**1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS**

A. Store materials in area of installation for minimum period of 24 hours prior to installation.

**1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

A. Comply with CRI 104, Section 5, "Storage and Handling."

**1.08 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

A. Comply with CRI 104, Section 7.2, "Site Conditions; Temperature and Humidity" and Section 7.12, "Ventilation."

B. Environmental Limitations: Do not install carpet tiles until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

C. Do not install carpet tiles over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive and concrete slabs have pH range recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.

D. Where demountable partitions or other items are indicated for installation on top of carpet tiles, install carpet tiles before installing these items.

**1.09 WARRANTY**

A. Special Warranty for Carpet Tiles: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of carpet tile installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of carpet tile due to unusual traffic, failure of substrate, vandalism, or abuse.
2. Failures include, but are not limited to, more than 10 percent loss of face fiber, edge raveling, snags, runs, loss of tuft bind strength, dimensional stability, excess static discharge, and delamination.
3. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

A. Tile Carpeting:  
1. Interface, Inc; \_\_\_\_: [www.interfaceinc.com/#sle](http://www.interfaceinc.com/#sle).

**2.02 MATERIALS**

A. Tile Carpeting, Type [CPT-1]: Tufted, manufactured in one color dye lot.

1. Product: Diffuse 5T185 manufactured by Shaw Contract Group.
2. Tile Size: 9 inches high by 36 inch diameter by 14.4 inch sides.
3. Thickness: 0.092 inch.
4. Color: As scheduled.
5. Yarn Type: eco solution q nylon.
6. Gage: 1/12 inch.
7. Stitches: 10.0 per inch.
8. Primary Backing Material: Synthetic.

B. Entry Mat (Walk-off Mat) Carpet Tile, Type (WOM-1): Field.

1. Product: Step Repeat SR799, manufactured by Interface.
2. Tile Size: 50 cm by 50 cm, nominal.
3. Pile Thickness: 0.165 inches.
4. Color: Per finish schedule.
5. Yarn System: 82.5% Nylon & 17.5% Polyester.
6. Primary Backing: Graphlar Tile.

## 2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, nonstaining, pressure-sensitive type to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated, that complies with flammability requirements for installed carpet tile and is recommended by carpet tile manufacturer for releasable installation.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that sub-floor surfaces are smooth and flat within tolerances specified for that type of work and are ready to receive carpet tile.
- B. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with conditions affecting carpet tile performance. Examine carpet tile for type, color, pattern, and potential defects.
- C. Concrete Subfloors: Verify that concrete slabs comply with ASTM F 710 and the following:
  1. Slab substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, hardeners, and other materials that may interfere with adhesive bond. Determine adhesion and dryness characteristics by performing bond and moisture tests recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
  2. Subfloor finishes comply with requirements specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for slabs receiving carpet tile.
  3. Subfloors are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits.
- D. Verify that sub-floor surfaces are dust-free and free of substances that could impair bonding of adhesive materials to sub-floor surfaces.
- E. Cementitious Sub-floor Surfaces: Verify that substrates are dry enough and ready for flooring installation by testing for moisture and pH.
  1. Obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by flooring material manufacturer and adhesive materials manufacturer.
- F. Verify that required floor-mounted utilities are in correct location.
- G. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 6.2, "Site Conditions; Floor Preparation," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive carpet tile installation.
- B. Prepare floor substrates as recommended by flooring and adhesive manufacturers.
- C. Remove sub-floor ridges and bumps. Fill minor or local low spots, cracks, joints, holes, and other defects with sub-floor filler.
- D. Apply, trowel, and float filler to achieve smooth, flat, hard surface. Prohibit traffic until filler is cured. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, depressions, and protrusions in substrates. Fill or level cracks, holes and depressions 1/8 inch wide or wider and protrusions more than 1/32 inch, unless more stringent requirements are required by manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, without using solvents. Use mechanical methods recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- F. Vacuum clean substrate.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 14, "Carpet Modules," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Starting installation constitutes acceptance of sub-floor conditions.
- C. Install carpet tile in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

**09 6813**  
**TILE CARPETING**

- D. Blend carpet from different cartons to ensure minimal variation in color match.
- E. Cut carpet tile clean. Fit carpet tight to intersection with vertical surfaces without gaps. Cut and fit carpet tile to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- F. Lay carpet tile in square pattern, with pile direction parallel to next unit, set parallel to building lines.
- G. Fully adhere carpet tile to substrate.
- H. Extend carpet tile into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.
- I. Trim carpet tile neatly at walls and around interruptions.
- J. Complete installation of edge strips, concealing exposed edges.

**3.04 CLEANING**

- A. Remove excess adhesive without damage, from floor, base, and wall surfaces.
- B. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet tile surface.
- C. Clean and vacuum carpet surfaces.

**3.05 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed carpet tile to comply with CRI 104, Section 16, "Protection of Indoor Installations."
- B. Protect carpet tile against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 7733**  
**GLASS FIBER REINFORCED PLASTIC PANELS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Glass fiber reinforced plastic panels.
- B. Trim.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM D2583 - Standard Test Method for Indentation Hardness of Rigid Plastics by Means of Barcol Impressor; 2013a.
- B. ASTM D3273 - Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber; 2012.
- C. ASTM D5319 - Standard Specification for Glass-Fiber Reinforced Polyester Wall and Ceiling Panels; 2012.
- D. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2015a.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Provide data on specified products, describing physical and performance characteristics; including sizes, patterns and colors available; and installation instructions.
- B. Samples: Submit two samples 12 by 12 inch in size illustrating material and surface design of panels.
- C. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.

**1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store panels flat, indoors, on a clean, dry surface. Remove packaging and allow panels to acclimate to room temperature for 48 hours prior to installation.

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain paneling and trim accessories from single manufacturer.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
  3. Testing Agency: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

**1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install plastic paneling until spaces are enclosed and weathertight and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Glass Fiber Reinforced Plastic Panels:
  1. C/S Acrovyn.

**2.02 PANEL SYSTEMS**

- A. Wall Panels:

**09 7733**  
**GLASS FIBER REINFORCED PLASTIC PANELS**

1. Panel Size: As shown on Drawings.
2. Panel Thickness: 0.075 inch.
3. Attachment Method: Adhesive only, sealant joints, no trim.
4. Color: As Scheduled

**2.03 MATERIALS**

- A. Panels: Glass fiber reinforced plastic (FRP), complying with ASTM D5319.
  1. Surface Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame spread index of 25 and smoke developed index of 450; when system tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  2. Mold Resistance: Score of 10, when tested in accordance with ASTM D3273.
  3. Scratch Resistance: Barcol hardness score greater than 35, when tested in accordance with ASTM D2583.
- B. Trim: Vinyl; color coordinating with panel.
- C. Adhesive: Type recommended by panel manufacturer.
- D. Sealant: Type recommended by panel manufacturer; white.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions and substrate flatness before starting work.
- B. Verify that substrate conditions are ready to receive the work of this section.

**3.02 INSTALLATION - WALLS**

- A. Install panels in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Cut and drill panels with carbide tipped saw blades, drill bits, or snips.
- C. Apply adhesive to the back side of the panel using trowel as recommended by adhesive manufacturer.
- D. Apply panels to wall with seams plumb and pattern aligned with adjoining panels.
- E. Install panels with manufacturer's recommended gap for panel field and corner joints.
- F. Place trim on panel before fastening edges, as required.
- G. Fill channels in trim with sealant before attaching to panel.
- H. Install trim with adhesive and screws or nails, as required.
- I. Seal gaps at floor, ceiling, and between panels with applicable sealant to prevent moisture intrusion.
- J. Remove excess sealant after paneling is installed and prior to curing.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 8400**  
**ACOUSTICAL PANELS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Wall mounted fabric-covered polyester fiber core acoustical panels.
- B. Ceiling Mounted polyester fiber core acoustical baffles.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: For Blocking, Furring and support structure.
- B. Section 09 2116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: For substrates.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C423 - Standard Test Method for Sound Absorption and Sound Absorption Coefficients by the Reverberation Room Method; 2009a.

**1.05 DEFINITIONS**

- A. NRC: Noise reduction coefficient.

**1.06 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Submittals.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's printed data sheets for products specified.
- C. Shop Drawings: Fabrication and installation details, panel layout, and fabric orientation.
- D. Selection Samples: Manufacturer's color charts for fabric covering, indicating full range of fabrics, colors, and patterns available .
- E. Product Certificates: For each type of acoustical wall panel, signed by product manufacturer.
- F. Maintenance Data: For acoustical wall panels to include in maintenance manuals. Include fabric manufacturers' written cleaning and stain-removal recommendations.
- G. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

**1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain acoustical wall panels through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide acoustical wall panels with the following surface-burning characteristics as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84 by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
  1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- D. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials, fabrication, and installation.
  1. Install mockups in the location and of the size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
  2. Install mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.

**09 8400**  
**ACOUSTICAL PANELS**

**1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Comply with fabric and acoustical wall panel manufacturers' written instructions for minimum and maximum temperature and humidity requirements for shipment, storage, and handling.
- B. Protect acoustical panels from moisture during shipment, storage, and handling. Deliver in factory-wrapped bundles; do not open bundles until panels are needed for installation.
- C. Store panels flat, in dry, well-ventilated space; do not stand panels on end.
- D. Protect panel edges from damage.

**1.09 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical wall panels until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Lighting: Do not install acoustical wall panels until a lighting level of not less than 50 fc > is provided on surfaces to receive acoustical wall panels.
- C. Air-Quality Limitations: Protect acoustical wall panels from exposure to airborne odors, such as tobacco smoke, and install panels under conditions free from odor contamination of ambient air.

**1.10 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of acoustical wall panels that fail in performance, materials, or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failure in performance includes, but is not limited to, acoustical performance.
  - 2. Failures in materials include, but are not limited to, fabric sagging, distorting, or releasing from panel edge; or warping of core.
  - 3. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

**1.11 EXTRA MATERIALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials described below, before installation begins, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fabric: For each fabric, color, and pattern installed, provide length equal to 5 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than 5 yards.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 FABRIC-COVERED ACOUSTICAL PANELS**

- A. Wall Mounted Panels: Prefinished, factory assembled fabric-covered panels with chemically-hardened edges for sound diffusion.
  - 1. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index of 25 or less and smoke developed index of 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 2. Basis of Design: FabricMate Systems, Inc.; ReCore acoustical baffles with fabric wrap.
  - 3. Size: 4'x8' panels
  - 4. Color: Per finish schedule.
  - 5. Thickness: 1"
  - 6. Acoustical Performance: Values below are for panels mounted in accordance with ASTM C 423 (Type D5 Mounting) and vary by panel thickness and finish.
    - a. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): 0.70.

**2.02 CEILING MOUNTED ACOUSTICAL PANELS**

- A. Acoustic Ceiling Baffles: Premanufactured panels for sound absorption.
  - 1. Basis of Design: FabricMate Systems, Inc.; ReCore acoustical baffles.
  - 2. Size: 4'x8' panels
  - 3. Color: From manufacturers standard range.
  - 4. Thickness: 1 inch

**09 8400**  
**ACOUSTICAL PANELS**

5. Edge: Square.
6. Mounting: flat, per drawings.

### **2.03 FABRICATION**

- A. Sound-Absorption Performance: Provide acoustical wall panels with minimum NRCs indicated, as determined by testing per ASTM C 423 for mounting type specified.
- B. Fabric Wrapped, General: Fabricate panels to sizes and configurations indicated, with fabric facing installed without sagging, wrinkles, blisters, or visible seams.
- C. Acoustical Wall Panels: Panel construction consisting of facing material adhered to face, edges and back border of dimensionally stable core; with rigid edges to reinforce panel perimeter against warpage and damage.
  1. Glass-Fiber Board: Resin harden areas of core for attachment of mounting devices.
- D. Fabric Facing: Stretched straight, on the grain, tight, square, and free from puckers, ripples, wrinkles, sags, blisters, seams, adhesive, or other foreign matter. Applied with visible surfaces fully covered.
  1. Where square corners are indicated, tailor corners.
  2. Where fabrics with directional or repeating patterns or directional weave are indicated, mark fabric top and attach fabric in same direction so pattern or weave matches in adjacent panels.
- E. Tolerances: Fabricate to finished tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch for thickness, overall length and width, and squareness from corner to corner.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates for conditions detrimental to installation of acoustical panels. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install acoustical panels in locations indicated, following installation recommendations of panel manufacturer. Align panels accurately, with edges plumb and top edges level. Scribe to fit accurately at adjoining work and penetrations.
  1. Cut units to be at least 50 percent of unit width, with facing material extended over cut edge to match uncut edge. Scribe acoustical wall panels to fit adjacent work. Butt joints tightly.
- B. Comply with acoustical wall panel manufacturer's written instructions for installation of panels using type of concealed mounting accessories indicated or, if not indicated, as recommended by manufacturer. Anchor panels securely to supporting substrate.
- C. Match and level fabric pattern and grain among adjacent panels.
- D. Install panels to construction tolerances of plus or minus 1/16 inch for the following:
  1. Plumb and level.
  2. Flatness.
  3. Width of joints.

#### **3.03 CLEANING**

- A. Clean fabric facing upon completion of installation from dust and other foreign materials, following manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Remove surplus materials, trimmed portions of panels, and debris resulting from installation.

#### **3.04 PROTECTION**

- A. Provide protection of installed acoustical panels until completion of the work.
- B. Replace panels that cannot be cleaned and repaired to satisfaction of the Architect.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 9000**  
**PAINTING**

**P1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

A. This Section includes surface preparation and field painting of the following:

1. Exposed exterior items and surfaces.
2. Exposed interior items and surfaces.
3. Surface preparation, priming, and finish coats specified in this Section are in addition to shop priming and surface treatment specified in other Sections.

B. Paint exposed surfaces, except where the paint schedules indicate that a surface or material is not to be painted or is to remain natural. If the paint schedules do not specifically mention an item or a surface, paint the item or surface the same as similar adjacent materials or surfaces whether or not schedules indicate colors. If the schedules do not indicate color or finish, the Architect will select from standard colors and finishes available.

1. Painting includes field painting of exposed bare and covered pipes and ducts (including color coding), hangers, exposed steel and iron work, and primed metal surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment.

C. Do not paint prefinished items, concealed surfaces, finished metal surfaces, operating parts, and labels unless noted otherwise:

1. Prefinished items include the following factory-finished components: Review list of prefinished items below.
  - a. Finished mechanical and electrical equipment.
  - b. Light fixtures.
2. Finished metal surfaces include the following:
  - a. Anodized aluminum
  - b. Stainless steel.
  - c. Chromium plate.
  - d. Copper.
  - e. Bronze and brass.
3. Operating parts include moving parts of operating equipment and the following:
  - a. Valve and damper operators.
  - b. Linkages.
  - c. Sensing devices.
  - d. Motor and fan shafts.
4. Labels: Do not paint over Underwriters Laboratories (UL), Factory Mutual (FM), or other code-required labels or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.

D. Painting will be required on the following factory finished and prefinished items:

1. All roof top vents and exhaust stacks including kitchen exhausts.
2. Roof top mechanical units.
3. Exterior Electrical Distribution Cabinets.
4. Other items as per Finished Schedule.

E. Related Sections include the following: List below contains items that are usually shop primed and materials that might be specified in this Section. Revise to suit the Project. Verify that Section titles listed below are correct for this Project's Specifications.

1. Division 5 Section "Structural Steel" for shop priming structural steel.
2. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for shop priming ferrous metal.
3. Division 8 Section "Steel Doors and Frames" for shop priming steel doors and frames.

**09 9000  
PAINTING**

4. Division Section "Wood Flooring" for game-line striping.
5. Division 22 Section "Fire Sprinklers".

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. General: Standard coating terms defined in ASTM D 16 apply to this Section.
  1. Flat refers to a lusterless or matte finish with a gloss range below 15 when measured at an 85-degree meter.
  2. Eggshell refers to low-sheen finish with a gloss range between 5 and 20 when measured at a 60-degree meter.
  3. Satin refers to low-sheen finish with a gloss range between 15 and 35 when measured at a 60-degree meter.
  4. Semi-Gloss refers to medium-sheen finish with a gloss range between 30 and 65 when measured at a 60-degree meter.
  5. Full gloss refers to high-sheen finish with a gloss range more than 65 when measured at a 60-degree meter.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each paint system specified. Include block fillers and primers.
  1. Material List: Provide an inclusive list of required coating materials. Indicate each material and cross-reference specific coating, finish system, and application. Identify each material by manufacturer's catalog number and general classification.
  2. Manufacturer's Information: Provide manufacturer's technical information, including label analysis and instructions for handling, storing, and applying each coating material proposed for use.
- B. Samples for Verification: Of each color and material to be applied, with texture to simulate actual conditions, on representative Samples of the actual substrate.
  1. Provide stepped Samples, defining each separate coat, including block fillers and primers. Use representative colors when preparing Samples for review. Resubmit until required sheen, color, and texture are achieved.
  2. Provide a list of materials and applications for each coat of each sample. Label each sample for location and application.
  3. Submit Samples on the following substrates for the Architect's review of color and texture only:
    - a. Concrete Masonry: Provide two 4-by-8-inch samples of masonry, with mortar joint in the center, for each finish and color.
    - b. Painted Wood: Provide two 12-inch square samples of each color and material on hardboard.
    - c. Stained or Natural Wood: Provide two 4-by-8-inch samples of natural- or stained-wood finish on actual wood surfaces.
    - d. Ferrous Metal: Provide two 4-inch- square samples of flat metal and two 8-inch long samples of solid metal for each color and finish.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Applicator Qualifications: Engage an experienced applicator who has completed painting system applications similar in material and extent to that indicated for this Project with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain block fillers, primers, and undercoat materials for each coating system from the same manufacturer as the finish coats.
- C. Benchmark Samples (Mockups): Provide a full-coat benchmark finish sample of each type of coating and substrate required on the Project. Comply with procedures specified in PDCA P5. Duplicate finish of approved prepared samples.
  1. The Architect will select one room or surface to represent surfaces and conditions for each type of coating, colors, and substrate to be painted.
    - a. Wall Surfaces: Provide samples on at least 100 sq. ft. of wall surface for each color and paint type specified.

**09 9000  
PAINTING**

- b. Small Areas and Items: The Architect will designate an item or area as required.
2. After permanent lighting and other environmental services have been activated, apply coatings in this room or to each surface according to the Schedule or as specified. Provide required sheen, color, and texture on each surface. No painting shall begin until these mock up areas have been approved by the Architect.
  - a. After finishes are accepted, the Architect will use the room or surface to evaluate coating systems of a similar nature.
- D. Final Coating: Final coat of painting shall not be applied until all major subcontractor work is complete. Coordinate schedule with General Contractor.
- E. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

**1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver materials to the Project Site in manufacturer's original, unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label, and the following information:
  1. Product name or title of material.
  2. Product description (generic classification or binder type).
  3. Manufacturer's stock number and date of manufacture.
  4. Contents by volume, for pigment and vehicle constituents.
  5. Thinning instructions.
  6. Application instructions.
  7. Color name and number.
- B. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in a well-ventilated area at a minimum ambient temperature of 45 deg F. Maintain containers used in storage in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  1. Protect from freezing. Keep storage area neat and orderly. Remove oily rags and waste daily. Take necessary measures to ensure that workers and work areas are protected from fire and health hazards resulting from handling, mixing, and application.

**1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Apply water-based paints only when the temperature of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air temperatures are between 50 and 90 deg F.
- B. Apply solvent-thinned paints only when the temperature of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air temperatures are between 45 and 95 deg F.

**1.08 EXTRA MATERIALS**

- A. Furnish extra paint materials from the same production run as the materials applied in the quantities described below. Package paint materials in unopened, factory-sealed containers for storage and identify with labels describing contents. Deliver extra materials to the Owner.
- B. Quantity: Furnish the Owner with an additional 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. or 1 case, as appropriate, of each material and color applied.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products listed in the paint schedules.
- B. Manufacturers Names: The following manufacturers are referred to in the paint schedules by use of shortened versions of their names, which are shown in parentheses:
  1. Fuller-O'Brien Paints. (Fuller).
  2. Glidden Co., The. (Glidden).
  3. Benjamin Moore & Co. (Moore).
  4. PPG Industries, Inc. (PPG).
  5. Sherwin-Williams Co. (S-W).
  6. Miller Paint Co. (Miller).

7. Rodda Paint (Rodda).

## 2.02 PAINT MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility: Provide block fillers, primers, undercoats, and finish-coat materials that are compatible with one another and the substrates indicated under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Material Quality: Provide manufacturer's best-quality paint material of the various coating types specified. Paint-material containers not displaying manufacturer's product identification will not be acceptable.
  - 1. Proprietary Names: Use of manufacturer's proprietary product names to designate colors or materials is not intended to imply that products named are required to be used to the exclusion of equivalent products of other manufacturers. Furnish manufacturer's material data and certificates of performance for proposed substitutions.
- C. Colors: Provide color selections made by the Architect.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with the Applicator present, under which painting will be performed for compliance with paint application requirements.
  - 1. Do not begin to apply paint until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces receiving paint are thoroughly dry.
  - 2. Start of painting will be construed as the Applicator's acceptance of surfaces and conditions within a particular area.
- B. Coordination of Work: Review other Sections in which primers are provided to ensure compatibility of the total system for various substrates. On request, furnish information on characteristics of finish materials to ensure use of compatible primers.
  - 1. Notify the Architect about anticipated problems using the materials specified over substrates primed by others.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. General: Remove hardware and hardware accessories, plates, machined surfaces, lighting fixtures, and similar items already installed that are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of the size or weight of the item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations in each space or area, reinstall items removed using workers skilled in the trades involved.
- B. Cleaning: Before applying paint or other surface treatments, clean the substrates of substances that could impair the bond of the various coatings. Remove oil and grease before cleaning.
  - 1. Schedule cleaning and painting so dust and other contaminants from the cleaning process will not fall on wet, newly painted surfaces.
  - 2. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be painted according to manufacturer's written instructions for each particular substrate condition and as specified.
  - 3. Provide barrier coats over incompatible primers or remove and reprime.
  - 4. Cementitious Materials: Prepare concrete, concrete masonry block, cement plaster, and mineral-fiber-reinforced cement panel surfaces to be painted. Remove efflorescence, chalk, dust, dirt, grease, oils, and release agents. Roughen as required to remove glaze. If hardeners or sealers have been used to improve curing, use mechanical methods of surface preparation.
    - a. Use abrasive blast-cleaning methods if recommended by paint manufacturer.
    - b. Determine alkalinity and moisture content of surfaces by performing appropriate tests. If surfaces are sufficiently alkaline to cause the finish paint to blister and burn, correct this condition before application. Do not paint surfaces where moisture content exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

**09 9000  
PAINTING**

- c. Clean concrete floors to be painted with a 5 percent solution of muriatic acid or other etching cleaner. Flush the floor with clean water to remove acid, neutralize with ammonia, rinse, allow to dry, and vacuum before painting.
- 5. Wood / Particle Board / MDF, Etc.: Clean surfaces of dirt, oil, and other foreign substances with scrapers, mineral spirits, and sandpaper, as required. Sand surfaces exposed to view smooth and dust off.
  - a. Sand all nail holes smooth to surrounding surfaces.
  - b. Scrape and clean small, dry, seasoned knots, and apply a thin coat of white shellac or other recommended knot sealer before applying primer. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.
  - c. Seal tops, bottoms, and cutouts of unprimed wood doors with a heavy coat of varnish or sealer immediately on delivery.
  - d. For wood surfaces, schedule to receive stain and clear coating, putty nail holes after coatings have been completed. Wipe putty wax clean from wood. Putty colors shall be mixed to match wood color.
- 6. Ferrous Metals: Clean ungalvanized ferrous-metal surfaces that have not been shop coated; remove oil, grease, dirt, loose mill scale, and other foreign substances. Use solvent or mechanical cleaning methods that comply with the Steel Structures Painting Council's (SSPC) recommendations.
  - a. Touch up bare areas and shop-applied prime coats that have been damaged. Wire-brush, clean with solvents recommended by paint manufacturer, and touch up with the same primer as the shop coat.
- 7. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean galvanized surfaces with nonpetroleum-based solvents so surface is free of oil and surface contaminants. Remove pretreatment from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods.
- 8. Prefinished Metal Surfaces: Clean all prefinished metal to be free of oil, grease, etc. Acid etch surface with solutions as recommended by paint supplier for adherence of paint system selected. Primer coat can be deleted at prefinished items.

C. Materials Preparation: Mix and prepare paint materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.

- 1. Maintain containers used in mixing and applying paint in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
- 2. Stir material before application to produce a mixture of uniform density. Stir as required during application. Do not stir surface film into material. If necessary, remove surface film and strain material before using.
- 3. Use only thinners approved by paint manufacturer and only within recommended limits.

D. Masking: Carefully mask all areas not receiving paint coatings, including but not limited to: walls to floor coverings and base, doors and window frames, electrical devices, wall coverings, etc.

### **3.03 APPLICATION**

- A. General: Apply paint according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use applicators and techniques best suited for substrate and type of material being applied.
  - 1. Paint colors, surface treatments, and finishes are indicated in the schedules.
  - 2. Do not paint over dirt, rust, scale, grease, moisture, scuffed surfaces, or conditions detrimental to formation of a durable paint film.
  - 3. Provide finish coats that are compatible with primers used.
  - 4. The term "exposed surfaces" includes areas visible when permanent or built-in fixtures, convector covers, covers for finned-tube radiation, grilles, and similar components are in place. Extend coatings in these areas, as required, to maintain the system integrity and provide desired protection.
  - 5. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture the same as similar exposed surfaces. Before the final installation of equipment, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.

**09 9000  
PAINTING**

6. Paint interior surfaces of ducts with a flat, nonspecular black paint where visible through registers or grilles.
7. Paint back sides of access panels and removable or hinged covers to match exposed surfaces.
8. Finish exterior doors on tops, bottoms, and side edges the same as exterior faces.
9. Finish interior of wall and base cabinets and similar field-finished casework to match exterior.
10. Sand lightly between each succeeding enamel or varnish coat.

B. Scheduling Painting: Apply first coat to surfaces that have been cleaned, pretreated, or otherwise prepared for painting as soon as practicable after preparation and before subsequent surface deterioration.

1. The number of coats and the film thickness required are the same regardless of application method. Do not apply succeeding coats until the previous coat has cured as recommended by the manufacturer. If sanding is required to produce a smooth, even surface according to manufacturer's written instructions, sand between applications.
2. Omit primer on metal surfaces that have been shop primed and touch up painted.
3. If undercoats, stains, or other conditions show through final coat of paint, apply additional coats until paint film is of uniform finish, color, and appearance. Give special attention to ensure edges, corners, crevices, welds, and exposed fasteners receive a dry film thickness equivalent to that of flat surfaces.
4. Allow sufficient time between successive coats to permit proper drying. Do not recoat surfaces until paint has dried to where it feels firm, does not deform or feel sticky under moderate thumb pressure, and where application of another coat of paint does not cause the undercoat to lift or lose adhesion.

C. Application Procedures: Apply paints and coatings by brush, roller, spray, or other applicators according to manufacturer's written instructions, unless noted otherwise herein.

1. Brushes: Use brushes best suited for the type of material applied. Use brush of appropriate size for the surface or item being painted.
2. Rollers: Use rollers of carpet, velvet back, or high-pile sheep's wool as recommended by the manufacturer for the material and texture required.
3. Spray Equipment: Use airless spray equipment with orifice size as recommended by the manufacturer for the material and texture required.

D. Minimum Coating Thickness: Apply paint materials no thinner than scheduled thickness. Thickness indicated is measured dry.

E. Mechanical and Electrical Work: Painting of mechanical and electrical work is limited to items exposed to view in occupied spaces, equipment and storage rooms, and all exterior.

F. Mechanical items to be painted include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Piping, pipe hangers, and supports.
2. Heat exchangers.
3. Tanks.
4. Ductwork.
5. Insulation.
6. Motors and mechanical equipment.
7. Accessory items.
8. All wall and ceiling grills and registers unless noted otherwise by Paint Schedule.
  - a. Grills and Registers shall be painted by Spray method only.
  - b. Grills and Registers shall match background color unless noted otherwise.

G. Electrical items to be painted include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Conduit and fittings.
2. Switchgear.
3. Panelboards.
  - a. Panelboards shall be painted by Spray method only.
  - b. Panelboards shall match background color unless noted otherwise.

- H. Block Fillers: Apply block fillers to all concrete masonry block at a rate to ensure complete coverage with pores filled.
- I. Prime Coats: Before applying finish coats, apply a prime coat of material, as recommended by the manufacturer, to material that is required to be painted or finished and that has not been prime coated by others. Recoat primed and sealed surfaces where evidence of suction spots or unsealed areas in first coat appears, to ensure a finish coat with no burn through or other defects due to insufficient sealing.
- J. Pigmented (Opaque) Finishes: Completely cover surfaces as necessary to provide a smooth, opaque surface of uniform finish, color, appearance, and coverage. Cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections will not be acceptable.
- K. Transparent (Clear) Finishes: Use multiple coats to produce a glass-smooth surface film of even luster. Provide a finish free of laps, runs, cloudiness, color irregularity, brush marks, orange peel, nail holes, or other surface imperfections.
  - 1. Provide satin finish for final coats.
- L. Stipple Enamel Finish: Roll and redistribute paint to an even and fine texture. Leave no evidence of rolling, such as laps, irregularity in texture, skid marks, or other surface imperfections.
- M. Completed Work: Match approved samples for color, texture, and coverage. Remove, refinish, or repaint work not complying with requirements.

#### 3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. The Owner reserves the right to invoke the following test procedure at any time and as often as the Owner deems necessary during the period when paint is being applied:
  - 1. The Owner will engage the services of an independent testing agency to sample the paint material being used. Samples of material delivered to the Project will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in the presence of the Contractor.
  - 2. The testing agency will perform appropriate tests for the following characteristics as required by the Owner:
    - a. Quantitative material analysis.
    - b. Abrasion resistance.
    - c. Apparent reflectivity.
    - d. Flexibility.
    - e. Washability.
    - f. Absorption.
    - g. Accelerated weathering.
    - h. Dry opacity.
    - i. Accelerated yellowness.
    - j. Recoating.
    - k. Skinning.
    - l. Color retention.
    - m. Alkali and mildew resistance.
  - 3. The Owner may direct the Contractor to stop painting if test results show material being used does not comply with specified requirements. The Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint from the site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces previously coated with the rejected paint. If necessary, the Contractor may be required to remove rejected paint from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with specified paint, the 2 coatings are incompatible.

#### 3.05 TOUCH-UP PAINT

- A. Painting surfaces that have been deemed unacceptable due to damage of construction, drywall repair, or lack of sufficient paint shall be touched-up as follows:
  - 1. Lack of paint due to insufficient paint coats: Entire wall (floor to ceiling, corner to corner) shall be recoated including all hollow steel frames.

**09 9000  
PAINTING**

2. Touch-up due to wall repairs: Contractor shall apply paint by brush only and feather paint out to match adjoining wall sheen. If sheen cannot be matched, entire wall (floor to ceiling, corner to corner) shall be recoated.

**3.06 CLEANING**

- A. Cleanup: At the end of each workday, remove empty cans, rags, rubbish, and other discarded paint materials from the site.
  1. After completing painting, clean glass and paint-spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paint by washing and scraping. Be careful not to scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.

**3.07 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect work of other trades, whether being painted or not, against damage by painting. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing or replacing, and repainting, as approved by Architect.
- B. Provide "Wet Paint" signs to protect newly painted finishes. Remove temporary protective wrappings provided by others to protect their work after completing painting operations.
  1. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces. Comply with procedures specified in PDCA P1.

**3.08 EXTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE**

- A. Paint System 1(PS-1): Ferrous Metal: Provide the following finish systems over exterior ferrous metal. Primer is not required on shop-primed items.
  1. Semi-Gloss Alkyd Finish: 2 finish coats over a rust-inhibitive primer.
    - a. Primer: Rust-inhibitive metal primer applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 1.3 mils.
      - 1) 1)
      - 2) 2)
      - 3) Moore: Super Spec HP P04 Acrylic Metal primer.
      - 4) PPG: 6-208 Speedhide Interior/Exterior Rust Inhibitive Steel Primer, Red, 90-912.
      - 5) Rodda 508901 Metal Master Primer
      - 6) S-W: Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Acrylic Primer B66-310 Series (<100 g/L VOC).
    - b. First and Second Coat: Semi-Gloss, exterior, Alkyd paint applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 2.8 mils.
      - 1) PPG: 7-282 Interior/Exterior Industrial Semi-Gloss Oil, 90-1210 or 90-1310
      - 2) 2)
      - 3) Rodda Cloverdale 03113 Renaissance Alkyd Semi-Gloss.
      - 4) S-W: Pro Industrial DTM Semi-Gloss, B66 Series (<50 g/L VOC).
      - 5) Moore: Ultra Spec Semi-gloss HP DTM HP29.
- B. Paint System 2 (PS-2): Zinc-Coated Metal: Provide the following finish system over exterior zinc-coated metal.
  1. Semi-Gloss Finish: 2 finish coats over a galvanized metal primer.
    - a. Primer: Galvanized metal primer applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 1.2 mils.
      - 1) 1)
      - 2) 2)
      - 3) Moore: Super Spec HP P04 Acrylic Metal Primer.
      - 4) PPG: 6-209 Speedhide Interior/Exterior Rust Inhibitive Steel Primer, Galvanized, 90-912.
      - 5) Rodda 508901 Metal Master Primer
      - 6) S-W: Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Acrylic Primer B66-310 Series (<100 g/L VOC).

**09 9000  
PAINTING**

b. First and Second Coat: Semi-Gloss, exterior, Alkyd paint applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 2.8 mils.

- 1) 1)
- 2) 2)
- 3) PPG: 7-282 Interior/Exterior Industrial Semi-Gloss Oil, 90-1210 or 90-1310.
- 4) 4)
- 5) Rodda Cloverdale 03113 Renaissance Alkyd Semi-Gloss.
- 6) S-W: S-W Pro Industrial DTM Semi-Gloss, B66 Series (<50 g/L VOC).
- 7) Moore: Super Spec HP HP29 DTM Acrylic Semi-Gloss

**3.09 INTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE**

A. Paint System 5 (PS-5): Ferrous Metal: Provide the following finish systems over interior ferrous metal:

1. Semi-Gloss, Waterborne, Enamel Finish: One finish coat over an enamel undercoater and a primer.
  - a. Primer: Quick-drying, rust-inhibitive, Water-based, or epoxy-metal primer, as recommended by the manufacturer for this substrate, applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.
    - 1) 1)
    - 2) 2)
    - 3) Moore Super Spec HP P04 Acrylic Metal Primer.
    - 4) PPG: 6-208 Speedhide Interior/Exterior Rust Inhibitive Steel Primer, 90-912.
    - 5) S-W: Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Acrylic Primer B66-310 Series (<100 g/L VOC).
    - 6) Rodda 508901 Metal Master Primer.
  - b. Undercoat: Waterborne, Interior enamel undercoat or Semi-Gloss, interior, Alkyd Enamel finish coat, as recommended by the manufacturer for this substrate, applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of no less than 1.2 mils.
    - 1) 1)
    - 2) 2)
    - 3) Moore: Ultra Spec 500 Semi-Gloss 539.
    - 4) PPG: 6-6 Speedhide Interior Quick-Drying Enamel Undercoater, 90-1210.
    - 5) S-W: Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi-Gloss, B66 Series, (<50 g/L VOC).
    - 6) Rodda Cloverdale 03113 Renaissance Alkyd Semi-Gloss.
  - c. Finish Coat: Odorless, Semi-Gloss, Waterborne, interior enamel applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 1.4 mils.
    - 1) 1)
    - 2) 2)
    - 3) Moore: Ultra Spec 500 Semi-Gloss 539.
    - 4) PPG: 27 Line Wallhide Low Odor Interior Enamel Wall and Trim Semi-Gloss Oil, 90-1210.
    - 5) S-W: Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi-Gloss, B66 Series, (<50 g/L VOC).
    - 6) Rodda Cloverdale 03113 Renaissance Alkyd Semi-Gloss.
- B. Paint System 6 (PS-6): Zinc-Coated Metal: Provide the following finish systems over interior zinc-coated metal:
  1. Semi-Gloss, Alkyd Enamel Finish: One finish coat over an undercoat and a primer.
    - a. Primer: Galvanized metal primer applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 1.2 mils.
      - 1) 1)

**09 9000  
PAINTING**

- 2) 2)
- 3) Moore: Super Spec HP P04 Acrylic Metal Primer.
- 4) PPG: 6/215/216 Speedhide Galvanized Steel Primer, 90-912.
- 5) S-W: Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Acrylic Primer B66-310 Series (<100 g/L VOC).
- 6) Rodda 508901 Meta Master Primer.

b. Undercoat: Alkyd, Interior Enamel undercoat or Semi-Gloss, Interior, Alkyd Enamel finish coat, as recommended by the manufacturer for this substrate, applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 1.2 mils.

- 1) 1)
- 2) 2)
- 3) Moore: Ultra Spec 500 Semi-Gloss 539.
- 4) PPG: 6-6 Speedhide Interior Quick-Drying Enamel Undercoater, 90-1210.
- 5) S-W: Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi-Gloss, B66 Series, (<50 g/L VOC).
- 6) Rodda Cloverdale 03113 Renaissance Alkyd Semi-Gloss.

c. Finish Coat: Odorless, Semi-Gloss, Alkyd, interior enamel applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 1.4 mils.

- 1) 1)
- 2) 2)
- 3) Moore: Ultra Spec 500 Semi-Gloss 539.
- 4) PPG: 27 Line Wallhide Low Odor Interior Enamel Wall and Trim Semi-Gloss Oil, 90-1210.
- 5) S-W: Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi-Gloss, B66 Series, (<50 g/L VOC).
- 6) Rodda Cloverdale 03113 Renaissance Alkyd Semi-Gloss.

C. Paint System 7 (PS-7): Gypsum Board: Provide the following finish systems over interior gypsum board surfaces:

1. Low-Luster Acrylic-Enamel Finish: 2 finish coats over a primer.
  - a. Primer: Latex-based, interior primer applied at a spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 1.2 mils.
    - 1) 1)
    - 2) 2)
    - 3) Moore: Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Primer Sealer 534.
    - 4) PPG: 6-2 Quick-Drying Interior Latex Primer-Sealer.
    - 5) 5)
    - 6) Rodda 503601 Master Paint UL VOC Primer..
    - 7) S-W: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Primer B28W02600.
  - b. First and Second Coats: Low-Luster (eggshell or satin) acrylic-latex, interior enamel applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 2.8 mils.
    - 1) 1)
    - 2) 2)
    - 3) Moore: Ultra spec 500 Eggshell Enamel N538.
    - 4) PPG: 89 Line Manor Hall Eggshell Latex Wall and Trim Paint, 9-300XI, 6-411, 6-411OXI OR 16-310.
    - 5) Rodda 523601 Master Painter UL VOC Satin.
    - 6) S-W: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Int Latex Eg-Shel, B20-2600 Series.

D. Paint System 8 (PS-8): Gypsum Board: Provide the following finish systems over interior gypsum board surfaces:

1. High Gloss Polyurethane Enamel Finish: 3 coats with total dry film thickness not less than 3.0 mils.
  - a. Sealer: Pigmented polyurethane coating under pigmented aliphatic polyurethane-enamel finish.

**09 9000  
PAINTING**

- 1) 1)
- 2) PPG: 6-2 Quick-Drying Interior Latex Primer-Sealer.
- 3) S-W: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Primer B28W02600.
- 4) Rodda 503601 Master Painter UL VOC Primer.
- 5) Moore: 027 Sure Seal Interior Primer, Sealer, Undercoat.
- b. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy coating under pigmented polyurethane-enamel finish.
  - 1) S-W: Pro Industrial Water Based Catalyzed Epoxy B73 Series (<50 g/L VOC).
  - 2) Moore: No intermediate coat required.
- c. First and Second Coats: Moisture-curing pigmented, polyurethane coatings:
  - 1) 1)
  - 2) PPG: WB98 Line WaterBorne Aquapon Semi-Gloss, 16-510.
  - 3) S-W: Waterbased Acrolon 100 Urethane B65W700 Series (<100 g/L VOC).
  - 4) Rodda: Cloverdale 70503 Ecologic Waterborne Epoxy.
  - 5) Moore: Corotech V540 Waterborne Urethane.

E. Paint System 9 (PS-9): Concrete Masonry Units: Provide the following finish systems over interior concrete masonry block units:

1. Low-Luster Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a block filler.
  - a. Block Filler: High-performance, latex-based, block filler applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 5.0 mils.
    - 1) S-W: Preprite Latex Block Filler B25W25, (<50 g/L VOC).
    - 2) 2)
    - 3) 3)
    - 4) Moore: Super Spec Masonry Hi Build Masonry Block Filler 206.
    - 5) PPG: 6-7 Speedhide Interior/Exterior Masonry Latex Block Filler, 3010.
    - 6) Rodda: 501901 Sprayable Smooth Block Filler.
  - b. First and Second Coats: Low-Luster (eggshell or satin) acrylic-latex, interior enamel applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 2.8 mils.
    - 1) 1)
    - 2) 2)
    - 3) Moore: Ultra Spec 500 Eggshell Enamel N538.
    - 4) PPG: 89 Line Manor Hall Eggshell Latex Wall and Trim Paint, 9-300XI, 6-411, 6-411OXI OR 16-310.
    - 5) Rodda: 523601 Master Painter UL VOC Primer.
    - 6) S-W: Pro-Mar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex.

F. Paint System 10 (PS-10): Concrete Masonry Units: Provide the following finish systems over interior concrete masonry block units:

1. High Gloss Polyurethane Enamel Finish: 3 coats with total dry film thickness not less than 3.0 mils over a block filler.
  - a. Block Filler: High-performance, latex-based, block filler applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 5.0 mils.
    - 1) S-W: Preprite Int/Ext Latex Block Filler B25W25, (<50 g/L VOC).
    - 2) 2)
    - 3) 3)
    - 4) Moore: Super Spec Masonry Hi Build Masonry Block Filler 206.
    - 5) PPG: 6-7 Speedhide Interior/Exterior Masonry Latex Block Filler, 3010.
    - 6) Rodda: 501901 Sprayable Smooth Block Filler.
  - b. First and Second Coats: Moisture-curing pigmented, polyurethane coatings:
    - 1) 1)
    - 2) PPG: WB98 Line WaterBorne Aquapon Semi-Gloss, 16-510.

**09 9000  
PAINTING**

- 3) S-W: Waterbased Acrolon 100 Urethane B65W700 Series (<100 g/L VOC).
- 4) Rodda Cloverdale 70503 Ecologic Waterborne Epoxy.
- 5) Moore: Corotech V540 Waterborne Urethane.

G. Paint System 11 (PS-11): Woodwork and Trim: Provide the following paint finish systems over new interior wood surfaces:

- 1. Semi-Gloss, Alkyd Enamel Finish: 2 finish coats over a primer.
  - a. Primer: Alkyd or latex-based, interior enamel undercoater applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 1.2 mils.
    - 1) 1)
    - 2) 2)
    - 3) Moore: Sure Seal Latex Primer Sealer 027.
    - 4) PPG: 6-6 Speedhide Quick-Drying Enamel Undercoater, 17-951.
    - 5) S-W: Preprime Problock Latex Primer Sealer B51-600 Series (<50 g/L VOC).
    - 6) 6)
    - 7) Rodda 502001 Unique II Undercoater.
  - b. First and Second Coats: Odorless, Semi-Gloss, Alkyd, interior enamel applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 2.4 mils.
    - 1) 1)
    - 2) 2)
    - 3) Moore: Ultra Spec 500 Semi-Gloss 539.
    - 4) PPG: 6-1110 Line Speedhide Interior Enamel Wall and Trim Semi-Gloss Oil, 9-500, 6-500, 6-4510XI OR 90-1210.
    - 5) S-W: Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi-Gloss, B66 Series, (<50 g/L VOC).
    - 6) 6)
    - 7) Rodda Cloverdale 03113 Renaissance Alkyd Semi-Gloss.

H. Paint System 11 (PS-12): Stained Woodwork: Provide the following paint finish systems over new interior wood surfaces:

- 1. Alkyd-Based, Satin-Varnish Finish: Two finish coats of an Alkyd-based, clear-satin varnish over interior wood stain. Wipe wood filler before applying stain.
  - a. Filler Coat: Paste-wood filler applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer.
    - 1) 1)
    - 2) 2)
    - 3) 3)
    - 4) Moore: None required.
    - 5) PPG: None required.
    - 6) S-W: Sher-Wood Fast-Dry Filler.
  - b. Stain: Interior wiping stain for wood.
    - 1) S-W: Wood Classics Interior Oil Stain 250 A49-800 Series (<250 g/L VOC).
    - 2) Moore: Lenmar Waterborne Wiping Stain 1WB 1300.
    - 3) PPG: DFT 400.
    - 4) Rodda: Old Masters Wiping Stain 13000 Series (<250 g/L VOC).
  - c. First and Second Finish Coats: Alkyd-Based or polyurethane varnish, as recommended by the manufacturer, applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer.
    - 1) 1)
    - 2) 2)
    - 3) 3)

**09 9000  
PAINTING**

- 4) Moore: Benwood Stays Clear Low Luster Acrylic Polyurethane Varnish N423.
- 5) PPG: DFT 129
- 6) S-W: Minwax PolyCrylic Protective Finish 3333 (<275 g/L VOC).
- 7) Rodda Old Masters Water-Based Polyurethane Series 75400. (< 275 g/L VOC).

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 10 2113.19**  
**PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Solid plastic toilet compartments.
- B. Urinal screens.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Blocking and supports.
- B. Section 10 2800 - TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination: Coordinate the work with placement of support framing and anchors in walls and ceilings.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Submittals for submittal procedures.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate partition plan, elevation views, dimensions, details of wall supports, door swings.
- D. Product Data: Provide data on panel construction, hardware, and accessories.
- E. Samples: Submit two samples of partition panels, 6 x 6 inch in size illustrating panel finish, color, and sheen.
- F. GreenGuard Certificates.

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with requirements in GSA's CID-A-A-60003, "Partitions, Toilets, Complete."
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, or another standard acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 26 to 75.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in ICC/ANSI A117.1 for toilet compartments designated as accessible.

**1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of toilet fixtures, walls, columns, ceilings, and other construction contiguous with toilet compartments by field measurements before fabrication.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Solid Plastic Toilet Compartments:
  - 1. Accurate Partitions Corporation.
  - 2. AccuTec MFG.
  - 3. American Sanitary Partition Corporation.
  - 4. Ampco, Inc.
  - 5. ASI Group
  - 6. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
  - 7. Bradley Corporation; Mills Partitions.
  - 8. Flush Metal Partition Corp.

**10 2113.19**  
**PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS**

9. General Partitions Mfg. Corp.
10. Global Steel Products Corp.
11. Knickerbocker Partition Corporation.
12. Sanymetal; a Crane Plumbing company.
13. Scranton Products (Santana/Comtec/Capital); \_\_\_\_\_: [www.scrantonproducts.com/#sle](http://www.scrantonproducts.com/#sle).

**2.02 SOLID PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS**

- A. Toilet Compartments: Factory fabricated doors, pilasters, and divider panels made of solid molded high density polyethylene (HDPE), floor-mounted headrail-braced and overhead braced.
  1. Basis of Design: Bradley; Bradmar HDPE:
  2. Color: See Finish Schedule.
- B. Doors:
  1. Thickness: 1 inch.
  2. Width: 24 inch.
  3. Width for Handicapped Use: 36 inch, out-swinging.
  4. Height: 55 inch.
- C. Panels:
  1. Thickness: 1 inch.
  2. Height: 55 inch.
  3. Depth: As indicated on drawings.
- D. Pilasters:
  1. Thickness: 1 inch.
  2. Width: As required to fit space; minimum 3 inch.
- E. Screens: Without doors; to match compartments; mounted to wall with two panel brackets.

**2.03 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Pilaster Shoes: Formed chromed steel with polished finish, 3 inch high, concealing floor fastenings.
- B. Head Rails: Hollow anodized aluminum, 1 inch by 1-1/2 inch size, with anti-grip profile and cast socket wall brackets.
- C. Pilaster Brackets: Satin stainless steel.
- D. Wall Brackets: Continuous type, satin stainless steel.
- E. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard continuous hinge.
- F. Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's standard surface-mounted latch unit designed for emergency access and with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at compartments designated as accessible.
- G. Coat Hook: Manufacturer's standard combination hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent in-swinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories.
- H. Door Bumper: Manufacturer's standard rubber-tipped bumper at out-swinging doors and entrance-screen doors.
- I. Door Pull: Manufacturer's standard unit at out-swinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units on both sides of doors at compartments designated as accessible.
- J. Heat-Sink Strip: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum strip fastened to exposed bottom edges of solid-polymer components to prevent burning.
- K. Attachments, Screws, and Bolts: Stainless steel, tamper proof type.
- L. Overhead Bracing: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum head rail with antigrip profile and in manufacturer's standard finish.

**10 2113.19**  
**PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS**

M. Anchorages and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard exposed fasteners of stainless steel or chrome-plated steel or brass, finished to match the items they are securing, with theft-resistant-type heads. Provide sex-type bolts for through-bolt applications. For concealed anchors, use stainless steel, hot-dip galvanized steel, or other rust-resistant, protective-coated steel.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify correct spacing of and between plumbing fixtures.
- C. Verify correct location of built-in framing, anchorage, and bracing.

**3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install partitions secure, rigid, plumb, and level in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Maintain 3/8 inch to 1/2 inch space between wall and panels and between wall and end pilasters.
- C. Attach panel brackets securely to walls using anchor devices. Locate wall brackets so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.
- D. Attach panels and pilasters to brackets. Locate head rail joints at pilaster center lines.
- E. Field touch-up of scratches or damaged finish will not be permitted. Replace damaged or scratched materials with new materials.

**3.03 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation From True Position: 1/4 inch.
- B. Maximum Variation From Plumb: 1/8 inch.

**3.04 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust and align hardware to uniform clearance at vertical edge of doors, not exceeding 3/16 inch.
- B. Adjust hinges to position doors in partial opening position when unlatched. Return out-swinging doors to closed position.
- C. Adjust adjacent components for consistency of line or plane.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 10 2601**  
**WALL AND CORNER GUARDS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Corner guards.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Blocking for wall and corner guard anchors.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ADA Standards - Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Standards for Accessible Design; 2010.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Submittals for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Indicate physical dimensions, features, anchorage details, and rough-in measurements.
- C. Shop Drawings: For each impact-resistant wall-protection unit showing locations and extent. Include sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
  - 1. Corner Guards: 12 inches long. Include examples of joinery, corners, and field splices.

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain impact-resistant wall-protection units through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of impact-resistant wall-protection units and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements."
  - 1. Revise subparagraph below to suit Project.
  - 2. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

**1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install impact-resistant wall-protection units until building is enclosed and weatherproof, wet work is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature at 70 deg F for not less than 72 hours before beginning installation and for the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls, columns, and other construction contiguous with impact-resistant wall-protection units by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

**1.08 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of impact-resistant wall-protection units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures.
    - b. Deterioration of stainless steel and other materials beyond normal use.

**10 2601**  
**WALL AND CORNER GUARDS**

2. Warranty Period: Five (5) years from date of Substantial Completion.

**1.09 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store impact-resistant wall-protection units in original undamaged packages and containers inside well-ventilated area protected from weather, moisture, soiling, extreme temperatures, and humidity.
  1. Maintain room temperature within storage area at not less than 70 deg F during the period plastic materials are stored.
  2. Keep plastic sheet material out of direct sunlight.
  3. Store plastic wall-protection components for a minimum of 72 hours, or until plastic material attains a minimum room temperature of 70 deg F.
    - a. Store corner-guard covers in a vertical position.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Corner Guards:
  1. American Floor Products Co., Inc.
  2. ARDEN Architectural Specialties, Inc.
  3. Balco, Inc.
  4. Construction Specialties, Inc; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.c-sgroup.com/#sle](http://www.c-sgroup.com/#sle).
  5. Pawling Corporation.
  6. Inpro; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.inprocorp.com](http://www.inprocorp.com).

**2.02 COMPONENTS**

- A. Corner Guards - Surface Mounted: One-piece unit without splices, installed with adhesive.
  1. Material: Type 304 stainless steel, No. 4 finish.
  2. Thickness: 16 gage, 0.06 inch.
  3. Width of Wings: 2 1/2 inches.
  4. Styles: Provide 90 degree corners and wall end protectors.

**2.03 FABRICATION**

- A. Fabricate components with tight joints, corners and seams.
- B. Pre-drill holes for attachment.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that rough openings, concealed blocking, and anchors are correctly sized and located.
- B. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on Drawings.

**3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install components in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, level and plumb, secured rigidly in position to wall framing members only.
- B. File down smooth all corners and edges of corner guards after installation.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 10 2800**  
**TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Accessories for toilet rooms, showers, and utility rooms.
- B. Grab bars.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 1000 Rough Carpentry: Concealed supports for accessories, including in wall framing and plates.
- B. Section 08 8300 - Mirrors: Other mirrors.
- C. Section 10 2113.19 - Plastic Toilet Compartments.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ADA Standards - Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Standards for Accessible Design; 2010.
- B. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2015.
- C. ASTM A269/A269M - Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service; 2015.
- D. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2015.
- E. ASTM A666 - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar; 2015.
- F. ASTM C1503 - Standard Specification for Silvered Flat Glass Mirror; 2008 (Reapproved 2013).

**1.05 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordinate the work with the placement of internal wall reinforcement, concealed ceiling supports, and reinforcement of toilet partitions to receive anchor attachments.

**1.06 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Submittals for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit data on accessories describing size, finish, details of function, and attachment methods.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Basis of Design: Bobrick.
- B. Other Acceptable Manufacturers:
  1. AJW Architectural Products: [www.ajw.com](http://www.ajw.com).
  2. ASI - American Specialties, Inc: [www.americanspecialties.com](http://www.americanspecialties.com).
  3. Bradley Corporation: [www.bradleycorp.com](http://www.bradleycorp.com).
  4. Substitutions: Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.
- C. All items of each type to be made by the same manufacturer.

**2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. Accessories - General: Shop assembled, free of dents and scratches and packaged complete with anchors and fittings, steel anchor plates, adapters, and anchor components for installation.
  1. Grind welded joints smooth.

**10 2800**  
**TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES**

2. Fabricate units made of metal sheet of seamless sheets, with flat surfaces.
- B. Keys: Provide 2 keys for each accessory to Owner.
- C. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A666, Type 304.
- D. Stainless Steel Tubing: ASTM A269/A269M, Type 304 or 316.
- E. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Hot-dipped galvanized steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M, with G90/Z275 coating.
- F. Mirror Glass: Annealed float glass, ASTM C1036 Type I, Class 1, Quality Q2, with silvering, protective and physical characteristics complying with ASTM C1503.
- G. Adhesive: Two component epoxy type, waterproof.
- H. Fasteners, Screws, and Bolts: Hot dip galvanized; tamper-proof; security type.
- I. Expansion Shields: Fiber, lead, or rubber as recommended by accessory manufacturer for component and substrate.

**2.03 FINISHES**

- A. Stainless Steel: No. 4 Brushed finish, unless otherwise noted.
- B. Baked Enamel: Pretreat to clean condition, apply one coat primer and minimum two coats epoxy baked enamel.

**2.04 TOILET ROOM ACCESSORIES**

- A. Toilet Paper Dispenser: Double roll, surface mounted bracket type, OFCI.
  1. Product: OFCI, SCA56T
  2. Location: At all toilets.
- B. Paper Towel Dispenser: Surface mount.
  1. Product: OFCI, Georgia Pacific GP 54338.
  2. Location: Two in each restroom, unless indicated otherwise.
- C. Waste Receptacle: Stainless steel, freestanding style without top.
  1. Minimum capacity: 10 gallons.
  2. Product: B-2260 manufactured by Bobrick.
  3. Location: Provide one in each Restroom.
- D. Soap Dispenser: Liquid soap dispenser, wall-mounted. OFCI. \_\_\_\_\_
  1. Product: OFCI, Debus Aero Blue Foam Dispenser DEB91406.
  2. Location: Provide One at Each Sink
- E. Mirrors: Stainless steel framed, 1/4 inch thick annealed float glass; ASTM C1036.
  1. Size: As shown on Drawings.
  2. Frame: 0.05 inch changeable shapes, with mitered and welded and ground corners, and tamperproof hanging system; No.4 finish.
  3. Backing: Full-mirror sized, minimum 0.03 inch galvanized steel sheet and nonabsorptive filler material.
  4. Shelves more than 36 inches wide: Concealed intermediate support.
  5. Product: B-165 manufactured by Bobrick.
- F. Seat Cover Dispenser: Stainless steel, surface-mounted. OFCI \_\_\_\_\_
  1. Product: HSHGIS manufactured by Hospeco. OFCI
  2. Locations: Where shown.
- G. Grab Bars: Stainless steel, nonslip grasping surface finish.
  1. Standard Duty Grab Bars:
    - a. Push/Pull Point Load: 250 pound-force, minimum.
    - b. Dimensions: 1-1/4 inch outside diameter, minimum 0.05 inch wall thickness, exposed flange mounting, 1-1/2 inch clearance between wall and inside of grab bar.
    - c. Length and Configuration: As indicated on drawings.
    - d. Products:

**10 2800**  
**TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES**

- 1) Bobrick B-6806 series. Models B-6806x42, B-6806x36 and B-6806x18.
- 2) Material: Stainless steel; 0.05-inch thick
- 3) Gripping Surface: Smooth, satin finish

H. Sanitary Napkin Disposal Unit: Stainless steel, surface-mounted, self-closing door, locking bottom panel with full-length stainless steel piano-type hinge, removable receptacle.OFCI

1. Product: HS250 manufactured by Hospeco.OFCI
2. Location: Where shown.

**2.05 SHOWER AND TUB ACCESSORIES**

- A. Shower Curtain Rod: Stainless steel tube, 1 inch outside diameter, 0.04 inch wall thickness, satin-finished, with 3 inch outside diameter, minimum 0.04 inch thick satin-finished stainless steel flanges, for installation with exposed fasteners.
- B. Shower Curtain:
  1. Material: Cotton, machine washable, and mildew-resistant.
  2. Size: 36 by 72 inches, hemmed edges.
  3. Grommets: Stainless steel; pierced through top hem on 6 inch centers.
  4. Color: White.
  5. Shower Curtain Hooks: Chrome-plated or stainless steel spring wire designed for snap closure.
- C. Folding Shower Seat: Wall-mounted surface; welded tubular seat frame, structural support members, swing-down legs, hinges, and mechanical fasteners of Type 304 stainless steel, L-shaped, right hand seat.
  1. Seat: Phenolic or polymeric composite one-piece seat or seat slats, of \_\_\_\_\_ color.
  2. Size: ADA Standards compliant.
  3. Products:
    - a. Seachrome Corporation; Accessibility Seats- L-Shaped Transfer with Swing-down Legs, Reversible: [www.seachrome.com/#sle](http://www.seachrome.com/#sle).
    - b. Substitutions: Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.
- D. Wall-Mounted Soap Dish: Heavy duty, seamless stainless steel, surface-mounted with drain holes, without grab bar, satin finish; with concealed mechanical fastening suitable for substrate and backplate.
- E. Towel Pin: Stainless steel, 3 inch extension from wall; rectangular-shaped bracket and backplate for concealed attachment, satin finish.
- F. Robe Hook: Heavy-duty stainless steel, single-prong, rectangular-shaped bracket and backplate for concealed attachment, satin finish.
  1. Product: B-671 manufactured by Bobrick.

**2.06 UTILITY ROOM ACCESSORIES**

- A. Mop and Broom Holder: 0.05 inch thick stainless steel, Type 304, hat-shaped channel.
  1. Holders: 3 spring-loaded rubber cam holders.
  2. Length: 36 inches.
  3. Length: Manufacturer's standard length for number of holders.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify exact location of accessories for installation.

**3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Deliver inserts and rough-in frames to site for timely installation.
- B. Provide templates and rough-in measurements as required.

**10 2800**  
**TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES**

**3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturers' instructions in locations indicated on drawings.
- B. Install plumb and level, securely and rigidly anchored to substrate.
- C. Mounting Heights: As required by accessibility regulations, unless otherwise indicated.

**3.04 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed accessories from damage due to subsequent construction operations.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 10 5100**  
**LOCKERS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Solid plastic lockers.
- B. Locker benches.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 04 2000: Masonry base construction.
- B. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Wood base construction.
- C. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Wood blocking and nailers.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Submittals for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's published data on locker construction, sizes and accessories.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate locker plan layout, numbering plan and combination lock code.
- D. Sample color chart: For metal lockers, provide color chart for manufacturer's standard color selection.
- E. Sustainable Design Submittals:
  1. Recycled Content: Certify percentages of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content.
  2. Regional Materials: Certify distance between manufacturer and Project and between manufacturer and extraction or harvest point in miles.
  3. GreenGuard Certificates.
- F. Remaining paragraphs are defined in Division 1 Section "Submittal Procedures" as "Informational Submittals."
- G. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- H. Maintenance Data: For adjusting, repairing, and replacing locker doors and latching mechanisms to include in maintenance manuals.
- I. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Minimum Five years experience in manufacture of solid-plastic lockers with products in satisfactory use under similar service conditions.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Minimum Five years experience in Work of this Section.

**1.06 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal lockers that fail in materials or workmanship, excluding finish, within specified warranty period.
  1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures.
    - b. Faulty operation of latches and other door hardware.
  2. Damage from deliberate destruction and vandalism is excluded.
  3. Warranty Period for Solid-Plastic Lockers: 25 years from date of Substantial Completion.

**10 5100  
LOCKERS**

**1.07 EXTRA MATERIALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Full-size units of the following metal locker hardware items equal to 10 percent of amount installed for each type and finish installed, but no fewer than five units:
    - a. Identification plates.
    - b. Hooks.

**1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect locker finish and adjacent surfaces from damage.
- B. Do not deliver metal lockers until spaces to receive them are clean, dry, and ready for their installation.

**1.09 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete masonry bases for metal lockers.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of work specified in other Sections to ensure that metal lockers can be supported and installed as indicated.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Fasteners: Zinc- or nickel-plated steel, slotless-type, exposed bolt heads; with self-locking nuts or lock washers for nuts on moving parts.
- B. Anchors: Material, type, and size required for secure anchorage to each substrate.
  - 1. Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts on inside face of exterior walls, and elsewhere as indicated, for corrosion resistance.
  - 2. Provide toothed-steel or lead expansion sleeves for drilled-in-place anchors.

**2.02 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Solid Plastic Lockers:
  - 1. Columbia Lockers, a division of PSiSC; PolyLife Lockers: [www.psisc.com/#sle](http://www.psisc.com/#sle).
  - 2. Scranton Products.
  - 3. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

**2.03 LOCKER APPLICATIONS**

- A. Locker rooms: 2 tiers; 15w x 12d x 30h inch each, Ventilated.
  - 1. Basis of Design: Scranton Products Tufftec Lockers.
  - 2. Locking: tabs for owner combination locks.
  - 3. Provide sloped top.
- B. Locker Benches: Stationary type; bench top of laminated birch; painted steel pedestals.
  - 1. Height: As indicated on drawings.
  - 2. Length: As indicated on drawings.
  - 3. Width: As indicated on drawings.
  - 4. Location: Locker rooms.

**2.04 ADA APPLICATIONS**

- A. Provide ADA lockers in configuration as required in locker room.

**2.05 SOLID PLASTIC LOCKERS**

- A. Lockers: Factory assembled, made of high density polyethylene (HDPE) panels, homogenous color throughout, with mortise and tenon joints with stainless steel fasteners or heat fused joints.
  - 1. Doors: Full overlay without frame.
  - 2. Where locker ends or sides are exposed, provide same finish as fronts or provide extra panels to match fronts.
  - 3. Ventilation: By horizontal slots at the top and bottom of door.

**10 5100  
LOCKERS**

- B. Component Thicknesses:
  - 1. Doors: 1/2 inch minimum thickness.
  - 2. Locker Body: Tops, bottoms, backs, and shelves 3/8 inch minimum.
  - 3. Sloped Tops: 1/2 inch minimum thickness.
- C. Solid Plastic Panels: High Density polyethylene (HDPE) formed under high pressure into solid plastic components.
- D. Hinges: Full height of locker, manufacturer's standard heavy duty type.
- E. Coat Hooks: Stainless steel; attached with tamperproof screws.
- F. Number Plates: Provide rectangular shaped aluminum plates. Form numbers \_\_\_\_ inch high of block font style with ADA designation, in contrasting color.
- G. Locks: Locker manufacturer's standard type of style indicated above.

**2.06 FABRICATION**

- A. Fabricate locker components square and rigid, finish free from scratches and chips.
- B. Fabricate locker components for snap-together assembly or slide-together dovetail connections providing solid and secure, anti-racking construction.
- C. Fabricate adjacent lockers with common side panel.
- D. Fabricate locker units for assembly in maximum of three adjacent lockers.
- E. Include the following for locker benches.
- F. Fabricate locker benches to sizes indicated in single lengths.
- G. Accessible Lockers: Fabricate as follows:
  - 1. Locate bottom shelf no lower than 15 inches above the floor.
  - 2. Where hooks, coat rods, or additional shelves are provided, locate no higher than 48 inches above the floor.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine walls, floors, and support bases, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

**3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install level, plumb, and true; shim as required, using concealed shims.
  - 1. Anchor locker runs at ends and at intervals recommended by manufacturer, but not more than 36 inches o.c. Using concealed fasteners, install anchors through backup reinforcing plates, channels, or blocking as required to prevent metal distortion.
  - 2. Anchor single rows of lockers to walls near top and bottom of lockers.
  - 3. Anchor back-to-back lockers to floor.
- B. Solid-Plastic (HDPE) Lockers: Connect groups together with standard fasteners, with no exposed fasteners on face frames.
- C. Equipment and Accessories: Fit exposed connections of trim, fillers, and closures accurately together to form tight, hairline joints, with concealed fasteners and splice plates.
  - 1. Attach hooks with at least two fasteners.
  - 2. Attach door locks on doors using security-type fasteners.
  - 3. Identification Plates: Identify metal lockers with identification indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Attach plates to each locker door, near top, centered, with at least two aluminum rivets.

**10 5100  
LOCKERS**

4. Attach filler panels with concealed fasteners. Locate filler panels where indicated on Drawings.
5. Attach sloping-top units to metal lockers, with closures at exposed ends.
6. Attach finished end panels with fasteners only at perimeter to conceal exposed ends of nonrecessed metal lockers.

**3.03 CLEANING**

- A. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware. Adjust doors and latches to operate easily without binding.
- B. Protect lockers from damage, abuse, dust, dirt, stain, or paint. Do not permit use during construction.
- C. Touch up marred finishes, or replace lockers that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by locker manufacturer.
- D. Clean locker interiors and exterior surfaces.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 11 6623**  
**GYMNASIUM EQUIPMENT**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Basketball backboards, goals, and support framing.
- B. Floor anchors for tensioned elements.
- C. Floor sleeves for net and goal posts.
- D. Column mounted protection pads.
- E. Volleyball nets and posts.

**1.03 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Concrete floor slab to receive floor sleeves and anchors.
- B. Section 05 1200 - Structural Steel Framing: Structural members supporting basketball systems.
- C. Section 05 5000 - Metal Fabrications: Secondary structural members supporting gymnasium equipment.
- D. Section 09 6429 - Wood Strip and Plank Flooring: Gymnasium flooring.
- E. Section 26 2717 - Equipment Wiring.

**1.04 DEFINITIONS**

- A. FIBA: International Basketball Federation (Federation Internationale de Basketball Amateur).
- B. FIVB: International Volleyball Federation (Federation Internationale de Volleyball).
- C. NFHS: The National Federation of State High School Associations.

**1.05 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. A. Seismic Performance: Provide basketball backboards capable of withstanding the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures": Section 9, "Earthquake Loads."

**1.06 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Electrically Operated Equipment: Coordinate location and electrical characteristics of service connection.

**1.07 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Submittals for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's data showing configuration, sizes, materials, finishes, hardware, and accessories; include:
  1. Electrical characteristics and connection locations.
  2. Fire rating certifications.
  3. Structural steel welder certifications.
  4. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
- C. Shop Drawings: For custom fabricated equipment indicate, in large scale detail, construction methods; method of attachment or installation; type and gage of metal, hardware, and fittings; plan front elevation; elevations and dimensions; minimum one cross section; utility requirements as to types, sizes, and locations.
- D. Erection Drawings: Detailed dimensional requirements for proper location of equipment.
- E. Samples: Submit samples of wall pad coverings in manufacturer's available range of colors.

**11 6623**  
**GYMNASIUM EQUIPMENT**

- F. Operating and maintenance data, for each operating equipment item.
- G. Warranty: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

**1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section, with not less than three years of documented experience.

**1.09 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver products to project site in manufacturer's original packaging with factory original labels attached.
- B. Store products indoors and elevated above floor; prevent warping, twisting, or sagging.
- C. Store products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions; protect from extremes of weather, temperature, moisture, and other damage.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Gymnasium Equipment:
  - 1. Bison Inc.
  - 2. Draper, Inc; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.draperinc.com/#sle](http://www.draperinc.com/#sle).
  - 3. Performance Sports Systems; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.perfsports.com/#sle](http://www.perfsports.com/#sle).
  - 4. Porter Athletic Equipment Company; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.porterathletic.com/#sle](http://www.porterathletic.com/#sle).

**2.02 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. See drawings for sizes and locations, unless noted otherwise.
- B. Where mounting dimensions or sizes are not indicated, comply with applicable requirements of the following:
  - 1. National Federation of State High School Associations (NFHS) sports rules.
- C. Provide mounting plates, brackets, and anchors of sufficient size and strength to securely attach equipment to building structure; comply with requirements of contract documents.
- D. Hardware: Heavy duty steel hardware, as recommended by manufacturer.
- E. Electrical Wiring and Components: Comply with NFPA 70; provide UL-listed equipment.
- F. Structural Steel Fabrications: Welded in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, using certified welders.

**2.03 BASKETBALL**

- A. Basketball System: Backstop assembly, backboard, and goal.
  - 1. Products:
    - a. Bison Inc.
    - b. Draper, Inc; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.draperinc.com/#sle](http://www.draperinc.com/#sle).
    - c. ACI Athletic Equipment.
    - d. ADP Lemco Inc..
    - e. Porter Athletic Equipment Company: [www.porterathletic.com](http://www.porterathletic.com).
- B. Ceiling-Suspended Backstop Assemblies: Capable of mounting both rectangular and fan-shaped backboards.
  - 1. Framing: Center strut; side folding framing. Unequal side brace tubes. See drawing sections showing slope of roof.
  - 2. Manufacturer is responsible design and installation of all backboard assemblies. Dimensions from existing walls needs to be reviewed and accounted for in the design.
  - 3. Folding Control System: Electric hoist that folds backstop with 115 volt actuator, integral limit switches that provide automatic shut-off in both positions, and safety catch with automatic reset. Electric Hoist shall be controlled by Gymnasium Equipment Controller.
  - 4. Framing Color: WHite.

**11 6623**  
**GYMNASIUM EQUIPMENT**

5. Products:
  - a. Draper, Inc; EZ Fold Ceiling Suspended Side-Folding: [www.draperinc.com/sle](http://www.draperinc.com/sle).
- C. Backboards Main Courts: Tempered glass, rectangular shaped.
  1. Frame: Brushed aluminum edge, steel mounting.
  2. Dimensions: 42 inches high by 72 inches wide
  3. Markings: Painted.
  4. Provide safety padding for bottom edge of backboard.
  5. Color: Manufacturer's standard.
  6. Basis of Design: EZ Fold 503136 manufactured by Draper.
  7. Safety: Provide Auto-loc 2 Backstop safety strap - 503229 by Draper.
- D. Goals: Steel rim, mounted to backboard, with attached nylon anti-whip net; complete with mounting hardware.
  1. Net Attachment Device: Tube-tie.
  2. Breakaway mechanism, 230 lbs.
  3. Finish: Powder coat orange.
  4. Basis of Design: EZ Fold 503576 manufactured by Draper.

#### **2.04 ELECTRICAL CONTROL SYSTEM**

- A. Gymnasium Equipment Controller: Provide touchpad control system that eliminates switches to power equipment. System shall operate backstops, lights, scoreboard power, and PA system power.
- B. Touch Pad to be mounted in framed wall, flush. System to be installed in 8 5/8 x 4 1/2 x 2 1/2 inch back box.

#### **2.05 FLOOR-MOUNTED EQUIPMENT**

- A. Volley Ball Nets and Posts: Two court system of adjustable posts, net, and tensioning winch meeting all requirements for FIVB, USA Volleyball, NCAA and NFHS competition requirements.
  1. Posts: 3-1/2 inch O.D. schedule 80 aluminum tube with 1 inch height adjustments between 42 and 96 inches.
  2. Net: 4 inch square #36 nylon cord with vinyl coated polyester hem, double stitched around the perimeter.
    - a. Top Hem Reinforcing: 2000 pound minimum break strength galvanized aircraft cable in nylon coating.
    - b. Bottom Hem Reinforcing: 1/4 inch diameter braided nylon rope with spring loaded, pressure type rope tensioner.
    - c. Size: Regulation size.
  3. Tensioning Winch: Manual crank heavy duty, self-locking worm gear mechanism.
  4. Antenna and boundary marker.
  5. Protective Pads: Polyethylene foam covered with polyester reinforced vinyl fabric.
    - a. Color: To be determined.
  6. Basis-of-Design: 500010 Combination Volleyball System manufactured by Draper.
- B. Floor Sleeves for Posts: Metal sleeve, with latch cover, cast into concrete subfloor to hold poles for nets and goals; installed flush with finish floor surface.
  1. Latch Cover: Brass, round;; tamper resistant lock with key.
  2. Sleeve: Steel.
  3. Round Pole Diameter: 3 1/2 I.D. inches.
  4. Depth of Sleeve: 9 inches from floor surface to bottom, including latch cover.

#### **2.06 WALL PADDING**

- A. Wall Padding: Foam filling bonded to backing board, wrapped in covering; each panel fabricated in one piece.
  1. Covering: Vinyl-coated polyester fabric, mildew and rot resistant; stapled to back of board.
    - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard range.
    - b. Texture: Embossed leather-look.

**11 6623**  
**GYMNASIUM EQUIPMENT**

- c. Fabric Weight: 14 oz/sq yd.
- 2. Foam: Urethane, soft, 3.5 pcf nominal density.
- 3. Foam: Open cell polychloroprene (Neoprene) 5.5 pcf nominal density.
- 4. Foam Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
- 5. Backing Board: Plywood.
  - a. Thickness: 3/8 inch.
  - b. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index (FSI) of 25 or less, smoke developed index (SDI) of 450 or less, Class A, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- 6. Nailing Margins: 1 inch wide, covered by fabric covering.
- 7. Mounting: Permanent; using screws.

B. Specially Shaped Padding: Same construction as standard padding; custom fabricate to fit irregularly shaped members, areas, and protrusions in gymnasium as indicated; provide padding for:

- 1. Existing Columns.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Take field measurements to ensure proper fitting of work. If taking field measurements before fabrication will delay work, allow for adjustments within recommended tolerances.
- B. Inspect areas and conditions before installation. Notify Architect in writing of unsatisfactory or detrimental conditions. Do not proceed until conditions have been corrected. Commencing installation constitutes acceptance of work site conditions.
- C. Do not proceed with this work until conditions have been corrected; commencing installation constitutes acceptance of work site conditions.
- D. Verify that electrical services are correctly located and of the proper characteristics.

**3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with contract documents and manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Coordinate installation of inserts and anchors that must be built in to flooring or subflooring.
- C. Install equipment rigid, straight, plumb, and level.
- D. Secure all equipment with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.
- E. Install wall padding securely, with edges tight to wall and without wrinkles in fabric covering.
- F. Separate dissimilar metals to prevent electrolytic corrosion.

**3.03 ADJUSTING**

- A. Verify proper placement of equipment.
- B. Verify proper placement of equipment anchors and sleeves. Use actual movable equipment to be anchored if available.

**3.04 CLEANING**

- A. Remove masking or protective covering from finished surfaces.
- B. Clean equipment in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

**END OF SECTION**